



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

UC-NRLF



\$B 306 142

BERKELEY
LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA

ATION LIBR.

Light A. Browne.

Jan. 5, 1887.

Oct. 2, 1909.

12 $\frac{1}{2}$

A
PROGRESSIVE SERIES
OF
INDUCTIVE LESSONS
IN
LATIN,

BASED ON MATERIAL DRAWN FROM CLASSICAL
SOURCES, ESPECIALLY FROM CAESAR'S
COMMENTARIES.

BY
JOHN TETLOW, A.M.,
MASTER OF THE GIRLS' LATIN SCHOOL, BOSTON.

The mind should be introduced to principles through the medium of examples, and so should be led from the particular to the general—from the concrete to the abstract....

Children should be led to make their own investigations, to draw their own inferences.—HERBERT SPENCER'S ESSAY ON EDUCATION.

BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY GINN, HEATH, & CO.
1884.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1884, by
JOHN TETLOW,
in the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

L. Tetlow

J. S. CUSHING & CO., PRINTERS, BOSTON.

Add'l
GIFT

Digitized by Google

PA 2087

T484

Edue.

Library

PREFACE.

THIS manual is the result of an attempt to apply the inductive method to elementary instruction in Latin. The value of this method as an instrument for developing and strengthening the mental faculties has long been recognized and will probably not be questioned. As applied to Latin, it brings the pupil into immediate contact with classical examples, teaching him to view these, rather than the rules of the grammarian, as the original sources of knowledge and the final test of correctness; and it leads him, through the observation and study of such examples, to the discovery of the syntactic laws which underlie them. In a word, it trains the pupil in the methods required for original investigation.

But, while the value of the inductive method will not be denied, there will probably be various opinions as to what constitutes a successful application of it, and equally various standards by which a given application of it will be judged. Practical teachers, who know from daily experience in the class-room that the undeveloped powers of youth are extremely feeble, are inclined to view with distrust any method of instruction which undertakes to make the pupil a discoverer rather than a learner; while, on the other hand, the mere theorist demands that the pupil be told nothing, but that he be led to discover everything. It will not be necessary for me to state in detail the principles which have guided me in determining how much or how little the pupil should be aided in the work of discovering and formulating rules from examples; these principles may be readily inferred from an examination of the method of exposition adopted in any one of the lessons, taken at random, in which the laws or usages of the language are treated. I have striven to keep constantly in view the mental immaturity of the pupils for whom these lessons are intended, and the limitations as to time by which their teachers are necessarily

restricted. Keeping these in view, I have felt that it would be safer to err on the side of affording too much rather than too little help.

From the character of the material used in the exercises and reading lessons of this manual, it will be seen that I do not agree with those who think that the pupil should be introduced to the study of Latin through the medium of entertaining stories written by modern Latinists. On the contrary, that method seems to me the best which takes the pupil by the shortest road into the domain of classical antiquity, and which, by bringing him into direct contact with the subject-matter, the modes of thought, the forms of expression, and the choice and arrangement of words peculiar to the classical writers, most thoroughly equips him for the intelligent study of the acknowledged masterpieces of Latin literature. Accordingly, I have drawn not merely the examples used for purposes of exposition, but also the short sentences supplied for practice on forms and constructions, and the longer passages selected for connected translation, from classical sources.

The short sentences supplied for practice on forms and constructions are arranged in separate sets entitled respectively "Exercises" and "Supplementary Exercises." Of these two sets, the Exercises will probably in most cases furnish ample material for the grammatical work of the first year; the Supplementary Exercises, which are somewhat more difficult, may be drawn upon for additional practice or for periodical reviews, or they may be reserved for the second year, to be studied as progressive exercises in Latin composition in connection with the first author read.

The material provided for connected translation consists of easy anecdotes from Cicero, and of those passages from Caesar in which the usages of the Druids and the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans are described. The latter, owing to their intrinsic value and interest, and to their comparative freedom from the constructions of indirect discourse, seem especially suited to the needs of the beginner. The plan of the book also contemplates the early introduction of the study of the simpler modes of word-formation as an aid to the development of power to read at sight. Special suggestions relating to the lessons on word-formation and the anecdotes from Cicero will be found in the notes introduced at pages 74 and 224.

In the special vocabularies of the earlier lessons, in the lessons

on word-formation, and in the general Latin-English vocabulary, English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with the Latin forms under which they appear are printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**; whereas English words or parts of words that are *borrowed* (directly or indirectly) from the Latin forms under which they appear are printed in *Gothic Italic*. This distinction, the use of which was suggested to me by a similar distinction in Professor White's excellent *Greek Lessons*, I have tried to render as serviceable as possible by confining the differences in type just mentioned to those letters of the English word which alone mark its relationship to the Latin. Thus, *cōsulātus* is translated *consulship*, and *peditātus*, *foot-soldiers*. I have not, of course, meant to imply by this method of printing that the exhaustive study of the origin and history of English words should form a part of the first year's work in Latin; but rather to supply material for occasional excursions in this direction. For example, the connection between the Latin *veniō* and the English *COME* is not so obvious that it can easily be made clear to beginners; and, unless some bright boy or girl whose curiosity has been excited by the silent suggestion of the change in type should ask for an explanation, the teacher should pass over this word without comment. On the other hand, the operation of Grimm's law in such words as *pater*, **FATHER**, *frāter*, **BROTHER**, and *māter*, **MOTHER**, is so interesting, and at the same time so easily made clear, that the teacher may profitably use these and similar examples as a means of leading the pupil to a recognition of the general law which they illustrate.

As it was a part of my plan to introduce a few simple lessons on word-formation, and, in the etymological part of the general vocabulary, to trace complete words to the stems from which they are formed, it seemed desirable that, in dealing with the several declensions in substantives and adjectives, I should devote some attention to stems. Accordingly, besides pointing out the stems of the several paradigms of declension, I have also called upon the pupil to explain the formation of the nominative, referring him to the grammar for the necessary information and guidance. The paragraphs in which these references to the grammar occur are, of course, comparatively unimportant for the beginner, and they may, at the discretion of the teacher, be postponed or omitted. They are numbered as follows: **121, 162, 188, 195, 197, 250, 266.**

It will be seen that, in giving the principal parts of verbs, I have taken the liberty to deviate slightly from established usage. In place of the *supine* in *-um*, which is generally given as the fourth of the principal parts, I have substituted the *perfect participle*. The necessity of a reform in this direction was first recognized and pointed out by Professor Lane, who introduced this substitution many years ago in his teaching, and has also incorporated it in the Latin grammar which he is preparing for publication. When word-formation was so little understood that the supine was thought to be the source from which the perfect and future participles, and primitives in *-tor*, *-tiō*, *-tus*, and *-tūra* were derived, there was an obvious propriety in recognizing the supine as one of the principal parts of the verb. Clipped of final *-um*, it yielded a base—the so-called supine stem—which was seen to be common to all these forms. As, moreover, identity of base was supposed to indicate community of origin, the forms just enumerated were naturally viewed as offshoots from this parent stem. As a matter of fact, however, the perfect and future participles, primitives in *-tor*, *-tiō*, *-tus*, and *-tūra*, and the supines in *-tum* and *-tū* are all simply parallel formations from the root or from the verb stem. Thus, the participles **cultus** and **cultūrus**, and the primitive substantives **cultor**, **cultūra**, **cultus**, and **cultiō**, are formed directly from the root *col*, *till*; in like manner, the participles **auditus** and **auditūrus**, and the substantives **auditor**, **auditus**, and **auditīō**, are formed directly from **audi-**, *hear*, the stem of **audiō**. While then there is, in a restricted sense, a *real* supine stem ending in *-tu-*, which lies at the foundation of two verbal forms, the former and the latter supine, the *so-called* supine stem ending in *-t*, euphonically *-s*, is purely a figment of the grammarians.

Again, although our dictionaries, in giving the principal parts of verbs, record more than 2500 supines in *-um*, Richter has shown, in his contributions to the study of this form of the verb, that only 236 such supines are to be found in the texts of the Latin writers from the time of Plautus to the early Christian centuries.

It is clear then that the supine, instead of being a principal part of the verb, is a very insignificant part. On the other hand, the perfect participle is found in all the passive tenses for completed action; it is, indeed, in these tenses the only essential part, for the auxiliary is often omitted. Moreover, if a mechanical

base must be recognized as an artificial help to the pupil while he is committing to memory those forms of the verb that have certain letters in common, the perfect participle yields this base as readily as the supine. A reference to sections 136 and 137 will show that the treatment of the perfect participle as one of the principal parts of the verb renders easy and natural the application of the inductive method to a subject which must otherwise be left unexplained.

It has been the prevailing practice in Latin dictionaries and special vocabularies to account for the form and meaning of words whose etymology is given, by referring them to other complete words from which they are not directly formed, but with which they are merely connected in formation. This loose and inaccurate way of explaining the derivation and meaning of words must soon give place to a sounder method. One special vocabulary¹ has already appeared in this country in which the subject of etymology is differently treated, and other works founded on the same principles are in preparation. In harmony with this tendency, and in the hope of developing right habits of thought in the pupil from the outset, I have been careful to refer the words whose etymology is explained in the general vocabulary, directly to the roots or stems from which they are formed.² Lest this mode of presentation should seem obscure to the learner, who in his actual reading meets not stems, but complete words, I have thought it best, in the case of formation from stems, to add in parenthesis the complete word to which the stem belongs.

The vocabulary of an introductory book does not call for much in the way of pictorial illustration; but what it does call for, it calls for imperatively. Such words, for example, as *scūtum* and *signa militāria* cannot be understood by the pupil without the aid of a picture. Expressions of this kind, therefore, for which illustrations from the antique were available — eleven in number — I have thought it best to illustrate. The cuts used for this purpose have been taken from Rich's *Dictionary of Antiquities* and Guhl and Koner's *Leben der Griechen und Römer*.

In conclusion, I desire to express my grateful sense of obligation

¹ Greenough's *Vocabulary to Virgil*.

² This statement does not, of course, apply to those instances in which a word is said to be merely "connected with" another word in formation.

to the friends who have kindly read and criticized this book as it has been sent to them in sheets from the press. I am especially indebted to Professor George M. Lane of Harvard University, who has not only placed at my disposal such of his manuscript and printed collections as would be of service to me, but has critically examined the proof-sheets, and aided me by corrections and suggestions that have added to the value of the book in every part. I am also under special obligations to William C. Collar, A.M., Head-master of the Roxbury Latin School, for valuable notes and criticisms.

Mr. J. S. Cushing, under whose supervision this book has been printed, has, by his unfailing patience and courtesy, and by his suggestive skill, materially lightened the labor of carrying the sheets through the press.

JOHN TETLOW.

BOSTON, May 1, 1884.

CONTENTS.

LESSONS.	PAGES.
INTRODUCTORY: Alphabet, Syllabication, Quantity, Accent	1-7
I. The Four Conjugations	7-8
II.-III. Present Indicative Active: Conjugations I.-IV.	9-12
IV. Substantives: First Declension	12-13
V.-VI. Ablative with Prepositions.—Subject Nominative.— Accusative of Direct Object	13-16
VII. Substantives: Second Declension	16-17
VIII. The Preposition In .—Genitives: Possessive, Sub- jective, Objective	18-20
IX. Adjectives: First and Second Declensions	21-23
X. Adjectives: Attributive and Predicate.—Dative with Adjectives	23-26
XI.-XII. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of Both Voices	26-28
XIII. Ablatives: Means or Instrument and Voluntary Agent	29-31
XIV. Substantives of the Third Declension: Mute Stems	31-33
XV.-XVI. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of Both Voices.—Principal Parts	33-37
XVII.-XVIII. Agreement of the Participle in Compound Tenses. —Dative of Indirect Object	38-42
XIX. Substantives of the Third Declension: Liquid and -s- Stems	43-44
XX.-XXI. Imperatives of Both Voices.—The Vocative	45-49
XXII. Substantives of the Third Declension: Vowel Stems	49-51
XXIII. Adjectives of the Third Declension: Vowel Stems	51-53
XXIV.-XXV. Apposition.—Predicate Agreement.—Accusa- tive with Prepositions	53-57
XXVI. Substantives of the Third Declension: Stems Appar- ently Consonant.—Adjectives of One Termina- tion.—Present Participle	57-60
XXVII. Ablative of Specification.—Ablative of Time When	60-63
XXVIII. Third Declension: Gender	63-66
XXIX. Substantives: Fourth Declension	67-69
XXX. Adjectives: Regular Comparison	69-71

LESSONS.	PAGES.
XXXI. Substantives: Fifth Declension	72-73
XXXII. Adjectives: Peculiarities of Comparison	74-76
XXXIII. Numerals: Cardinals.....	76-78
XXXIV. Partitive Genitive.— Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space	79-81
XXXV. Numerals: Ordinals.— Adjectives: Genitive in -ius, Dative in -i	82-84
XXXVI. Ablative Absolute	84-87
XXXVII. Periphrastic Conjugations: Active and Passive ...	88-90
XXXVIII.-XXXIX. Dative of Agent.— Descriptive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative.....	90-94
XL. Numerals: Distributive	94-95
XLI.-XLII. Pronouns: Personal and Reflexive.....	96-99
XLIII.-XLIV. Genitive with Adjectives.— The Gerund.....	100-103
XLV.-XLVI. Demonstrative Pronouns.....	103-108
XLVII.-XLVIII. The Gerundive Construction. — The Two Supines	109-112
XLIX.-L. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation.— The Rela- tive Pronoun	113-115
L.I. Two Accusatives: Same Person or Thing.— With Compounds	116-117
LII. Two Accusatives: Person and Thing.....	118-120
LIII. Interrogative Pronouns.— Interrogative Particles : -ne, Nōnne, Num	120-122
LIV. Verbs: Subjunctive Mood	123-124
LV.-LVI. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.— Sequence of Tenses.....	124-128
LVII. Indefinite Pronouns	128-129
LVIII. Dative of Possession.— Dative of Service	130-131
LIX.-LX. Infinitive with Subject Accusative as Object.— Tense of the Infinitive.....	132-135
LXI. Complementary Infinitive.— Infinitive as Subject, 135-137	
LXII. Deponent Verbs.— Ablative with Útor, Fruor, etc., 137-139	
LXIII.-LXIV. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive: Horta- tory, Optative, Dubitative	140-142
LXV. Adverbs: Formation and Comparison.....	143-145
LXVI. Ablative: Separation and Want.....	146-147
LXVII. Ablatives: Source and Cause.....	148-149
LXVIII. Irregular Verb: Possum.— Impersonal Use of In- transitive Verbs in the Passive	150-151
LXIX. Irregular Verbs: Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.— Final Clauses,	152-154

LESSONS.

	PAGES.
LXX. Irregular Verbs: Ferō, Eō. —Complementary Final Clauses.....	154-156
LXXI. Irregular Verb: Fiō. —Ablative of Comparison. — Ablative of Difference	157-159
LXXII. Defective Verbs: Ōdī, Coepī, Memini. —Verbs of Memory.....	159-161
LXXIII. Consecutive Clauses	162-164
LXXIV. Quōminus and Quin	164-167
LXXV. Subjunctive in Relative Clauses of Characteristic,	167-168
LXXVI. Constructions with Verbs of Feeling.....	169-171
LXXVII. Conditional Sentences: Present and Past Suppositions	172-174
LXXVIII. Conditional Sentences: Future Suppositions	175-177
LXXIX. Concessive Clauses.—Clauses of Proviso.....	178-180
LXXX. Special Constructions	180-183
LXXXI. Temporal Clauses: Postquam, Ubi, Ut, Simul Atque; Cum (Temporal).....	183-185
LXXXII. Cum with the Indicative in Temporal Clauses ..	186-188
LXXXIII. Cum in Causal and Concessive Clauses	189-191
LXXXIV. Temporal Clauses with Priusquam and Ante-quam	191-193
LXXXV. Temporal Clauses with Dum and Quoad. —Price,	194-196
LXXXVI.-LXXXVII. Place from Which.—Place to Which. — Place Where	197-200
LXXXVIII.-LXXXIX. Indirect Discourse: Declaratory and Imperative Sentences.....	201-205
XC. Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse	206-208
XC.-XCVI. Formation	209-223
ANECDOTES FROM CICERO	224-229
READING LESSONS	230-241
EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS	242
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	243-308
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	309

INDUCTIVE LATIN LESSONS.

INTRODUCTORY.

NOTE.—The Latin alphabet, which for the vowels is phonetic, is here introduced for the convenience of those teachers who aim to secure a correct quantitative pronunciation. As success in this direction depends on a right beginning, it is recommended that the pupil be taught the Latin names of the single letters and diphthongs at the outset, and that, until right habits have been established, these Latin names be used in occasional exercises in oral spelling.

I.

LATIN ALPHABET.

CHARACTER.	NAME.	PRONUNCIATION OF NAME.
{ a	a	ăh
{ ā	ā	ăh ¹
b	be	bay ²
c	ce	kay ²
d	de	day ²
{ e	e	ĕ (as in met)
{ ē	ē	foregoing sound prolonged. ¹
f	ef	ef
g	ge	gay ²
h	ha	hah
Vowel: { i	i	ĕe
{ ī	ī	ēe ¹
Consonant: j	i	ee ³
k	ka	kah
l	el	el
m	em	em
n	en	en

LATIN DIPHTHONGS.

CHARACTER.	NAME.	PRONUNCIATION OF NAME.
{ o	o	ō
		(as sometimes heard in <i>whole</i> , i.e., the continental short <i>o</i> , not so broad as the <i>o</i> in <i>not</i>)
ō	ō	foregoing sound prolonged. ¹
p	pe	pay ²
q	qu	koo
r	er	e as in <i>met</i> ; r . trilled.
s	es	ess
t	te	tay ²
Vowel: { u	u	ōo
{ ū	ū	ōō ¹
Consonant: v	u	oo ⁴
x	ix	eeks
[y	ū	like French <i>u</i> or German <i>ü</i>]
[z	zēta	as in Greek]

2.

LATIN DIPHTHONGS.

ae	ae	ai ¹ (as in <i>aisle</i>)
au	au	ou ¹ (as in <i>house</i>)
oe	oe	oi ¹ (as in <i>toil</i>)
ui	ui	oo-ee ¹ (rapidly uttered)
eu	eu	eh-oo ¹ (rapidly uttered)

¹ The diphthongs and long vowels should occupy twice as much time in utterance as the short vowels.

² The sound here represented by *-ay* is approximate only; the true sound of Latin "e" has no *ee*-vanish.

³ *ee* here represents the pronunciation of the letter "j" used by itself; e.g., in

oral spelling. In combination with other letters, "j" has the power of "y" in *yes*.

⁴ *oo* here represents the pronunciation of the letter "v" used by itself; e.g., in oral spelling. In combination with other letters, "v" has the power of "w" in *we*.

II.

SYLLABICATION.

3.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Au'-di-ð, <i>I hear.</i> | 3. Proe'-li-um, <i>battle.</i> |
| 2. Ge'-ner, <i>son-in-law.</i> | 4. A-mi-ci'-ti-a, <i>friendship.</i> |

4. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in each of the foregoing examples a *single consonant* stands between two vowels (see: **d**, Ex. 1; **p**, Ex. 2; **l**, Ex. 3; **m, c**, and **t**, Ex. 4). To which vowel is it joined in writing? Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

5.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. An'-nus, <i>year.</i> | 3. Bel'-lum, <i>war.</i> |
| 2. Mit'-tō, <i>I send.</i> | 4. Ag'-ger, <i>mound.</i> |

6. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in each of the foregoing examples a *consonant is doubled* between two vowels (see: **n-n**, Ex. 1; **t-t**, Ex. 2; **l-l**, Ex. 3; **g-g**, Ex. 4). To which vowel is each consonant joined in writing? Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

7.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. A'-sper, <i>rough.</i> | 5. Bel'-gae, <i>the Belgae.</i> |
| 2. Fra'-trēs, <i>brothers.</i> | 6. Am'-plus, <i>ample.</i> |
| 3. Jū-stus, <i>just.</i> | 7. Lin'-gua, <i>tongue.</i> |
| 4. Rō-strum, <i>beak.</i> | 8. Ar'-ma, <i>arms.</i> |

8. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in the foregoing examples *two or more consonants* stand between two vowels (see: **sp**, Ex. 1; **tr**, Ex. 2; **st**, Ex. 3; **str**, Ex. 4; **l-g**, Ex. 5; **m-pl**, Ex. 6; **n-gu**, Ex. 7; **r-mi**, Ex. 8). Note, further, that such of these groups of consonants as can *begin a word* belong to the *second vowel*, and so *begin a syllable* (see Exs. 1-4); whereas, such of these groups

as cannot begin a word are divided (see Exs. 5-8). Frame a rule for Syllabication in such cases.

9.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab'-e-ō** (*ab, away; eō, I go*), *I go away.*
2. **In-I'-quus** (*in-, not; aequus, fair*), *unfair.*
3. **Ab'-est** (*ab, away; est, he is*), *he is away.*
4. **Red'-i-mō** (*red-, back; emō, I buy*), *I buy back.*

10. OBSERVATION: Note that the foregoing examples are *compounds*, and that, in syllabication, the *parts* of each compound are treated as *separate words*. Frame a rule for the Syllabication of Compounds.

11.

EXERCISE.

Spell, syllabicate, and pronounce the following words:—

² dēleō, <i>I destroy.</i>	² littera, <i>letter.</i>
³ impedimentum, <i>impediment.</i>	² māgnus, ⁶ <i>great.</i>
⁴ injūria, <i>injury.</i>	² occupō, <i>I seize.</i>
⁴ prōvincia, <i>province.</i>	⁴ officium, <i>duty.</i>
⁴ inūtilis, ⁵ <i>unprofitable.</i>	² redeō, ⁷ <i>I return.</i>
⁴ jūstitia, <i>justice.</i>	² adeō, ⁸ <i>I go to.</i>
² oppidum, <i>town.</i>	² dīxit, ⁹ <i>he said.</i>

¹ The accented syllable of Latin words will be marked until the subject of accentuation has been treated.

² Accent the first syllable.

³ Accent the fourth syllable.

⁴ Accent the second syllable.

⁵ inūtilis (compound) = *in-, not;* *ūtilis, useful.*

⁶ The combination *gn* can begin a word.

⁷ redeō (compound) = *red-, back;* *eō, I go.*

⁸ adeō (compound) = *ad, to;* *eō, I go.*

⁹ x, though a double consonant (= c + s), is treated as a single consonant in syllabication.

III.

QUANTITY.

12.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Recū'sat, he refuses.</i> | 4. <i>Lau'dat, he commends.</i> |
| 2. <i>Tī'mēs, you fear.</i> | 5. <i>Proe'lium, battle.</i> |
| 3. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> | 6. <i>Ae'vum, age.</i> |

13. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples contains a *long vowel* (see Exs. 1-3) or a *diphthong* (see Exs. 4-6). Such a syllable is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Long Vowel or Diphthong.

Note that the syllables *not italicized* in the foregoing examples contain a *short vowel*. Such syllables are *short*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable containing a Short Vowel.

NOTE : For an exception to the rule implied in the last paragraph, see 15 below.

14.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>An'nus, year.</i> | 4. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> |
| 2. <i>Bel'gae, the Belgae.</i> | 5. <i>Vāl'lum, wall.</i> |
| 3. <i>Lin'gua, tongue.</i> | 6. <i>Dux, leader.</i> |

15. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *vowel* of the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples is *followed by two consonants* (see Exs. 1-5) or by a *double consonant* (see x,¹ Ex. 6). The *vowel* so placed may be long (see Exs. 4 and 5) or short (see Exs. 1, 2, 3, and 6); but the *syllable* is *long*. Frame a rule for the Quantity of a Syllable whose Vowel is followed by Two Consonants or a Double Consonant.

NOTE : For an exception to the foregoing, see A. & G. 18, e; H. 10, III.; G. 11.

16.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Amīci'tia, friendship.</i> | 3. <i>Pro'elium, battle.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ha'beō, I have.</i> | 4. <i>Vi'ae, ways.</i> |

17. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *vowel* of the italicized syllable in each of the foregoing examples is *followed by another vowel* (see Exs. 1-3) or by a *diphthong* (see Ex. 4). Both the *vowel* so placed and the *syllable* containing it are *short*. Frame a rule for the *Quantity* of a *Syllable* whose *Vowel* is followed by another *Vowel* or by a *Diphthong*.

¹ $x = c + s$ or $g + s$.

IV.

ACCENT.

18.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>An'nus, year.</i> | 3. <i>Jū'stus, just.</i> |
| 2. <i>Lau'dō, I commend.</i> | 4. <i>Lin'gua, tongue.</i> |

19. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the foregoing examples are words of *two syllables*. Which syllable is *accented*? Frame a rule for the *Accent* of Latin Words of Two Syllables.

20.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Habē'mus, we have.</i> | 5. <i>Ha'beō, I have.</i> |
| 2. <i>Recūsā'mus, we refuse.</i> | 6. <i>Amīci'tia, friendship.</i> |
| 3. <i>Cōfir'mō, I establish.</i> | 7. <i>Op'pidum, town.</i> |
| 4. <i>Trānspor'tō, I transport.</i> | 8. <i>Po'pulus, people.</i> |

21. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the foregoing examples are words of *more than two syllables*, (2) that in Exs. 1-4 the *penult¹* is *long*, and (3) that in Exs. 5-8 the *penult* is *short*. Which syllable is *accented* when the *penult* is *long* (see Exs. 1-4)? Which syllable is *accented* when the *penult* is *short* (see Exs. 5-8)? Frame a rule for the *Accent* of Latin Words of More than Two Syllables.

22.

EXERCISE.

Spell each of the following words, syllable by syllable; give the Quantity of each syllable when you have spelled it; then Pronounce the complete word; thus, **r-e**, **re**, *short*; **c-ū**, **cū**, *long*; **s-ā**, **sā**, *long*; **m-u-s**, **mus**, *short*; **recūsā'mus**.

amō, *I love.*

cōn-firmās,² *you (sing.) establish.*

laudat, *he commends.*

recūsāmus, *we refuse.*

probātis, *you (pl.) approve.*

trāns-portant,² *they transport.*

moneō, *I warn.*

habēs, *you (sing.) have.*

manet, *he remains.*

pārēmus, *we obey.*

tenētis, *you (pl.) hold.*

timent, *they fear.*

¹ The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

In this book the parts of compound words will be separated by the hyphen.

² Compound; in the vocabularies of

LESSON I.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

NOTE: It is assumed that the pupil is already familiar with the parts of speech and their properties (as person, number, gender, mood, tense, etc.), or, failing this, that the teacher will explain and illustrate them as occasion requires.

The long vowels are marked throughout this book; vowels not marked are to be pronounced short. As a practical aid in the observance of quantity, it is recommended that the pupil be required, in written exercises, to mark the long vowels.

23.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Amō**, *I love*; **amāre**, *to love.*
2. **Moneō**, *I warn*; **monēre**, *to warn.*
3. **Tegō**, *I cover*; **tegere**, *to cover.*
4. **Audiō**, *I hear*; **audire**, *to hear.*

24. EXPLANATION: The foregoing examples show that in Latin the *present infinitive active* is formed, not as in English by placing the preposition *to* before the simple form of the verb, but by adding **-re**. Moreover, some verbs (as **amō**) have a characteristic vowel **-ā** before this infinitive ending, others (as **moneō**) have **-ē-**, others (as **tegō**) have **-e-**, and others (as **audiō**) have **-I-**. Accordingly,

**25. Latin verbs are divided into four groups called
CONJUGATIONS.**

1. The First Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-ā-** before the ending **-re**; as: *amā-re, to love.*

2. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-ē-** before the ending **-re**; as: *monē-re, to warn.*

3. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-e-** before the ending **-re**; as: *tege-re, to cover.*

4. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active has the characteristic vowel **-ī-** before the ending **-re**; as: *audiī-re, to hear.*

26. Learn, with meanings, the Present Indicative and Infinitive of the following verbs, and tell to which Conjugation each belongs:—

VOCABULARY.

cōn-firmō, ¹ -āre, ² <i>establish.</i>	pūniō, -īre, ³ <i>punish.</i>
dē-leō, -ēre, ² ³ <i>destroy.</i>	quaerō, -ere, <i>inquire.</i> ³
dūcō, -ere, <i>lead.</i>	re-cūsō, -āre, ³ <i>refuse.</i>
emō, -ere, <i>buy.</i>	regō, -ere, ³ <i>rule.</i>
habeō, -ēre, <i>have.</i>	tegō, -ere, <i>cover.</i>
impediō, -īre, <i>hinder.</i>	teneō, -ēre, <i>hold.</i>
laudō, -āre, <i>commend.</i>	timeō, -ēre, <i>fear.</i>
maneō, -ēre, <i>remain.</i> ³	trāns-portō, -āre, <i>transport.</i> ³
mūniō, -īre, <i>fortify.</i>	veniō, -īre, <i>COME.</i> ³
probō, -āre, <i>approve.</i> ³	vestiō, -īre, <i>clothe.</i>

¹ In translating the indicative, supply the pronoun *I.*

² To be read: *cōnfirmāre, dē-ēre, &c.*

³ English words or parts of words

that are *borrowed* from the Latin are printed in the vocabularies of this book in *this type*; English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with Latin words are printed in **SIMALL CAPITALS.**

LESSON II.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: CONJUGATIONS
I. AND II.

27. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **amō**: A. & G. p. 76, also § 194, *a*; H. p. 86, also § 446; G. p. 54, also § 198.

28. Inflect (like **amō**) the Present Indicative Active of **cōfirmō**, *I establish*; **laudō**, *I commend*; **probō**, *I approve*; **recūsō**, *I refuse*; **trānsportō**, *I transport*.

29. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. p. 90; G. p. 58.

30. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**) the Present Indicative Active of **habeō**, *I have*; **maneō**, *I remain*; **pāreō**, *I obey*; **teneō**, *I hold*; **timeō**, *I fear*.

31.

EXAMPLES.

Monet, *he warns*, or *he is warning*.

Nōn monent, *they do not warn*, or *they are not warning*.

32.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Cōfirmō. 2. Laudat. 3. Probātis. 4. Nōn recū-sāmus. 5. Trānsportant. 6. Cōfirmās. 7. Nōn probāmus. 8. Laudātis. 9. Habeō. 10. Manet. 11. Pārent. 12. Tenēs. 13. Nōn timēmus. 14. Manēs. 15. Manētis. 16. Nōn pāret. 17. Recūsant. 18. Timeō. 19. Trāns-portat. 20. Habēmus. 21. Tenētis. 22. Laudās. 23. Nōn cōfirmant. 24. Recūsō. 25. Nōn pārēs.

- II. 1. I approve. 2. He transports. 3. We commend.
 4. They do not refuse. 5. You (pl.) establish. 6. You
 (sing.) do not command. 7. They approve. 8. He refuses.
 9. You (sing.) have. 10. We are not obeying. 11. I
 am holding. 12. He does not fear. 13. You (pl.) fear.
 14. They are not remaining. 15. He has. 16. You (sing.)
 are remaining. 17. He does not command. 18. I obey.
 19. We transport. 20. I am remaining. 21. You (sing.)
 do not obey. 22. He establishes. 23. We do not approve.
 24. You (pl.) have. 25. They are establishing.

33. Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Probat. 2. Pārēmus. 3. Nōn laudant. 4. Recūsātis.
 5. Maneō. 6. Timēs. 7. Cōfirmāmus. 8. Habētis.
 9. Nōn tenet. 10. Recūsās. 11. Pāreō. 12. Probant. 13. Trānsportatis.
 14. Nōn probō. 15. Manēmus.

- II. 1. He holds. 2. They do not command. 3. You (sing.)
 approve. 4. He does not obey. 5. We are remaining. 6. You
 (sing.) fear. 7. I am establishing. 8. You (pl.) approve.
 9. They transport. 10. We do not have. 11. You (pl.) hold.
 12. You (sing.) refuse. 13. They obey. 14. I do not fear.
 15. I am commanding.



LESSON III.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: CONJUGATIONS III. AND IV.

34. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. p. 94; G. p. 64.

35. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**) the Present Indicative Active of **dīcō**, *I say*; **dūeō**, *I lead*; **mittō**, *I send*; **pōnō**, *I place*; **quaerō**, *I inquire*.

36. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative Active of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. p. 98; G. p. 68.

37. Inflect (like **audiō**) the Present Indicative Active of **mūniō**, *I fortify*; **pūniō**, *I punish*; **veniō**, *I come*; **vestiō**, *I clothe*; **impediō**, *I hinder*.

38. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Present Indicative of **sum**: A. & G. p. 68; H. p. 84; G. p. 50. Inflect the Present Indicative of **absum**,¹ *I am away*.

39.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Dicit. 2. Dūcimus. 3. Mittis. 4. Pōnunt.
 5. Quaerō. 6. Dīcitis. 7. Mūniunt. 8. Nōn pūnīmus.
 9. Veniō. 10. Vestīs. 11. Impedit. 12. Mūnītis.
 13. Es. 14. Absunt.¹ 15. Nōn laudāmus. 16. Mittimus.
 17. Timet. 18. Impediō. 19. Sumus. 20. Nōn habent.
 21. Cōnfirmat. 22. Abestis. 23. Dūcis. 24. Nōn pōnō.
 25. Timētis. 26. Venīmus. 27. Abes. 28. Vestiunt.
 29. Nōn quaerit. 30. Sum.

- II. 1. We say. 2. He is not leading. 3. I am placing.
 4. You (sing.) inquire. 5. They do not send. 6. You (pl.) lead. 7. I do not punish. 8. They are fortifying.
 9. He hinders. 10. We are coming. 11. You (sing.) clothe. 12. You (pl.) are fortifying. 13. You (pl.) are.
 14. He approves. 15. They are away. 16. We do not inquire. 17. I have. 18. You (sing.) punish.
 19. We are. 20. You (pl.) do not obey. 21. I refuse.
 22. He is away. 23. They say. 24. You (sing.) send.
 25. We do not fear. 26. They punish. 27. You (sing.) are away. 28. You (pl.) do not come. 29. I am hindering.
 30. He is.

40.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Dicis. 2. Pūnit. 3. Absumus.¹ 4. Nōn laudātis.
 5. Sunt. 6. Nōn dūcō. 7. Manent. 8. Impedimus. 9. Quae-
 ritis. 10. Absum.¹ 11. Mūnis. 12. Nōn probās. 13. Estis.
 14. Mittunt. 15. Tenēmus. 16. Venit.

II. 1. You (sing.) are. 2. You (pl.) do not refuse. 3. We
 are away. 4. I am fortifying. 5. He sends. 6. I am not away.
 7. He inquires. 8. You (pl.) are hindering. 9. They do not
 have. 10. You (sing.) lead. 11. We obey. 12. They are.
 13. We are sending. 14. We establish. 15. He does not come.
 16. You (pl.) clothe.

¹ *b* before *s* is sounded like *p*; hence, pronounce *apsum*, *apsumus*, *apsunt*.

**LESSON IV.****SUBSTANTIVES: FIRST DECLENSION.**

NOTE: It is assumed that the teacher will here prepare the way by oral instruc-
 tion for the declension of a Latin noun with the translation of its cases. For sugges-
 tions, see A. & G. § 31.

41. Learn the declension, with meanings, of **stella** (A. & G. 35) or **mēnsa** (H. 48; G. 27).

42. Define *Stem*, and give the stem¹ of **stella** (A. & G. 21, coarse type) or **mēnsa** (H. 46; G. 24).

43. Observe the *gender* of the substantives in the vocabulary of this lesson; then learn the Rule for Gender: A. & G. 35, to the second period; H. 48; G. 28.

44. Decline, giving stem, gender, and meanings, the substantives in the following

VOCABULARY.*

<i>amicitia, -ae, f., friendship.</i>	<i>contrōversia, -ae, f., dispute.</i>
<i>Aquitānia, -ae, f., Aquitania.³</i>	<i>Galba,⁵ -ae, m., Galba.³</i>
<i>Belgae,⁴ -arum, m., the Belgae³</i> (or <i>Belgians</i>).	<i>injūria, -ae, f., injury.</i>
<i>causa, -ae, f., cause.</i>	<i>patria, -ae, f., native country.</i>
<i>cōpia, -ae, f., abundance; in pl., forces, troops.</i>	<i>porta, -ae, f., gate.</i>

<i>contrōversia, -ae, f., dispute.</i>
<i>Galba,⁵ -ae, m., Galba.³</i>
<i>injūria, -ae, f., injury.</i>
<i>patria, -ae, f., native country.</i>
<i>porta, -ae, f., gate.</i>
<i>prōvincia, -ae, f., province.</i>
<i>sententia, -ae, f., opinion.</i>

* The stem vowel of the first declension will be treated as -i- in this book, the long quantity being original. *Stellā* and *mēnsā* will therefore be considered the stems of *stella* and *mēnsa* respectively. The teaching of the grammars on this point is not uniform.

The pupil should remember that the only object for which he is required to learn declensions is, that he may become so familiar with the forms as to be able to give the English equivalent of a Latin form, or the Latin equivalent of an English form, *on the instant*. In pre-

paring this vocabulary, therefore, he should not content himself with being able merely to name the cases of each substantive in their order, but should practise such exercises as the following: Express in Latin, *of friendship, the Belgians, by disputes, to the gate, &c.*; express in English, *Aquitāniae, causārum, injūriā, sententiā, &c.*

³ For fuller information, see the general vocabulary.

⁴ Omit the singular in declining.

⁵ Read A. & G. 75, 1; H. 130, 1, 1).

LESSON V. .

ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE.—ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

NOTE: It is assumed that the pupil is familiar with the structure of the simple sentence, or, failing this, that the teacher will orally explain such terms as *subject, predicate, object, etc.*

45.

EXAMPLES.*

1. *Ab injūriā* (1, 31, 16)², *from injury.*
2. *Ā prōvinciā* (1, 33, 4), (*away from*) *from the³ province.*
3. *Cum cōpīis* (4, 21, 3), *with the forces.*
4. *Dē injūriis* (1, 14, 6), *for injuries.*
5. *Ex (or ē) prōvinciā* (7, 65, 1), *from (out of) the province.*
6. *Prō patriā* (Cic. *Tusc.* 4, 19, 43), *in behalf of [one's] country.*
7. *Sine causā* (1, 14, 2), *without cause.*

46. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE:¹ Note (1) the *prepositions* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the *substantives* with which they are used. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with the foregoing Prepositions.

47. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:¹ A. & G. 152, b; H. 434; G. 418.

48.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Aquitānia pertinet** (1, 1, 7), *Aquitania extends.*
2. **Cōntrōversia est** (6, 13, 5), *there is a⁸ dispute.*
3. **Belgae pertinent** (1, 1, 6), *the Belgians extend.*
4. **Patent portae** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 5, 10), *the gates are open.⁴*
5. **Praestat amicitia** (Cic. *Lael.* 5, 19), *friendship takes precedence.⁴*

49. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *number*, *person* and *case* of the *substantives*, (2) the *number* and *person* of the *verbs*, and (3) the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. What is the usual order of *subject* and *predicate* (see Exs. 1-3)? What seems to be the effect when this order is *reversed* (see Exs. 4 and 5)? Frame rules (1) for the Case of the Subject of the sentence in Latin, (2) for the Number and Person of the Verb, and (3) for the Position of Subject and Predicate.

50. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 173, 204, 343, 344, a; H. 368, 460, 560, 561, I.; G. 194, 202, 676, 675, 1, 1.

51.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Causam probant** (6, 23, 7), *they approve the cause.*
2. **Sententiam laudant** (*Sall. Cat.* 53, 1), *they commend the opinion.*
3. **Amicitiam cōfirmāre** (1, 3, 1), *to establish friendship.*
4. **Sententiās dicere** (*Caes. B.C.* 1, 1, 2), *to express opinions.*
5. **Laudāmus dīvitīas** (*Sall. Cat.* 52, 22), *we commend riches.⁴*

52. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *class* (*i.e.*, whether *transitive* or *intransitive*) to which the verbs belong, (2) the *case* of the *substantives* construed with them, and (3) the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. Frame rules for the Case and Position of the Direct Object of a transitive verb in Latin.

53. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 237; H. 371; G. 327. For the order of the words, see the references in 50; also H. 561, II.

¹ The pupil should first study carefully the examples in connection with the paragraph designated "Observation and Inference," and should commit the examples to memory. Before consulting the sections in the grammar referred to under the heading "References for Verification," he should strive to discover for himself the principles which the examples illustrate, and to frame independently the rule for construction. When he has framed such a rule to the best of his ability, he may consult the grammar for the purpose of verifying or correcting his inferences or his phrase-

ology. The references, or their equivalent in grammatical English, should then be fixed in the memory for use in the exercises which follow.

² Citations given without name are from Caesar's Gallic War.

³ There is no article in Latin. In translation from Latin into English, the article must be supplied wherever the English usage requires it; in translation from English into Latin, the article must be disregarded.

⁴ *This type* in the English translation denotes emphasis.

LESSON VI.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

54.

VOCABULARY.¹

ab , ā , ² prep. w. abl., <i>away from, from.</i>	longē , adv., <i>far.</i>
cum , prep. w. abl., <i>with.</i>	prō , prep. w. abl., <i>in front of, in behalf of, for.</i>
dē , prep. w. abl., <i>from, about.</i>	pūgnō , - <i>āre</i> , <i>fight.</i>
ē-dūcō , - <i>ere</i> , <i>lead out.</i>	red-dō , - <i>ere</i> , <i>return (trans.), restore.</i>
ex , ē , ³ prep. w. abl., <i>out of, from.</i>	sine , prep. w. abl., <i>without.</i>
Gallia , - <i>ae</i> , f., <i>Gaul.</i>	Tolōsa , - <i>ae</i> , f., <i>Toulouse.</i>
Genāva , - <i>ae</i> , f., <i>Geneva.</i>	vita , - <i>ae</i> , f., <i>life.</i>

55.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Galba dūcit.* 2. *Galba cōpiās dūcit.* 3. *Galba cōpiās ex Galliā dūcit.* 4. *Amīcitiam cōfirmant.* 5. *Cum Belgis amīcitiam cōfirmant.* 6. *Belgae timent.* 7. *Belgae sine causā timent.* 8. *Genāva abest.* 9. *Genāva longē abest.* 10. *Genāva ā Tolōsa longē abest.* 11. *Dē injūriūs quaerit.* 12. *Vītam prō vītā reddunt.*

II. 1. The Belgians lead-out.⁴ 2. The Belgians lead-out their⁵ forces. 3. We are leading-out our⁶ forces from the province. 4. They are inquiring about the forces. 5. He establishes friendship. 6. We are establishing friendship with the Belgians. 7. You (sing.) fear without cause. 8. He leads his forces out-of Italy. 9. They are fighting for their⁵ country.

56.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Cōpiās ex prōvinciā ēdūcunt. 2. Dē pūgnā cōgnōscit. 3. Galliam ab injūriā dēfendit. 4. Messālla lacrimās nōn tenet. 5. Amīcītiām recūsāmus, nōn appetimus.

II. 1. Toulouse is at a great distance (is-distant far) from Geneva. 2. They learn about the injuries. 3. Galba is transporting his⁵ forces from (out-of) Gaul. 4. We do not keep-back our⁵ tears. 5. You reject friendships, you do not seek after [them].⁶

¹ This vocabulary and subsequent special vocabularies will contain the words of the "Exercises" only; the words of the "Supplementary Exercises" will be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. Words once given in a special vocabulary will not be repeated in subsequent special vocabularies.

² Use ab before words beginning with a vowel; use ā before words beginning with a consonant. For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

³ Use ex before words beginning with a vowel; use ex or ē before words beginning with a consonant.

⁴ Words connected by a hyphen are to be treated in translation as a single expression.

⁵ Omit the possessive here. See A. & G. 197, c; H. 447; G. 299.

⁶ Words in brackets are to be omitted in translation.

LESSON VII.

SUBSTANTIVES: SECOND DECLENSION.

57. Learn the declension, with gender and meanings, of **servus** (or **hortus**), **puer**, **ager**, **vir**, **bellum** (or **templum**): A. & G. 38; H. 51; G. 29, 31.

58. Give the *stem* of each of the substantives in the foregoing paragraph, and explain the formation of the *nominative* from the stem. For this purpose read: A. & G., first paragraph of the note preceding 38, and first sentence of the second paragraph; H. 51, 1, 2, 1), 2), 4), 5); G. 29, 31, 32³.

59. Observe the *gender* of the substantives in the vocabulary of this lesson; then learn the Rule for Gender: A. & G. 39; H. 51; G. 30.

60. Decline, giving stem, gender, and meanings, the substantives in the following

VOCABULARY.¹

ager, -gri, m., <i>land, field</i> ; in pl., also <i>country districts</i> .	imperium, -li, n., <i>command, control</i> .
castra, -ōrum, ² n., <i>camp</i> .	Labiēnus, ³ -i, m., <i>Labienus</i> . ⁴
conloquium, -ii, n., <i>conference</i> .	lēgātus, -i, m., <i>ambassador; lieu-</i> <i>tenant</i> .
frūmentum, -i, n., <i>grain</i> (usually (of harvested grain); in pl., <i>grain</i> (especially of standing grain).	mūrus, -i, m., <i>wall</i> .
Galli, ² -ōrum, m., <i>the Gauls</i> .	oppidum, -i, n., <i>town</i> (viewed as stronghold).
gener, -eri, m., <i>son-in-law</i> .	populus, -i, m., <i>people, race</i> .
Helvētii, ² -ōrum, m., <i>the Hel-</i> <i>vetians</i> .	proelium, -ii, n., <i>battle</i> .
hiberna, ² -ōrum, n., <i>winter-quar-</i> <i>ters</i> .	puer, -eri, m., <i>child, boy</i> .
impedimentum, -i, n., <i>hindrance</i> ; in pl., <i>baggage</i> .	studium, -li, n., <i>zeal; devotion;</i> <i>pursuit</i> .
	vicus, -i, m., <i>village</i> .
	vir, viri, m., <i>man</i> .

¹ See foot-note 2, Lesson IV.

² Omit the singular in declining.

³ See foot-note 5, Lesson IV.

⁴ For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

LESSON VIII.

THE PREPOSITION *In.* — GENITIVES: POSSESSIVE,
SUBJECTIVE, OBJECTIVE.

61.

EXAMPLES.

1. ***In Galliam contendit*** (1, 7, 1), *he hastens into Gaul.*
2. ***In conloquium venire*** (1, 35, 2), *to come to a conference.*
3. ***Frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant*** (3, 9, 8), *they collect the grain from the country districts [and convey it] into the towns.*
4. ***In vicō hiemāre*** (3, 1, 4), *to pass the winter in the village.*
5. ***In mūrō*** (2, 6, 3), *on the wall.*
6. ***In Galliā in hibernis*** (2, 1, 1), *in winter-quarters in Gaul.*

62. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in the first three of the foregoing examples *in* means *into* or *to*, and therefore answers the question *whither?*; note, on the other hand, that in the last three examples *in* means *in* or *on*, and answers the question *where?*. Note, further, the *case* of the *substantives* construed with *in* in the two sets of examples. With what cases, then, may *in* be used, and with what difference of meaning? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with *in*.

63. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 152, c, last two lines; H. 435, n. 1; G. 419.

64.

EXAMPLES.

1. ***In castris Helvētiōrum*** (1, 29, 1), *in the camp of (i.e., belonging to) the Helvetians.*
2. ***Oppidum Rēmōrum*** (2, 6, 1), *a town of (i.e., belonging to) the Remi.*
3. ***Divitiaci studium*** (1, 19, 2), *the devotion of Divitiacus (Divitiacus manifests the devotion).*
4. ***Fuga Gallōrum*** (1, 40, 8), *the flight of the Gauls (the Gauls flee).*
5. ***Prō injūriis populi*** (1, 30, 2), *in return for the injuries of (i.e., done to) the people.*
6. ***Britanniae imperium*** (2, 4, 7), *authority over (i.e., exercised towards) Britain.*

65. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the *genitive* in each of the foregoing examples limits a *substantive*, (2) that the genitive denotes a *different person or thing* from that denoted by the limited substantive, and (3) that the relation of the genitive to the limited substantive is (in most of the examples) expressed in English by the preposition *of*. Frame a rule for these and similar Genitives.

66. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 213; H. 393, 395.

67. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples just considered. What seems to be the usual position of the genitive with reference to the substantive which it limits?

68. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: H. 565; G. 678.

69. OBSERVATION: Note further (1) that in Exs. 1 and 2 the genitive expresses *possession*, and may therefore be called a *Possessive Genitive*; (2) that in Exs. 3 and 4 the genitive expresses the *subject* of the feeling or action denoted by the limited substantive, and may therefore be called a *Subjective Genitive*; (3) that in Exs. 5 and 6 the genitive expresses the *object* of the action denoted by the limited substantive, and may therefore be called an *Objective Genitive*.

70. REFERENCES: A. & G. 214, 217; H. 396, I., II., III.; G. 360, 361, 1, 2.

71.

VOCABULARY.

ad-ministrō, -āre, *execute*.
Aedui,¹ -ōrum, m., the *Aeduans*.
 ap-petō, -ere, *strive to secure*.
bellum, -ī, n., *war*.
beneficium, -ī, n., *benefit*.
Britannia,² -ae, f., *Britain*.
con-locō, -āre, *place*.
dē-pōnō, -ere, *put aside*.
Divitiacus,³ -ī, m., *Divitiacus*.
in, prep., w. acc., *into* (opp. *ex*);
 w. abl., *in*, *on*.

memoria, -ae, f., *remembrance*.
mittō, -ere, *send*.
neg-legō, -ere, *disregard*, *neglect*.
ob-tineō, -ēre, *hold*.
oc-cidō, -ere, *kill*, *slay*.
postulō, -āre, *demand*.
Rōmāni,¹ -ōrum, m., the *Romans*.
saxum, -ī, n., *stone*.
socer, -eri, m., *father-in-law*.
vastō, -āre, *lay waste*.

72

EXERCISES.

I. 1. • Labiēnus est in Galliā in hībernīs. 2. In Galliam lēgātūm mittit. 3. Beneficiōrum memoriam nōn dēpōnimus. 4. Aeduōrum agrōs vastant. 5. Gener sacerum occidit. 6. Ab castrīs oppidum Aeduōrum longē abest. 7. Dīvitia-cus Britanniae imperium obtinet. 8. Saxa in mūrō conlo-cant. 9. In castra cum impedīmentīs veniunt. 10. Stu-dium Galbae nōn neglegit.

II. 1. They send ambassadors into the town. 2. We do not demand control of the war. 3. He strives-to-secure the friendship of the Romans. 4. The Romans are in winter-quarters. 5. The fathers-in-law kill their sons-in-law. 6. They execute the orders (*imperium*) of the lieutenant. 7. We do not disregard the wrongs (*injūria*) of the Aedu-ans. 8. The baggage is in the camp. 9. They come into camp without their baggage.

73.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Frūmentum in prōvinciam portant. 2. Sunt frūmenta in agrīs Aeduōrum. 3. Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglegit. 4. Fuga Gallōrum Rōmānōs commovet.

II. 1. He puts-aside the remembrance of his injuries. 2. The fields of the Aedui are at a great distance (are-distant far) from the camp. 3. They carry the baggage into the camp. 4. [There] are stones on the wall.

¹ Omit the singular in declining.

² See foot-note 5, Lesson IV.

³ For fuller information, see general vocabulary.

LESSON IX.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

74. EXAMPLES.

SINGULAR.

- M. **Vir bonus** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 15, 61), *a good man.*
 F. **Villam bonam** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 13, 55), *a good country-house.*
 N. **Solō bonō** (Cat. *R. R.* 1), *by good soil.*

PLURAL.

- M. **Virōs bonōs** (Cic. *Tusc.* 5, 10, 28), *good men.*
 F. **Bonās hōrās** (Mart. 1, 113), *good* (*i.e.*, valuable, precious) *hours.*
 N. **Verbōrum bonōrum** (Cic. *Brut.* 66, 233), *of good* (*i.e.*, well-chosen) *expressions.*

75. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *number, gender,* and *case* of the *substantives* in each of the foregoing examples, and (2) the *form* of the *adjective* associated with it. Does the Latin adjective, like the English, remain unchanged in form, or is it varied to suit the number, gender, and case of the substantive to which it belongs? Are Latin adjectives, then, declined?

76. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 186; H. 438; G. 285.

77. Learn the declension, with stems, of **bonus**: A. & G. 81; H. 147, 148; G. 33.

78. Learn the declension, with stems, of **miser** (or **liber**) and **niger** (**aeger** or **piger**): A. & G. 82; H. 149, 150; G. 34.

79. Decline, giving stems, the *adjectives* in the following

VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ad-scendō, -ere, ascend. | asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, |
| aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., ill, sick. | rugged. |

<i>dividō, -ere, separate.</i>	<i>periculum, -ī, n., danger, <i>peril</i>.</i>
<i>im-plorō, -āre, implore.</i>	<i>prae-cēdō, -ere, excel.</i>
<i>jugum, -ī, n., YOKE, (mount.)ridge.</i>	<i>re-linquō, -ere, leave behind.</i>
<i>lacrima, -ae, f., TEAR.</i>	<i>reliquis, -a, -um, adj., remaining.</i>
<i>līber, -era, -erūm, free.</i>	<i>Rhodanus, -ī, m., the <i>Rhone</i>.</i>
<i>māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great.</i>	<i>Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., <i>Roman</i>.</i>
<i>multus, -a, -um, adj., much; in pl., many.</i>	<i>Sēquani, -ōrum, m., the <i>Sequani</i>.</i>
<i>noster, -tra, -trūm, adj., our.</i>	<i>servus, -ī, m., slave.</i>
<i>numerus, -ī, m., number.</i>	<i>superō, -āre, conquer, defeat.</i>

80. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples of 74. What seems to be the usual position of the adjective with respect to its substantive?

81. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 343, c; H. 565, with 1; G. 678.

82. Decline together, with meanings: **puer aeger**, *a sick child*; **jugum asperum**, *a rugged ridge*; **populus Rōmānus** (*in sing.*), *the Roman people*; **reliquae cōpiae** (*in pl.*), *the remaining forces*.

83.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Populī Rōmānī amīcitiam recūsat. 2. Līberōs Galliae populōs superat. 3. Multōs puerōs aegrōs relinquunt. 4. Multīs dē¹ causīs² Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. 5. Māgnum servōrum numerum habet. 6. Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit.

II. 1. The Rhone separates the Sequani from our province. 2. Our forces are ascending the rugged ridge. 3. The sick children are in¹ great danger. 4. He implores with¹ many tears. 5. He leads-out the remaining forces of the Helvetians.

84.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrant. 2. Divitiaci māgnum in⁸ populum Rōmānum studium cōgnōscit. 3. Multis

de causis in jugo aspero legatum relinquit. 4. Legatum magnō cum periculō in Galliam mittō.

- II. 1. For⁴ many reasons our forces excel the Helvetians.
 2. The sick child implores aid with many tears. 3. The free races of Gaul refuse the friendship of our lieutenant.

¹ A. & G. 345, a; G. 680, 2.

² Translate: *for many reasons*.

³ Translate: *to*.

⁴ See 83, I., sent. 4.

LESSON X.

ADJECTIVES: ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE.— DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

85.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Amicitia numquam molesta est** (Cic. *Lael.* 6, 22), *friendship is never troublesome.*
2. **Verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt** (Cic. *Lael.* 9, 32), *true friendships are everlasting.*
3. **Fortuna caeca est** (Cic. *Lael.* 15, 54), *Fortune is blind.*
4. **Imbecilla est natura** (Cic. *Lael.* 17, 63), *nature is weak.*¹
5. **Tanta est stultitiae incōstantia** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 2, 4), *such is the inconsistency¹ of folly.*
6. **Sumus otiosi** (Cic. *Lael.* 5, 17), *we are at-leisure.*¹
7. **At² sunt mōrōsi, et anxii, et irācundi senēs³** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 18, 65), *but, you will say,² the old are full-of-whims, uneasy, and irritable.*¹

86. OBSERVATION: Compare the foregoing examples with those of 74. Note that in the latter the adjectives simply qualify their substantives *without the intervention of a verb*, whereas in the examples of 85 the adjectives are connected with their substantives by some form of the verb **sum**. The adjectives of 74 merely designate an *attribute* or quality, and are called *Attributive Adjectives*; the adjectives of 85 unite with the verb to form the *predicate*, and are called *Predicate Adjectives*. Note, further, that the predicate

adjective, like the attributive, agrees⁴ with its substantive in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

87. REFERENCES: A. & G. 186, *a*, *b*; H. 438, 2; G. 284, I., 285, 202².

88. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples of **85**. Does the predicate adjective appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede* the verb (see Exs. 1-5)? What appears to be the effect when this order is *reversed* (see Exs. 6, 7)? Why is the subject placed *last* in Ex. 5? Why does **Imbēcilla est** stand at the *beginning* of the sentence in Ex. 4?

89. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 343, with *a*, 344, *a*; H. 560, 561, I., II.; G. 676, 1, 2, 3, 675, 1, 1.

90.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Maurō cārus** (Sall. *Jug.* 108, 1), *dear to the Moor*.
2. **Populō Rōmānō periculōsum** (1, 33, 3), *dangerous to the Roman people*.
3. **Castris idōneum** (1, 49, 1), *suitable for a camp*.
4. **Helvētiis amīcus** (1, 9, 3), *friendly to the Helvetians*.
5. **Cupidīs⁵ odiōsum et molestum** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 14, 47), *vexatious and annoying to [those who are] desirous*.
6. **Finitimī Belgīs** (2, 2, 3), *adjacent to the Belgians*.
7. **Inimīcum Pompējō** (Sall. *Cat.* 19, 1), *hostile to Pompey*.

91. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *meaning* of the *adjectives* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the *substantives* construed with them. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives construed with such Adjectives as the foregoing.

92. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 234, *a*; H. 391, I.; G. 356.

93. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *order of the words* in the examples of **90**. Does the dative appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede* the adjective (see Exs. 1-5)?

94.

VOCABULARY.

- adversus**, -a, -um, adj., *unsuccessful, adverse*. **jūstus**, -a, -um, adj., *just, founded in right*.
- aedificium**, -i, n., *building*. **magister**, -tri, m., *master; teacher*.
- amicus**, -a, -um, adj., *friendly, favorably-disposed*. **miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*.
- bellicōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *warlike*. **numquam**, adv., *never*.
- cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear*. **periculōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *dangerous, perilous*.
- crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj.; *frequent, numerous*. **perniciōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *destructive, ruinous*.
- discipulus**, -i, m., *pupil*. **pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful*.
- equus**, -i, m., *horse*. **socius**, -ii, m., *ally*.
- finitimus**, -a, -um, adj., *bordering on, adjacent*. **supplicium**, -i, n., *punishment*.
- Germāni**, -ōrum, m., *the Germans*. **templum**, -i, n., *temple*.
- grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant, agreeable*. **victōria**, -ae, f., *victory*.

95.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lēgātum māgnō cum perīculō mittit. 2. Vīctōria Germānōrum populō Rōmānō perīculōsa est. 3. Multī socii aegrī in castrī manent. 4. Germānī asperī et bellicōsī sunt. 5. Supplicium socerī generō nōn est grātum. 6. Helvētiī sunt līberi. 7. Magister discipulīs cārus est, discipulī⁶ māistrō. 8. In Britanniā sunt crēbra aedificia.

II. 1. The Romans have beautiful temples. 2. Divitiacus is favorably-disposed to the Helvetians. 3. The horses of our lieutenant are beautiful. 4. The authority (*imperium*) of the Roman people in Gaul is founded-in-right. 5. Aquitania is adjacent to the Roman province. 6. The life of slaves is wretched. 7. An unsuccessful battle is ruinous to the Romans. 8. Free men are never wretched.

96.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Victōriæ cōpiārum nostrārum viris bonis grātae sunt. 2. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimīs obsecrat. 3. Reliquōs Belgās

26 INDICATIVE: PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE.

in officiō continet. 4. Diligentia discipulōrum magistris grāta est.
5. Divitiaci māgnum in populum Rōmānum studium cōgnōscit.
6. Nostrī equī nōn sunt nigri, sed rubri.

II. 1. The idleness of pupils is annoying to their teachers.
2. The Belgians are free. 3. Ariovistus is savage, passionate,
[and] headstrong. 4. He selects a place suitable for a camp.
5. He carries-on war for (**dē**) many reasons. 6. The Helvetians
excel the rest-of-the (*i.e.*, remaining) Gauls.

¹ See foot-note 4, Lesson V.

² At here introduces an objection which the speaker supposes will suggest itself to the minds of his hearers.

³ *senēs*, *the old*, belongs to the third declension, which will be treated later.

⁴ *ōtiōsī* in Ex. 6 agrees with *nōs*, *we*, the omitted subject of *sumus*.

⁵ A. & G. 188; H. 441, 1; G. 195, 1.

⁶ sc. *cārī* sunt.

LESSON XI.

VERBS: PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF BOTH VOICES.

97. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of **sum**: A. & G. p. 68; H. p. 84; G. p. 50.

98. Inflect (like **sum**) in the same tenses: **absum**; also learn the synopsis.

99. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, Active and Passive, of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 76, 78; H. pp. 86, 88; G. pp. 54, 56.

100. Inflect (like **amō**) in the same tenses of both voices: **cōfirmō**, **laudō**, **probō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

101. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 90, 92; G. pp. 58, 60.

102. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**): **habeō**, **teneō**, **timeō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

103. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 94, 96; G. pp. 64, 66.

104. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**): **dūcō**, **mittō**, **pōnō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

105. Learn (as in 99) the inflection and synopsis of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 98, 100; G. pp. 68, 70.

106. Inflect (like **audiō**): **impediō**, **pūniō**, **vestiō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

¹ The teacher will make such oral explanations on the Latin use of the tenses here considered as may be needed to lead the pupil to a correct and (for present purposes) adequate translation of the paradigms. See A. & G. 276, 277, 278; H. 466, 467, I., II., 468, 469, I., II., 470; G. 218, 222, 234.

LESSON XII.

EXERCISES ON THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF BOTH VOICES.

107.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Abestis. 2. Laudāmur. 3. Cōfirmābās. 4. Habēbō. 5. Tenēbuntur. 6. Dūcētur. 7. Mittēbantur. 8. Mūniēbātis. 9. Vestiēbāmūr. 10. Aberat. 11. Recūsās.

12. Probābis. 13. Habēris. 14. Dūcēminī. 15. Erimus. 16. Nōn pūniunt. 17. Pōnitur. 18. Impediēbāris. 19. Manet. 20. Nōn timēbunt. 21. Erāmus. 22. Vestire. 23. Tenēbātur. 24. Laudābor. 25. Nōn dīcimus. 26. Quaerēbam. 27. Pūniēbar. 28. Nōn veniētis. 29. Aberis. 30. Trānsportantur.

II. 1. I do not obey. 2. I am led. 3. We shall be commended. 4. They were saying. 5. You (pl.) were not feared. 6. He will obey. 7. We were establishing. 8. They were sent. 9. We shall inquire. 10. I was coming. 11. I shall be away. 12. We are feared. 13. The camp will be fortified. 14. They do not refuse. 15. He will be clothed. 16. You (sing.) were hindered. 17. We were. 18. They will remain. 19. I am held. 20. You will be sent. 21. He was led. 22. They were coming. 23. It is-in-process-of-fortification.¹ 24. We do not approve. 25. He will have. 26. You (sing.) punished. 27. You were not obeying. 28. We were hindered. 29. You (pl.) will transport. 30. I shall be feared.

108.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Nōn manēbant. 2. Dūcimini. 3. Vestiēre. 4. Impediēbar. 5. Trānsportātur. 6. Nōn recūsābis. 7. Tenēbāminī. 8. Mittēmur. 9. Dīcitis. 10. Eram. 11. Aberātis. 12. Pōnuntur. 13. Probābuntur. 14. Cōnfirmanī. 15. Mūnient. 16. Pūniēminī. 17. Nōn timēbantur. 18. Recūsābās. 19. Manēbant. 20. Mittitur.

II. 1. We shall obey. 2. We were not commended. 3. You (pl.) were coming. 4. You (sing.) will be hindered. 5. We were away. 6. We are led. 7. You do not have. 8. He will be punished. 9. They were inquiring. 10. He will be. 11. He will say. 12. It was-in-process-of-fortification.² 13. You (sing.) were praised. 14. I shall be away. 15. We shall be clothed. 16. You were held. 17. They do not approve. 18. You (sing.) are not feared. 19. I am sent. 20. I shall be punished.

¹ Present passive of mūniō.

² Imperfect passive of mūniō.

LESSON XIII.

ABLATIVES: MEANS OR INSTRUMENT AND VOLUNTARY AGENT.

109.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Frūmentō juvāre** (2, 3, 3), *to aid [him] with grain.*
2. **Ut fūmō sīgnificābātur** (2, 7, 4), *as was made evident by the smoke.*
3. **Armīs contendere** (2, 13, 2), *to contend with arms.*
4. **Copulīs continēbantur** (3, 13, 8), *they were held fast by means of grapnel-hooks.*
5. **Castra vällō fossāque mūnīre** (2, 5, 6), *to fortify the camp with a rampart and a ditch.*

110. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that the substantives which designate the *means or instrument by which* the action expressed by the verb is performed, are in the *ablative*. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting Means or Instrument.

111. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 248; H. 420; G. 403¹.

112.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab Suēbīs premēbantur** (4, 1, 2), *they were harassed by the Suebi.*
2. **Si postulātur à populō** (Cic. *Off.* 2, 17, 58), *if the people demand it* (lit., if it is demanded by the people).
3. **Ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque . . .** (1, 31, 4), *[invited] by the Arverni and Sequani.*
4. **Ab Divitiacō . . .** (1, 32, 1), *[delivered] by Divitiacus.*
5. **A Labiēnō . . .** (1, 22, 1), *[held] by Labienus.*

113. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Compare the *ablatives* in the foregoing examples with those of 109. Note that the *ablatives*

in 109 designate *things* used as *instruments*, and that they are not accompanied by a preposition; but that the ablatives in 112 designate *persons* acting as *voluntary agents*, and that they are accompanied by the preposition **ā** or **ab**. How, then, is the Agent, as distinguished from the Instrument, to be expressed in Latin?

114. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 246; H. 415, I.; G. 403².

115.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cūsō, -āre, <i>call to account.</i>	fossa, -ae, f., <i>ditch, moat.</i>
aqua, -ae, f., <i>water.</i>	fuga, -ae, f., <i>flight.</i>
Ariovistus, -i, m., <i>Ariovistus.</i> ¹	fūmus, -i, m., <i>smoke.</i>
com-moveō, -ēre, <i>disturb, disquiet.</i>	pateō, -ēre, <i>lie open, extend.</i>
com-pleō, -ēre, <i>FILL.</i>	praemium, -ii, n., <i>reward.</i>
concilium, -ii, n., <i>council.</i>	-que, ² conj., <i>and.</i>
con-vocō, -āre, <i>call together, con-voca-</i>	sarmenta, -ōrum, n. (usu. pl.), <i>light branches.</i>
dicō, -ere, <i>say, express.</i>	significō, -āre, <i>show, make evident.</i>
et, ² conj., <i>and.</i>	tribūnus, -i, m., <i>tribune.</i> ¹
ex-citō, -āre, <i>stimulate, excite.</i>	vällum, -i, n., <i>wall, rampart.</i>
ex-pellō, -ere, <i>drive out, expel.</i>	

116.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Fossam aquā complent. 2. Ab Aeduīs accūsātur.
 3. Castra vällō fossāque mūniēbant. 4. Concilium ā Belgīs convocabābitur. 5. Sarmentis fossās Rōmānōrum complēbimus. 6. Sententiae ā tribūnīs dīcēbantur. 7. Rōmānī adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commoventur.
 8. Superābuntur Belgae, expellentur Germānī.

- II. 1. The Germans will be defeated by the Gauls.
 2. I shall fortify the camp with a rampart. 3. The forces of the Gauls are defeated by Ariovistus. 4. The Helvetians were adjacent to the Roman province. 5. He will stimulate the tribunes by great rewards. 6. The camp, as (*ut*) was made evident by the smoke, extended over-a-wide-space (*lātē*, adv.³). 7. The baggage was held by our-men.⁴
 8. The ditches will be filled with water.

117.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Oppidum nātūrā locī mūniēbātur. 2. Concilium ab lēgātō convocātur. 3. Frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant. 4. Castris idōneum locum dēligēs. 5. Incepitāntur atque incū-santur reliquī Belgae ā Nerviis. 6. Undique locī nātūrā Hēlvētiī continentur.

II. 1. The camp will be defended by our-men.⁴ 2. A place suitable for a camp is selected. 3. The towns were fortified, and the grain was conveyed from the country districts into the towns. 4. The lieutenant will be harassed with difficulties by the Veneti. 5. You (pl.) will recompense the lieutenant with a great reward.

¹ See the general vocabulary.

² et, and, simply connects; -que, and, implies close connection and is en-clitic (appended to the second member); atque (āc), and also, gives emphasis to

the second member: A. & G. 156, a; H. 554, I., 2; G. 477, 478, 479.

³ Place the adverb before the verb: A. & G. 343; H. 567; G. 676 with Rem.

⁴ See foot-note 5, Lesson X.



LESSON XIV.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: MUTE STEMS.

118. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 46; H. 57, 58, 59; G. 54.

119. Decline:¹ prīnceps, -ipis, M., chief; rēx, -gis, M., king; dux, -cis, C.,² leader; miles, -itis, M., soldier; caput, -itis, N., head; jūdex, -icis, C.,² judge; rādix, -icis, F., root; lapis, -idis, M., stone; custōs, -ōdis, C.,² guard.

120. Note that the stems of the foregoing nouns are: prīcip-, rēg-, duc-, milit-, capit-, jūdic-, rādīc-, lapid-, custōd-.

121. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in **119**: A. & G. 44, 45, *a* (first sentence), *b* (first two sentences), *c* (entire); H. 57, 2, 58, 1, 2), 3), 5), 59, 1, 3); G. 51 (entire).

122. Decline together, with meanings:¹ **dux Rōmā-nus**, *a Roman leader*; **lēx dūra**, *a harsh law*; **eques noster**, *our horseman*; **caput māgnum**, *a large head*; **vōx libera**, *free speech*; **jūdex jūstus**, *a just judge*.

123.**VOCABULARY.²**cadō, -ere, *fall*.**Procillus**, -ī, m., *Procillus*.⁴in-fluō, -ere, *flow into, flow*.**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., *the Rhine*.**Juba**, -ae, m., *Juba*.⁴**trā-dūcō**, -ere, *lead across*.**Ōceanus**, -ī, m., *ocean*.**trahō**, -ere, *draw, drag*.**pauci**, -ae, -a, adj.(sing; rare), **FEW**.**vitium**, -ii, n., *fault*.**pedes**, -itis, m., *FOOT-soldier*.**vōx, vōcis**, f., *voice; speech; utterance, outcry*.**per-turbō**, -āre, *disturb*.**124.****EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Lēgēs reddit. 2. Rēx Germānōrum est in Galliā. 3. Equitēs ex oppidō peditēsque mittuntur ā rēge Jubā. 4. Ducēs cōpiās trādūcēbant. 5. Ducas vitium mīlitibus perniciōsum est. 6. Peditum vōcibus equitēs perturbābantur. 7. Paucī dē nostrīs equitibus cadunt. 8. Mīlitēs lapidibus pūgnant. 9. Procillus ā custōdibus ī fugā trahēbātur. 10. Rhēnus multīs capitibus⁵ in Ōceanum īfluit.

II. 1. The laws will be restored. 2. The Rhine has many sources (heads). 3. King Juba sends many horsemen from the town. 4. The guards were dragging Proculius in their flight. 5. The forces of the leaders will be led across. 6. The outcries of the soldiers disturbed the leader. 7. The flight of the horsemen was fraught-with-danger (*periculōsus*, adj.) to the foot-soldiers.

125.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Contrōversiae rēgum compōnentur. 2. In pūgnā militis officia praeſtabat. 3. Sēquani caput dēmittunt. 4. Militēs ab signis discēdent. 5. Dux in vällō custōdēs dispōnit. 6. Etiam militum vōcibus carpēbātur.

II. 1. The judges will settle the disputes. 2. The foot-soldiers were forsaking (withdrawing from) their standards. 3. I shall perform the duties of a leader in the fight. 4. Guards were placed at intervals on the wall by the leader. 5. Even the common-soldiers (**miles**) were reviling the leader with outcries.

¹ See foot-note 2, Lesson IV.

² Common gender, i.e., masculine or feminine.

³ See also, for vocab., 119 and 122.

⁴ See general vocabulary.

⁵ Translate: *mouths*.

—•••—

LESSON XV.

VERBS: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF BOTH VOICES.—PRINCIPAL PARTS.

126. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative of **sum**: A. & G. pp. 68, 69; H. p. 84; G. pp. 50, 51.

127. Learn, as in **126**, the inflection and synopsis of **absum**.²

128. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings,¹ of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, Active and Passive, of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 76, 78; H. pp. 86, 88; G. pp. 55, 57.

129. Inflect (like **amō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **cōfirmō**, *establish*; **laudō**, *commend*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

34 PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.

130. Learn, as in 128, the inflection and synopsis of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 90, 92; G. pp. 59, 61.

131. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **habeō**,³ *have, hold*; **compleō**,⁴ *fill*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

132. Learn, as in 128, the inflection and synopsis of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 94, 96; G. pp. 65, 67.

133. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **dūcō**,⁵ *lead*; **mittō**,⁶ *send*; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

134. Learn, as in 128, the inflection and synopsis of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 98, 100; G. pp. 69, 71.

135. Inflect (like **audiō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **pūniō**, *punish*; **vestiō**, *clothe*.

136. **OBSERVATION:** In committing to memory the forms of the verbs thus far introduced, the learner may have observed the following facts:—

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses, Active and Passive, in the several conjugations, have a common stem. This stem may be obtained by cutting off the syllable *-re* from the *Present Infinitive Active*, and is called the *Present Stem*. Thus the present stem of **amō** is **amā-**; the present stem of **moneō** (**dēleō**) is **monē-** (**dēlē-**); of **tegō** (**regō**, **emō**) is **tege-** (**rege-**, **eme-**); of **audiō** is **audi-**. Again, the *Present Infinitive Active* shows to which conjugation the verb belongs.

2. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses of the Active Voice, in the several conjugations, have a common stem. This stem may be obtained by cutting off the person-ending *-t*

from the third person singular of the *Perfect Indicative Active*, and is called the *Perfeci Stem*. Thus the perfect stem of **amō** is **amāvī-**; the perfect stem of **moneō** (**dēleō**) is **monuī-** (**dēlēvī-**); of **tegō** (**regō, emō**) is **tēxi-** (**rēxi-, ēmi-**); of **audiō** is **audīvī-**.

3. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses of the Passive Voice, in the several conjugations, are made up of the forms of **sum** in combination with the *Perfect Participle*.

137. INFERENCE: In view of the foregoing observed facts, what parts of the verb, besides the *Present Indicative Active*, are, from their importance, entitled to be called the *Principal Parts*?

138. VERIFICATION: The principal parts of **amō, love, moneō, warn, dēleō, destroy, tegō, cover, regō, rule, emō, buy, audiō, hear**, are:

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. INDIC. ACT.	PERF. PART. PASS.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus
tegō	tegere	tēxi	tectus
regō	regere	rēxi	rēctus
emō	emere	ēmi	ēmptus
audiō	audire	audīvī	audītus

¹ The teacher will make such oral explanations on the Latin use of the tenses here considered as may be needed to lead the pupil to a correct and (for present purposes) adequate translation of the paradigms. The two meanings of the Latin perfect, and the distinction between the imperfect and the historical perfect, should receive special notice. See A. & G. 277, 279, 280, 281, also 115, *b, c*; H. 438, 469, I., II., 471, I., II., 6, 472, 473; G. 222, 223, 226, 227, 231, 232, 233, 236.

² The perf. indic. of *absum* is *āfūl*.

³ The perf. indic. act. of *habeō* is *habūl*; the perf. participle is *habītus*.

⁴ The perf. indic. act. of *compleō* is *complēvī*; the perf. participle is *complētus*.

⁵ The perf. indic. act. of *dūcō* is *dūxī*; the perf. participle is *ductus*.

⁶ The perf. indic. act. of *mitto* is *misī*; the perf. participle is *missus*.

LESSON XVI.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

139. Learn from the general vocabulary (at the end of the book) the Principal Parts of the verbs in the following

VOCABULARY.

<i>ab-dūcō, lead away.</i>	<i>pōnō, place.</i>
<i>con-veniō, come together.</i>	<i>postulō, demand.</i>
<i>con-vocō, call together.</i>	<i>mūniō, fortify.</i>
<i>ē-nūntiō, divulge.</i>	<i>teneō, hold.</i>
<i>frangō, break, crush.</i>	<i>trā-dō, surrender.</i>
<i>per-moveō, move deeply.</i>	

140.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Cōfirmāvī. 2. Cōfirmābam. 3. Audītus erās.
 4. Ēnūntiāverō. 5. Vestītus eris. 6. Convocātī estis.
 7. Convocābāminī. 8. Postulāverat. 9. Mūnītī erant.
 10. Habitū es. 11. Frēgeritis. 12. Vestītū erunt.
 13. Convēnimus. 14. Conveniēbāmus. 15. Posueram.
 16. Missī sunt. 17. Mittēbantur. 18. Āfuerant. 19. Nōn
 habuerimus. 20. Complēvīstī. 21. Complēbās. 22. Per-
 mōtus est. 23. Fuerāmus. 24. Trāditus eram. 25. Per-
 mōtus erit. 26. Nōn pūnīvit. 27. Nōn pūniēbat. 28. Con-
 vocātī erātis. 29. Āfuerit. 30. Ductī eritis. 31. Posuē-
 runt. 32. Pōnēbant. 33. Laudātī sumus. 34. Laudābāmur.
 35. Complēverās. 36. Nōn convēnerint. 37. Audītī
 erāmus. 38. Frēgīstī. 39. Frangēbās. 40. Fuīstī.
 41. Erātis. 42. Fuērunt.
- II. 1. I was clothed. 2. I was (habitually) clothed.
 3. You (sing.) had been surrendered. 4. We shall have
 been called together. 5. You (pl.) will have come together.
 6. He had heard. 7. He has filled. 8. They will have

been led away. 9. You (pl.) had been deeply moved.
 10. You (sing.) were sent. 11. You (sing.) were (habitually) sent. 12. I shall have held. 13. I had fortified.
 14. You (pl.) clothed. 15. You (pl.) used to clothe.
 16. You (pl.) were clothing. 17. You (sing.) have divulged.
 18. You (pl.) had been. 19. He had been led. 20. You (sing.) will have been commended. 21. They demanded.
 22. They were demanding. 23. They were wont to commend. 24. You (pl.) were away. 25. He was wont to be deeply moved. 26. You (pl.) had held. 27. We shall not have been led. 28. We shall have broken. 29. He will have been. 30. I was in the habit of punishing.
 31. You (sing.) have not been away. 32. We were not heard. 33. You (pl.) used to hear. 34. They fortified the camp. 35. They were fortifying the camp. 36. The camp was in process of fortification. 37. You (sing.) will have divulged. 38. They have not been. 39. You (sing.) have not punished. 40. They had led away. 41. We had commended. 42. He will have held.

141.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. *Permōti erāmus.* 2. *Abductus est.* 3. *Complēverit.*
 4. *Trādiderātis.* 5. *Tenuērunt.* 6. *Missī erimus.* 7. *Nōn habuerās.* 8. *Āfūistis.* 9. *Fuit.* 10. *Erat.* 11. *Cōfirmāverint.*
 12. *Positī erant.* 13. *Missus sum.* 14. *Mittēbar.* 15. *Pūnitū eram.* 16. *Pūniēbantur.* 17. *Frēgerant.* 18. *Abductus erat.*
 19. *Posuimus..* 20. *Pōnēbāmus.*

II. 1. *We divulged.* 2. *They had been placed.* 3. *They have been crushed.* 4. *You (sing.) will have been led away.*
 5. *We had demanded.* 6. *He will have had.* 7. *You (sing.) will have been.* 8. *I shall have fortified.* 9. *I shall have been clothed.*
 10. *I led.* 11. *We did not lead.* 12. *You (pl.) were not leading.* 13. *You were wont to be led.* 14. *They had come together.*
 15. *He had been away.* 16. *You (pl.) had been called together.* 17. *They will have been filled.* 18. *I shall have established.*
 19. *You (sing.) had been.* 30. *They were away.*

LESSON XVII.

AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE IN COMPOUND TENSES.—DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.

142.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Mūrus nūdātus est** (2, 6, 2), *the wall was stripped.*
2. **Gallia posita est** (1, 16, 2), *Gaul is situated.*
3. **Proelium restitūtum est** (1, 53, 1), *the battle was renewed.*
4. **Reperti sunt equitēs Rōmānī** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 4, 9), *Roman knights were found.*
5. **Tabulae repertae sunt** (1, 29, 1), *lists were found.*
6. **Castra posita erant** (2, 8, 3), *the camp had been pitched.*

143. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender*, *number*, and *case* of the *participle* and of the *substantive* in each of the foregoing examples. Does the participle, like the adjective, agree with its substantive? Frame a rule for the Gender, Number, and Case of the Participle¹ in the tenses for completed action.

144. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 186; H. 438, 1.

145.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Umbrēnō negōtium dat** (Sall. *Cat.* 40, 1), *he assigns the work to Umbrenus.*
2. **Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit** (1, 20, 6), *he puts guards over Dumnorix.*
3. **Neque nostrīs cēdēbant** (Caes. *B. C.* 1, 57, 3), *nor did they yield to our men.*
4. **Labiēnō timēbat** (7, 56, 2), *he feared for [the safety of] Labienus.*
5. **Patriātē cōnsulere** (Nep. *Epam.* 10, 1), *to take thought for [the welfare of] one's country.*
6. **Praeterita Divitiacō condōnāre** (1, 20, 6) *to overlook the past [out of regard] for Divitiacus.*

7. **Favēre Helvētiis** (1, 18, 8), *to favor the Helvetians.*
8. **Lēgātīs imperat** (5, 1, 1), *he gives orders to the lieutenants.*
9. **Vercingetorigī pārent** (7, 63, 9), *they obey* (i.e., yield obedience to) *Vercingetorix.*
10. **Lacedaemoniīs servīre** (Nep. *Alc.* 9, 4), *to be enslaved to the Lacedaemonians.*
11. **Semper cīvitāti indulserat** (7, 40, 1), *he had always been partial to the community.*
12. **Persuādent Rauricīs** (1, 5, 4), *they prevail upon the Raurici.*
13. **Fāmae suae pepercit** (Sall. *Cat.* 52, 32), *he has spared his own reputation.*
14. **Miserīs succurrere** (Verg. *Aen.* 1, 630), *to succor* (lit., run under) *the wretched.*
15. **Invidēre bonīs** (Sall. *Cat.* 51, 38), *to envy* (lit., look askance at) *the good.*
16. **Dux suis aderat** (7, 62, 5), *the leader stood by* (i.e., supported) *his men.*
17. **Negōtiō praefuerant** (5, 2, 3), *they had been in charge of* (lit., had been before) *the work.*
18. **Cōnsiliīs obstitit** (Nep. *Con.* 2, 3), *he opposed* (lit., stood against) *the plans.*

146. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *datives* in the foregoing examples express the person *to* or *for whom*, or the thing *to* or *for which*, something is done; in other words, these datives denote the *object indirectly affected* by the action expressed by the verb. Frame a rule for the Case of the Indirect Object.

Note, further, the *order of the words* in the foregoing examples. Does the indirect object usually *follow* or *precede* the verb? What appears to be the effect when this order is reversed (see Exs. 7, 12, and 15)?

147. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 224, 343, 344; H. 382, 567, 1; G. 343, 676, 2, 3, 675, 1, 1.

148. OBSERVATION: Note that the verbs in Exs. 1, 2, and 6, are *transitive*; and that they take, besides the dative of the indirect

object, an *accusative* of the *direct object*. Note also the *order of the words* in these examples. Does the indirect object usually *follow* or *precede* the direct (see Exs. 1 and 2)? What appears to be the effect when this order is reversed (see Ex. 6)?

149. REFERENCES: A. & G. 225; H. 384, II., 567, 3; G. 344, 676, Rem., 2, 3.

150. OBSERVATION: Note that the verbs in the remaining examples are *intransitive*, and that they take the dative of indirect object only.

151. REFERENCES: A. & G. 226; H. 384, I.

152. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in Exs. 7-13, the dative is used with verbs of *favoring* (*favēre*, 7), *commanding* (*imperat*, 8), *obeying* (*pārent*, 9), *serving* (*servīre*, 10), *indulging* (*indulserat*, 11), *persuading* (*persuādent*, 12), *sparing* (*pepercit*, 13). Frame a rule for the Case of the Substantive construed with these and similar verbs.

153. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 227; H. 385, I., II.; G. 345.

154. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs in Exs. 14-18 are *compounded* with the *prepositions* **sub** (*suc-currere*, 14), **in** (*in-vidēre*, 15), **ad** (*ad-erat*, 16), **prae** (*prae-fuerant*, 17), and **ob** (*ob-stitit*, 18) respectively. Note further that, in the compounds given above, the force of the *preposition* is felt *independently* of the *verb*.² Frame a rule for the Case of the Substantive construed with such Compounds.

155. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 228; H. 386; G. 346.

¹ Participles in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, are declined like adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**.

² The learner must not infer that *all* verbs compounded with these prepositions take the dative.

LESSON XVIII.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

156.

VOCABULARY.

commodum , -ī, n., <i>advantage</i> .	obses , -idis, c., <i>hostage</i> .
con-dōnō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>over-look</i> .	ob-stō , -āre, -stī, <i>stand against, oppose</i> .
cōnsilium , -īi, n., <i>plan</i> .	Orgetorix , -igis, m., <i>Orgetorix</i> .
cōnsulō , -ere, -lui, -ltus, <i>take thought, have regard, consult</i> .	pārēō , -ēre, -ui, <i>obey</i> .
Dumnorix , -igis, m., <i>Dumnorix</i> .	pāx , pācis, f., <i>peace</i> .
fāma , -ae, f., <i>reputation</i> .	per-suādeō , -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, <i>persuade</i> .
faveō , -ēre, fāvī, <i>fatum</i> , ¹ <i>favor</i> .	precēs , ³ -um, f., <i>entreations</i> .
fortūna , -ae, f., <i>fortune</i> .	prō-videō , -ēre, -vīdī, -visus, <i>provide</i> .
im-pellō , -ere, -puli, -pulsus, <i>urge on, impel</i> .	servitū , -ūtis, f., <i>slavery, servitude</i> .
im-perō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>command; demand</i> .	sub-veniō , -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, ¹ <i>COME to the support of</i> .
indulgeō , -ēre, -sī, -tus, <i>indulge</i> .	sūmō , -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, <i>take, (of punishment) inflict</i> .
inter-sum , -esse, -fui, <i>take part IN</i> .	vester , -tra, -trum, poss. pron., <i>your (pl.)</i> .
in-videō , -ēre, -vidī, -visus, <i>envy</i> .	virtūs , -ūtis, f., <i>manliness, valor, virtue</i> .
ira , -ae, f., <i>anger, passion</i> .	
liberī , ² -ōrum, m., <i>children</i> .	
meus , -a, -um, poss. pron., my.	

157.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Virtūtī nostrae fortūna invidet. 2. Magis (*rather*) fāmae vestrae quam (*than*) īrae cōsulitis. 3. Prōvinciae māgnum mīlitum numerum imperat. 4. Cūr (*why?*) meīs commodīs obstās? 5. Celeriter (*quickly*) sociīs subvēnērunt. 6. Pāx cōfirmāta est. 7. Oppidum mūnitum erat. 8. Liberī Aeduōrum ī servitūtem abductī erant. 9. Aeduīs obsidēs reddit. 10. Haec (nom. pl. neut., *these things*) sī (*if*) ēnūntiāta erunt, dē obsidibus supplicium sūmet. 11. Ariovistus mīlītēs ī servitūtem Rōmānīs nōn trādiderat.

12. Dumnorix favēbat Helvētiis. 13. Cōnsulēmus miserīs.
 14. Ā reliquīs obsidēs trāditī sunt.

II. 1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians. 2. The Gauls have been defeated by the Romans. 3. He overlooked the injury [out of regard] for the entreaties of Divitiacus. 4. He has placed guards over⁴ Orgetorix. 5. The plan was approved by the leaders. 6. Expressions⁵ were heard. 7. The leader had demanded of the Gauls⁶ a great number of hostages. 8. Labienus had provided grain for the soldiers. 9. The leader indulges the soldiers, but (*sed*) the soldiers do not obey the leader. 10. The horsemen had not taken part in the battle. 11. The leader will quickly (*celeriter*) come to the support of the soldiers. 12. The Gauls have been urged on by their chiefs.

158.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Juventūs Catilinae inceptīs favēbat. 2. Divitiacus cōsiliis Dumnorigis obstābat. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānī salūtem nōn committit. 4. Ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcēs-sitī erant. 5. Arma Gallōrum ex oppidō trādita erant. 6. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae erunt. 7. Dux Gallōrum suis aderat. 8. Equitibus celeriter subveniunt peditēs.

II. 1. I shall not restore the hostages to the Aeduans. 2. He had given the boy a beautiful book. 3. Many hostages had been given by the rest. 4. They will prefer friendship to many advantages. 5. We shall take thought for the safety of the unfortunate soldiers. 6. Dumnorix envied Divitiacus and did not⁷ yield obedience to the Roman people. 7. The ditches have been filled with light branches. 8. The beautiful temples had been destroyed by the Roman soldiers.

¹ Verbs that are *invariably* intransitive have the perfect participle in the neuter gender only; accordingly, in the principal parts of such verbs, the neuter form of the participle will be given.

² *Iliberī*, children, with reference to

their parents; *puerī*, children, as a class.

³ Usually plural.

⁴ Sign of dative.

⁵ *vōx*, *vōcis*; see 123.

⁶ Use the dative.

⁷ And not, *neque*.

LESSON XIX.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: LIQUID AND -S-STEMS.

159. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 49; H. 60, 61; G. 40, 43, 46, 49.

160. Decline: *cōsul*, -is, M., *consul*; *contentiō*, -ōnis, F., *contention*; *homo*, -inis, C., *man*; *flūmen*, -inis, N., *river*; *latus*, -eris, N., *side*; *pater*, -tris, M., *father*; *tempus*, -oris, N., *time*; *timor*, -ōris, M., *fear*.

161. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing nouns are: *cōsul-*, *contentiōn-*, *homin-*, *flūmin-*, *lates-*,¹ *patr-*, *tempos-*,¹ *timōr-*.

162. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in 160: A. & G. 48, a, b, c, d; H. 60, 1, 1), 2), 3), 61, 1, 1), 2), 3), 4); G. 42, 48.

163. Decline together, with meanings: *cōsul dēsig-nātus*, *consul elect*; *contentiō nostra*, *our contention*; *homo miser*, *wretched man*; *flūmen lātum*, *broad river*; *latus sinistrum*, *left side*; *pater vester*, *your father*; *tempus aliēnum*, *an unfavorable time*; *timor māgnus*, *great fear*.

164.VOCABULARY.²

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall*.

arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*.

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,

engage in.

com-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus,
set at rest, settle.

con-tineō, -ere, -tinui, -tentus,
hem in.

corpus, -oris, n., *body*.

ex-erceō , -ēre, -cūi, -citus, <i>exer-</i>	opus , -eris, n., <i>work</i> .
<i>cise, train.</i>	parcō , -ere, <i>pepercī</i> (<i>parsī</i>), SPARE.
honōs or honor , -ōris, m., <i>honor</i> .	per-veniō , -ire, -vēni, -ventum, <i>arrive, COME.</i>
legiō , -ōnis, f., <i>legion</i> . ³	tribuō , -ere, -ui, -ūtus, <i>award</i> .
nōmen , -inis, n., <i>NAME</i> .	<i>employ.</i>
occupō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>seize</i> ;	

165.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōnsulem dēsignātum accūsant. 2. Contentiōnēs nostrarē compositae sunt. 3. Homīnī miserō parcēs. 4. Flūmine lātō continentur. 5. Tempore⁴ aliēnō proelium commīsit. 6. Māgnum in timōrem hominēs pervēnerant. 7. Arborēs sunt altae. 8. Caesārī honōrem tribuit. 9. Mīlitēs in opere occupātī erant. 10. Nōmen Caesaris legiōni- bus est cārum.

II. 1. The consuls elect have been called to account. 2. Honors will be awarded to Caesar. 3. Caesar's honors are acceptable⁵ to the legions. 4. The wretched men obeyed the consuls. 5. The legions engage in battle at an unfavorable time.⁶ 6. A broad river hems in the Helvetians. 7. The contentions of the wretched men will be set at rest. 8. The horsemen trained their bodies.

166.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Latus sinistrum castrōrum flūmine mūniēbātur. 2. Vir- ginī pulchrae parcēmus. 3. Legiōnēs ab opere dēductae erant. 4. Galli nōmen Caesaris timēbant. Patrēs vestri magis (*rather*) virtūte quam (*than*) dolō contendēbant.

II. 1. Rivers protected the sides of the camp. 2. The fear of the legions is disquieting to Caesar. 3. The commander will recall his men from the work. 4. The beautiful maidens will obey their fathers.

¹ s in the oblique cases between two vowels becomes r: A. & G. 11, a; H. 31, 1; G. 48².

² See also, for vocab., 160 and 163.

³ See also general vocabulary.

⁴ Ablative of *time when*; use preposition *at* in translating: A. & G. 256; H. 429; G. 392.

⁵ grātus, -a, -um, adj.

⁶ See 165, I., sent. 5.

LESSON XX.

VERBS: IMPERATIVES OF BOTH VOICES.—THE VOCATIVE.

167. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Imperatives, Present and Future, of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

168. Learn, as in **167**, the inflection of **absum**.

169. Learn the inflection, with meanings, of the Imperatives, Present and Future, Active and Passive, of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 77, 79; H. pp. 87, 89; G. pp. 54, 56.

170. Inflect (like **amō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **cōfirmō**, *establish*; **laudō**, *commend*.

171. Learn, as in **169**, the inflection of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 81; H. pp. 91, 93; G. pp. 58, 60.

172. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **habeō**, *have, hold*; **compleō**, *fill*.

173. Learn, as in **169**, the inflection of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 95, 97; G. pp. 64, 66.

174. Inflect (like **tego**, **regō**, or **emō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **dūcō**, *lead*; **mittō**, *send*.

175. Learn, as in **169**, the inflection of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 87; H. pp. 99, 101; G. pp. 68, 70.

176. Inflect (like **audiō**) in the foregoing tenses of both voices: **pūniō**, *punish*; **vestiō**, *clothe*.

177.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Cōfirmā. 2. Tenēminī. 3. Vestīre. 4. Pōnite.
 5. Tenētor. 6. Mittitōte. 7. Convocantor. 8. Vestītor.
 9. Habētō. 10. Mūnītō. 11. Mittuntō. 12. Es.
 13. Abeste. 14. Laudāminī. 15. Nē¹ dūcuntor. 16. Complēte.
 17. Conveniuntō. 18. Este. 19. Cōfirmātō.
 20. Abestōte. 21. Mittere. 22. Estō. 23. Pōne.
 24. Nē¹ habentō. 25. Dūcitor.

- II. 1. Be (thou) established. 2. Be (ye) sent. 3. You (ye) shall hold. 4. Fortify (ye). 5. Thou shalt establish. 6. They shall be clothed. 7. It shall be placed. 8. Fortify (thou). 9. He shall send. 10. It shall be had. 11. They shall not¹ be called together. 12. Be it [so] (fut.). 13. They shall not¹ be. 14. Come (ye) together. 15. Thou shalt be praised. 16. Thou shalt fill. 17. He shall not¹ be clothed. 18. Be (ye) away. 19. Command (thou). 20. Be (thou) clothed. 21. Thou shalt not¹ be established. 22. Be ye led. 23. Thou shalt hold. 24. They shall lead. 25. Ye shall be.

178.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Vestiminī. 2. Habēre. 3. Nē cōfirmātōte. 4. Mitte.
 5. Convocāte. 6. Nē pōnuutor. 7. Laudāre. 8. Dūcimīnī.
 9. Abestō. 10. Suntō. 11. Mūnītōte.

- II. 1. Hold (ye). 2. Be (ye) called together. 3. Be (thou) placed. 4. You (ye) shall clothe. 5. Have (thou). 6. They shall not be called together. 7. He shall not be. 8. Be (thou) away. 9. Call (ye) together. 10. Have (ye).

179.

EXAMPLES.

- Dēsilīte, mīlitēs** (4, 25, 3), *jump overboard, my men* (lit., soldiers)!
- Sic existimō, patrēs cōscripti** (Sal. Cat. 51, 15), *this is my opinion* (I think thus), *conscript fathers*.
- Est ut dīcis, Catō** (Cic. Cat. Maj. 3, 8), *it is as you say, Cato*.
- Tū² vērō perge, Laelī!** (Cic. Lael. 9, 32) *pray go on, Laelius!*
- Tē⁴ hortor,⁵ mī⁶ Cicerō** (Cic. Off. 1, 8), *I exhort you, my [dear] Cicero.*

180. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the *substantive* in each of the foregoing examples represents the *person addressed*, (2) that this substantive is in the *vocative*, and (3) that it stands, not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one or more words. Frame a rule for the Case and Position of the substantive used in Direct Address.

181. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 241; H. 369, 569, VI.; G. 194, Rem. 3 with fine-print note.

¹ Use **nē** (not **nōn**) when the *future imperative* is negative; the *present imperative* does not take a negative in prose.

² **Tū**, pron. 2d pers. nom. sing, *thou, you.*

³ See A. & G. 40, c; H. 51, 5; G. 29, Rem. 2.

⁴ **Tē**, pron. 2d pers. acc. sing., *thee, you.*

⁵ **hortor** has a passive form, but an active meaning; such verbs are called *deponent*, and will be treated later.

⁶ See A. & G. 40, c; H. 185, note 1; G. 22, Rem. 2.

LESSON XXI.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

182.

VOCABULARY.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, do.

animōsus, -a, -um, adj., full of courage.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good.

Catilina, -ae, m., *Catiline.*

C.¹ Fannius,² -ii, m., *Gajus Fan-nius.*

C.¹ Laelius,² -ii, m., *Gajus Laelius.*

cōnscriptus,³ -a, -um, enrolled, conscript.

custōdia, -ae, f., guardianship; in pl., guards.

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus, defend.

facultās, -ātis, f., opportunity.

filius,² -ii, m., son.

M. Tullius,² -ii, m., *Marcus Tul-ilus.*

prae-stō, -āre, -iti, -ātus or -itus, exhibit.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs, cleanse, purge.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

sē-cernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus, separate.

tectum, -i, n., dwelling.

vigilia, -ae, f., WAKEfulness; in pl., WATCHmen.

183.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Habētis, mīlētēs, facultātem⁴; praestāte virtūtem.⁴
 2. Pūrgā⁴ Rōmam, Catilīna. 3. Jam diū (*for a long time*), patrēs cōnscrīptī,³ in periculīs sumus.⁵ 4. Aūdī, mī⁶ filī.
 5. Multīs proeliīs, mīlētēs, exercēminī. 6. M. Tullī,⁷ quid (neut. sing. acc. interrog. pron., *what*) agis?

II. 1. In battle (battles), soldiers, you are to be (fut. imper.) full of courage. 2. Many do,⁸ indeed (*quidem*⁹), inquire, Gajus Laelius, as (*ut*) has been said¹⁰ by Fannius. 3. Separate yourself (*tē*), Catiline, from the good. 4. Defend your dwellings by guards and watchmen. 5. Thou shalt be defended, consul, by [means of] guards and watchmen. 6. Very well (*vērō*¹¹), you shall hear, my son.

184.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Quoniam (*Seeing that*) supplicatiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs (acc. pl., *those days*) cum conjugib⁹s ac liberis vestris. 2. Vōs,¹² Quiritēs,¹³ in vestra tecta discēdite. 3. Tū,¹⁴ Fannī, nōn rēctē (*rightly*) jūdicās dē Catōne. 4. Memoria vestra, discipuli, vocābulis Latīnis exercētor. 5. Virtūs, virtūs, inquam,¹⁵ C. Fannī, et conciliat amiciūs et cōservat.

II. 1. Therefore,¹⁶ conscript fathers, take thought for yourselves;¹⁷ preserve¹⁸ yourselves,¹⁹ [your] wives, [your] children, and your²⁰ fortunes; defend²¹ the name and safety of the Roman people. 2. You were, then,²² at Laeca's,²³ Catiline. 3. Lay aside your favorable disposition towards me,²⁴ conscript fathers, and think of (*dē*) your children. 4. Ye shall stand by the unfortunate, praetors!

¹ C had originally the sound of g-hard. This sound it retained (even after the introduction of the character G) when used as an abbreviation for the name Gājus.

² See foot-note 3 at the end of the preceding lesson.

³ See cōnscrīptus in the general vocabulary.

⁴ Note the emphatic position.

⁵ Translate: *have been*, and see A. & G. 276, a; II. 467, 2; G. 221.

⁶ See foot-note 6, Lesson XX.

⁷ Note the exceptional position of the vocative, due to the excitement of the speaker.

⁸ Express the emphasis denoted in English by "do," by placing the verb first.

⁹ Place **quidem** after the verb, and let the vocative follow before the subject.

¹⁰ The participle must be neuter.

¹¹ Place **vērō** after the verb.

¹² **Vōs**, pron. 2d pers. nom. pl. *you*.

¹³ From **Quirīs**, **-Itis**; in the plural, applied to the Romans when acting in a civil capacity. Translate: *fellow citizens*.

¹⁴ See foot-note 2, Lesson XX.

¹⁵ *I say*; **inquam** is a defective verb, i.e., it lacks most of its parts.

¹⁶ **Quā rē**.

¹⁷ **vōbīs**.

¹⁸ Place the verb before its objects.

¹⁹ **vōs**.

²⁰ For gender, see A. & G. 187; H. 439, 1; G. 286.

²¹ Place the verb after its objects; see A. & G. 344, f; H. 562; G. 684.

²² **igitur**.

²³ **apud** (prep.) **Laecam**.

²⁴ Arrange thus: *your towards me* (*erga mē*) *favorable disposition*.

LESSON XXII.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: VOWEL STEMS.

185. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 52; H. 62, 63; G. 59.

186. Decline: **collis**,¹ -is, M., *hill*; **hostis**,¹ -is, C., *enemy*; **ignis**,² -is, M., *fire*; **nāvis**,³ -is, F., *ship*; **puppis**,³ -is, F., *stern*; **rūpēs**, -is, F., *rock*; **īsigne**, -is, N., *badge*; **vectīgal**, -ālis, N., *revenue*.

187. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing nouns are: **colli-**, **hosti-**, **īgni-**, **nāvi-**, **puppi-**, **rūpi-**, **īsigni-**, **vectīgāli-**.

188. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in **186**: A. & G. 51, *a, c*; H. 63, 1, 1); G. 58 (first three paragraphs).

189. Decline together, with meanings: **collis asper**, *a rugged hill*; **hostis noster**, *our enemy*; **īgnis clārus**, *a bright fire*; **nāvis longa**, *a ship of war* (lit., *long ship*); **puppis alta**, *a high stern*; **rūpēs sinistra**, *a rock on the left*; **īsigne pulchrum**, *a beautiful badge*; **māgnum vectīgal**, *a large revenue*.

190.

VOCABULARY.⁴

ac-commodō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus,	sing.), <i>boundary</i> ; in pl., also <i>territories</i> .
altitūdō , -inis, f., <i>height</i> .	mare , -is, n., <i>sea</i> .
augeō , -ēre, <i>auxi</i> , <i>auctus</i> , <i>increase</i> .	op-pūgnō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>assault</i> .
barbarus , -a, -um, adj., <i>rude</i> ; used subst., <i>barbarian</i> .	prae-mittō , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>send forward</i> .
clāssis , -is, f., <i>fleet</i> .	prae-sum , -esse, -fui, <i>be in command of</i> .
com-pellō , -ere, -puli, -pulsus, <i>drive in a body, drive</i> .	silva , -ae, f., <i>wood, forest</i> .
cremō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>burn</i> .	terra , -ae, f., <i>earth, land</i> .
figūra , -ae, f., <i>shape</i> .	turris , -is, f., <i>tower</i> .
finis , -is, m. (sometimes f. in	

191.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *În finēs Helvētiōrum p̄rvēnērunt.* 2. *Ab hostibus ignī corpora sunt cremāta.* 3. *Lēgātū cum nāvī longā praemittit.* 4. *Caesar clāssī praeerat.* 5. *Nāvium figūrā permōtī sunt barbarī.* 6. *Nostrī hōstūs ī silvās collisque compulērunt.* 7. *Însīgnia accommodāta erant.* 8. *Op̄pidum oppūgnat terrā⁵ marīque⁵.*

II. 1. They had persuaded the enemy.⁶ 2. The height of the sterns exceeded⁷ [that of] the towers. 3. The bodies of the enemy will be burned.⁸ 4. The lieutenant has arrived with ships of war.⁹ 5. The shape of the ships alarmed¹⁰ the barbarians. 6. The enemy⁶ will be driven by our men into the hills. 7. The revenues have been increased by Caesar.

192.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Māgna hostium multitudē sitī cōnsūmēbatur.* 2. *Nāvēs longae aedificantur ī flūmine.* 3. *Gallī animālia immolant.* 4. *Neque terrā neque marī effugium dabātur hostibus.* 5. *Turris altās excitant.*

II. 1. They were building ships of war on the river. 2. Living

creatures **are** sacrificed by the Gauls. 3. The enemy erect a high tower on the hill. 4. A lieutenant was in command of the enemy's fleet.

¹ Decline **collis** and **hostis** with only -em in the accusative, and only -e in the ablative; otherwise like **turris**. (The rare instances in which **collis** has -i in the ablative may be disregarded.)

² Decline **Ignis** with only -em in the accusative; otherwise like **turris**.

³ Decline **nāvis** and **puppis** throughout like **turris**.

⁴ See also, for vocab., 186 and 189.

⁵ Ablative of *place where*; use preposition *by* in translating.

⁶ Use the plural.

⁷ **superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

⁸ Translate: *will be burned by fire*.

⁹ "Ships of war" = *long ships*.

¹⁰ **per-moveō**, -āre, -mōvi, -mōtus.

LESSON XXIII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: VOWEL STEMS.

193. Learn the declension of the adjectives **levis** (**trīstis** or **facilis**) and **ācer**: A. & G. 84; H. 153, 154; G. 82.

194. Decline (like **levis**, **trīstis**, or **facilis**): **omnis**, *all, every*; **fortis**, *brave*; **militāris**, *military*; **dēclīvis**, *sloping*; **humilis**, *low*.

195. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing adjectives are: **omni-**, **forti-**, **militāri-**, **dēclīvi-**, **humili-**; explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative forms*: cf. A. & G. 51, c; G. 81.

196. Decline (like **ācer**): **alacer**, *eager*; **equester**, *pertaining to cavalry*; **pedester**, *pertaining to infantry*; also: **celer**,¹ **celeris**, **celere**, *swift*.

197. Note that the *stems* of the foregoing adjectives are: **alaci-**, **equestrī-**, **pedestri-**, **celeri-**; explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative forms*: cf. A. & G. 51, b, c; H. p. 59, foot-note 6; G. 81, 82.

198. Decline together, with meanings : **proelium** *equestre, a cavalry engagement ; insigne militare, a military badge ; omne animal, every animal ; animus alacer, an eager spirit ; turris humilis, a low tower ; navis celeris,¹ a swift ship ; collis declivis, a sloping hill ; copiae pedestres, infantry ; hostis fortis, a brave enemy.*

199.**VOCABULARY.²**

ad, prep. w. acc., <i>to, for.</i>	ex-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>erect.</i>
com-būrō, -ere, -ūssi, -ūstus, <i>burn up.</i>	in-cendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, <i>set fire to, burn.</i>
con-tendō, -ere, -di, -tus, <i>contend.</i>	in-struō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus, <i>draw up.</i>
dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, <i>withdraw, recall.</i>	pūgna, -ae, f., <i>fight.</i>
ex-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>look for.</i>	sus-tineō, -ere, -ui, -tentus, <i>sustain.</i>

200.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *Insignia militaria relinquunt.* 2. *Hostes equestribus proeliis contendunt.* 3. *Caesar pedestris copias deduxit.* 4. *Oppida omnia incendunt, frumentum omne comburunt.* 5. *Milites ad pugnam alacres erunt.* 6. *Milites nostri omnia³ fortis sustinēbant animō.⁴* 7. *Galli celerem⁵ victoriā exspectabant.*

II. 1. They erect a low tower. 2. He drew up his forces on⁶ a sloping hill. 3. A speedy⁷ victory had been looked for by the Gauls. 4. Caesar's infantry has been recalled. 5. All the legions were eager for the fight. 6. Caesar favored the infantry.

201.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. *Ariovistus equestribus proeliis cottidiē (daily) contendit.* 2. *Omnēs hostes terga vertērunt.* 3. *Nervii pedestribus valent copiis.⁸* 4. *Dumnorix reliqua omnia Aeduōrum vectigalia parvō pretiō⁹ redēmit.* 5. *Nam (for) ut¹⁰ Gallōrum alacer est animus, sic¹⁰ mollis mēns est.*

- II. 1. Caesar hastened thither (*eō*) with¹¹ his infantry.
 2. They first (*primum*) joined battle with their cavalry,¹² [and]
 then (*de'inde*) suddenly displayed their infantry. 3. Arioquistus
 will inflict severe punishment on (*dē*)¹³ all the hostages. 4. The
 embassy was intrusted to Orgetorix by general vote.

¹ *celer* has *celerum* in the genitive plural; but as this form is found only as a substantive, it should be omitted in declining.

² For vocab., see also 194, 196, 198.

³ Used substantively: A. & G. 188; H. 441, 1; G. 195, Rem. 2.

⁴ Ablative of manner; use prep. *with* in translating. See A. & G. 248, Rem.; H. 419, III.; G. 401.

⁵ *speedy.*

⁶ *in.*

⁷ See sent. 7 of the preceding exercise.

⁸ Ablative of *cause*: A. & G. 245; H. 416; G. 407.

⁹ Ablative of *price*: A. & G. 252; H. 422; G. 404.

¹⁰ *ut . . . sic, as . . . so, although . . . yet.*

¹¹ Omit *cum*: A. & G. 248, a; H. 419, I., 1, 1), (1); G. 391, Rem. 1.

¹² Translate: *they first began (committō) a cavalry battle.*

¹³ “inflict punishment on” = *take (sumō) punishment from* (*dē*).

LESSON XXIV.

APPOSITION.—PREDICATE AGREEMENT.—ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

202.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Divitiacus Aeduus respondit** (1, 32, 3), *Divitiacus the Aeduan replied.*
2. **Divitiaci frātris studium** (1, 19, 2), *the devotion of Divitiacus, [his] brother.*
3. **Praeterita Divitiacō frātri condōnare** (1, 20, 6), *to overlook the past [out of regard] for Divitiacus, [his] brother.*
4. **Flaccum et Pomptinum praetōrēs vocāvi** (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 2, 5), *I summoned Flaccus and Pomptinus, the praetors.*
5. **In flūmen Rhodanum influit** (1, 8, 1), *it flows into the river Rhone.*
6. **Ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum** (1, 23, 1), *from Bibracte, a town of the Aeduans.*

203. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that **Aeduus**, **frātris**, **frātri**, **praetōrēs**, **flūmen**, and **oppidō** denote the *same person or thing* as **Divitiacus**, **Divitiaci**, **Divitiacō**, **Flaccum et Pomptinum**, **Rhodanum**, and **Bibracte**, respectively; and that the former are added to the latter for *further description* merely. A substantive thus added for further description is called an *Appositive*, and the usage is called *Apposition*. Does the Appositive differ from the principal substantive in *case*, or agree with it? Does it usually agree in *gender* and *number* (see Exs. 1-4)? Does it *invariably* agree in *gender* (see Ex. 5)? Does the Appositive appear regularly *to precede* or *to follow* the principal substantive? Frame a rule for the Case of the Appositive.

204. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A, & G. 183, 184, b; H. 363, 1; G. 319.

205.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Lēgatiōnis Divicō p̄inceps fuit** (1, 13, 2), *Divico was the leader of the embassy.*
2. **Testis est Ītalia** (Cic. *Manil.* 11, 30), **Ītalia** *is a witness.*
3. **Pausaniās Lacedaemonius māgnus homo fuit** (Nep. *Paus.* 1, 1), *Pausanias, the Lacedaemonian, was a great man.*
4. **[Casticī] pater populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat** (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had been called the friend of the Roman people.*
5. **Audācia fortitūdō vocātur** (Sall. *Cat.* 52, 11), *audacity is called fortitude.*

206. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that **p̄inceps**, **testis**, **homo**, **amīcus**, and **fortitūdō**, denote the *same person or thing* as **Divicō**, **Ītalia**, **Pausaniās**, **pater**, and **audācia**, respectively; and that the former are added to the latter for *further description*. Note, however, that the descriptive substantives here illustrated are *not*, like those of 202, *merely appended* to the principal substantive, but that they are connected with it by the *verb*; also that they unite with the verb to form the *predicate* of the sentence. As they thus form a part of the predicate, they are called *Predicate Substantives*. Does the

Predicate Substantive differ from the *subject* in *case*, or agree with it? Does the Predicate Substantive appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede* the *verb*? Frame a rule for the Case of the Predicate Substantive.

207. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 183, 185; H. 362, 1; G. 324.

208.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad Caesarem revertērunt** (1, 31, 1), *they returned to Caesar.*
2. **Ante oppidum** (2, 32, 4), *before the town.*
3. **Apud Sēquanōs** (1, 9, 3), *among the Sequani.*
4. **Contrā populum Rōmānum** (2, 13, 2), *against the Roman people.*
5. **Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum** (1, 6, 2), *between the boundaries of the Helvetians and Allobroges.*
6. **Per finēs Aeduōrum** (1, 12, 1), *through the territory of the Aeduans.*
7. **Post tergum** (4, 15, 1), *behind [one's] back.*
8. **Propter timōrem** (Caes. B. C. 2, 35, 5), *because of fear.*
9. **Trāns Rhodanum** (1, 10, 5), *across the Rhone.*

209. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) the *prepositions* in the foregoing examples, and (2) the *case* of the substantives with which they are used. Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives construed with the foregoing Prepositions.

210. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 152, a; II. 433; G. 417.



LESSON XXV.

VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES.

211.

VOCABULARY.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Aeduus, -i, m., <i>an Aeduan.</i> | amicus, -i, m., <i>friend.</i> |
| Allobrogēs, -um, m., <i>the Allo-</i> | appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>call,</i> |
| <i>brogues.</i> | <i>entitle.</i> |

- apud**, prep. w. acc., *among*. **lingua**, -ae, f., *TONGUE*, *language*.
- Athēniēnsis**, -is, c., *an Athenian*. **L. Pīsō**, -ōnis, m., *Lucius Piso*.³
- atque**,¹ conj., *and also, and*. **mātūrus**, -a, -um, *ripe*.
- avus**, -i, m., *grandfather*.
- cōnsanguinei**, -ōrum, m., *blood-relations, kinsmen*.
- eques**, -itis, m., *knight*.²
- extrā**, prep. w. acc., *beyond*.
- frāter**, -tris, m., *BROTHER*.
- frīgus**, -oris, n., *cold, frost*.
- Gallicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*.
- honestus**, -a, -um, adj., *honorable*.
- iter**, itineris, n., *way; journey, march*.
- propter**, prep. w. acc., *on account of, owing to*.
- scientia**, -ae, f., *knowledge, skill*.
- Sēquanus**, -i, m., *a Sequanian*.
- trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across*.
- vergō**, -ere, *incline*.
- vergobretus**, -i, m., *vergobret* (see also general vocabulary).

212.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Orgetorix in itinere persuādet Casticō,⁵ Catamantaloedis⁶ filiō, Sēquānō. 2. Ariovistus rēx atque amīcus ā senātū (*senate*) appellātus est. 3. Procillum⁵ propter linguae Gallicae scientiam ad Ariovistum mīsit. 4. Collis aequāliter (*uniformly*) dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim⁷ vergēbat. 5. Divicō⁸ dux Hēlvētiōrum fuerat. 6. Thrasybūlus,⁵ Lycī⁵ filius, Athēniēnsis.⁹ 7. Apud Aeduōs summus magistrātus (*the chief magistrate*) vergobretus appellātūr.

II. 1. The Roman knights, honorable and good men, approve. 2. They send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Aeduan. 3. For, owing to the frosts, the grain was not ripe in the fields. 4. Lucius Piso the lieutenant was the grandfather of Lucius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law. 5. Geneva is a town of the Allobroges. 6. The Segūsiāvī⁵ are beyond the province, across the Rhone. 7. The Aeduans have often-times¹⁰ been called brothers and kinsmen by the senate.¹¹

213.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Trāns Sabim flūmen omnēs Nervii cōsēderant. 2. Iter Caesaris per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātur. 3. Omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt obsidēsque inter sē (acc. pl.

themselves) dedērunt. 4. C. Valerius Procillus, familiāris Caesaris, habēbātur p̄rinceps Galliae prōvinciae. 5. Ējus r̄ei (*of this fact*) populus Rōmānus est testis. 6. Is (*this*) pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus.

II. 1. Titus Labienus, an experienced leader, has been appointed lieutenant. 2. The reputation of the Treveri for valor (gen.) is unparalleled among the Gauls. 3. The river Arar flows through the territory of the Aeduans and Sequanians into the Rhone. 4. Dumnorix was the brother of Divitiacus. 5. The village of the Veragri is called Octodurus. 6. You have attacked Cicero, the consul elect; Catiline. 7. The tenth legion, through the military tribunes (tribunes of the soldiers), returned thanks to Caesar. 8. And he also persuades Dumnorix the Aeduan, the brother of Divitiacus.

¹ See foot-note 2, Lesson XIII.

² See **eques** in the general vocabulary.

³ See **P̄isō** in the general vocabulary.

⁴ **Nam**, *for*, should be placed at the beginning of the sentence.

⁵ The English form is the same as the Latin nominative.

⁶ **Catamantaloedēs**, -is, m., *Catamantaloedes* (a ruler of the Sequani).

⁷ **Sabis**, -is, m., *the Sabis* (modern Sambre, a river in Belgic Gaul).

⁸ **Divicō**, -ōnis, m., *Divico* (a prominent Helvetian).

⁹ sc. fuit.

¹⁰ **sæpenumerō**.

¹¹ See 212, I., second sentence.

LESSON XXVI.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: STEMS APPARENTLY CONSONANT.—ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.—PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

214. Learn the paradigms of declension in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 54; H. 64. In G. read 54, Rem. (first six lines), 59, Rem. 3, and 60, 1.

215. Decline: **pars**, -tis, F., *part*; **cīvitās**, -ātis, F.,

community; **cohors**, -tis, F., *cohort*; **adulēscēns**, -entis, C., *youth*; **mēns**, **mentis**, F., *mind*.

216. Decline together, with meanings: **sinistra pars**, *the left side (part)*; **finitima cīvitās**, *the neighboring community*; **reliqua cohors**, *the remaining cohort*; **adulēscēns fortis**, *a brave youth*; **mēns mollis**, *a yielding disposition*.

217. Learn the declension of the adjectives **atrōx** (**au-dāx** or **fēlix**) and **egēns** (or **prūdēns**): A. & G. 85, a; H. 155, 156, 157; G. 83.

218. Decline **vēlōx**, -ōcis, *swift*; **ferāx**, -ācis, *fertile*; **ingēns**, -entis, *huge*; **potēns**, -entis, *powerful*.

219. Decline together, with meanings: **pedes vēlōx**, *a swift foot-soldier*; **ager ferāx**, *fertile land*; **ingēns īinsula**, *a huge island*; **rēx potēns**, *a powerful king*.

220. Learn, with meanings, the present participles of **amō**, **moneō** (or **dēleō**), **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**), **audiō**: A. & G. 113, a with pp. 77, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 91, 95, 99; G. pp. 54, 58, 64, 68.

221. Decline the present participles: **amāns**, **monēns**, (or **dēlēns**), **tegēns** (**regēns** or **emēns**), **audiēns**: A. & G. 85, a (**egēns**), 87, a; II. 157 (**amāns**) with note; G. 83 (**prūdēns**), 85, 2 (second paragraph).

222. Decline together, with meanings: **mulier flēns**, *the woman weeping*; **labōrantēs nostrī**, *our men struggling against odds*; **cīvitās flōrēns**, *a flourishing community*; **continēns silva**, *an uninterrupted forest*.

223. Learn the declension of **vetus**; A. & G. 85, b; H. 158; G. 83.

224. Decline together, with meanings: **vetus injūria**, *a former injury.*

225.**VOCABULARY.¹**

animus, -i, m., *mind; heart.*
con-locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *place;*
give in marriage.

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stīti, *take position; stand.*

Crassus, -i, m., *Crassus.*

decimus, -a, -um, adj., *TENTH.*
dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus, *select.*

homo, -inis, c. (*always m. when it refers to a male*), *man.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, extensive.*

māter, -tris, f., *MOTHER.*

petō, -ere, -ivī or -li, -itus, *ask for.*
poena, -ae, f., *satisfaction; punishment.*

re-petō, -ere, -ivī, or -li, -itus, *demand back, demand.*

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., *the Suessiones.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear.*

226.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Legiōnis decimae mīlitēs ī sinistrā parte cōsiterant. 2. Crassum adulēscētem fortēm praemittet. 3. Timor omnium mentī animōsque perturbābat. 4. Pedītēs vēlōcēs āc² fortēs dēliguntur. 5. ī flūmine Rhēnō sunt multae ingentēsque īnsulae. 6. Equitēs labōrantib⁹ nostrīs subveniunt. 7. Caesar prō veterib⁹ Helvētiōrum³ injūriīs populi³ Rōmānī poenās repetit.

II. 1. They establish friendship with the neighboring communities. 2. The lands of the Suessiones are extensive and fertile. 3. He gives his mother in marriage to a powerful man. 4. The women weeping ask for peace. 5. Crassus, a brave youth, came to the support of the horsemen [who were] struggling against odds.

227.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Ā⁴ fronte et ab⁴ sinistrā parte nūdāta erant castra. 2. Equitēs recenti proeliō⁵ perterriti erant. 3. Lēgātis pācem atque ami-

citiam petentibus liberāliter respondit. 4. Auxiliārēs opīniōnem pūgnantium⁶ praebēbant.⁷ 5. Rhēnus multās ingentisque insulās efficit.⁸ 6. In dēclivī āc praecipiti locō equōs sustinent.

II. 1. Nearly (**ferē**) all the centurions of the remaining cohorts were either (**aut**) wounded or (**aut**) slain. 2. The Suessiones possessed extensive and fertile lands. 3. He comes-upon⁹ the soldiers fighting. 4. The Morini had uninterrupted woods and marshes. 5. Can I¹⁰ lay aside the remembrance of recent injuries? 6. They put (**conjēcērunt**) to (**in w. acc.**) flight the enemy [who were] again offering resistance.

¹ For vocabulary, see also **215, 216, 219, 222, 224.**

² See foot-note 2, Lesson XIII.

³ What kind of genitive? See **64** and **69.**

⁴ In Latin the place *at which* an action occurred is often viewed as the point *from which* it proceeded, and so *ab* or *ex* is used where the English idiom requires *in or on*. Translate: *in front and on the left side.*

⁵ A. & G. 259 *a*; H. 425, 1, 1); G. 387.

⁶ Used substantively: A. & G. 113, *f*; H. 441; G. 438.

⁷ *opīniōnem praebēbant, produced the impression.*

⁸ Pres. indic. 3d. sing. of *efficiō*.

⁹ *occurrō*; see **154** and **155.**

¹⁰ *Num possum (am I able) with infinitive. Read: A. & G. 210, c (last sentence); H. 351, 1, note 3; G. 458.*

LESSON XXVII.

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.—ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN.

228.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt** (1, 1, 4), *the Helvetians surpass the remaining Gauls in valor.*
2. **Oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, incendunt** (1, 5, 2), *they burn all their towns, about twelve in number.*
3. **Suēba nātiōne** (1, 53, 4), *Swabian by birth.*
4. **Nervius nōmine Verticō** (5, 45, 2), *a Nervian named Vertico* (lit., Vertico by name).
5. **Civitās hominum multitūdine praestābat** (2, 15, 1), *the community took the lead in population (in number of inhabitants).*

229. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that **virtūte**, **numerō**, **nātiōne**, **nōmine**, and **multitūdine** show *in what particular or in respect to what* the statement (made or implied) is true. In what *case* are these substantives? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives thus used.

230. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 253; H. 424; G. 398.

231.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Tertiā vigiliā solvit** (4, 23, 1), *he set sail at the third watch.*
2. **Hōrā quartā Britanniam attigit** (4, 23, 2), *he reached Britain at the fourth hour.*
3. **Unō tempore accidit** (Caes. *B. C.* 3, 15, 4), *on one occasion it happened.*
4. **Omnī tempore** (1, 11, 3), *at all times* (lit., *at every time*).
5. **Paucis annīs** (1, 31, 11), *within a few years.*
6. **Nocte ad Nerviōs pervenērunt** (2, 17, 2), *they came by night to the Nervii.*

232. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that **vigiliā**, **hōrā**, **tempore** (Exs. 3 and 4), **annīs**, and **nocte** express *time at which* or *time within which*. In what *case* are these substantives? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting *time when* or *within which*.

233. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 256 (to the semicolon); H. 429; G. 392.

234.**VOCABULARY.**

Aquitāni , -ōrum, m., the <i>Aquitani</i>	initium , -īī, n., <i>beginning.</i>
or <i>Aquitanians</i> .	institūtum , -ī, n., <i>institution.</i>
Celtae , -ārum, m., the <i>Celts</i> (<i>Kelts</i>).	lātitūdō , -īnis, f., <i>breadth</i> , <i>ext-</i>
com-memorō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus,	<i>tent.</i>
<i>recount.</i>	lēx , lēgis , f., <i>LAW.</i>
etiam , conj., <i>also, even.</i>	multitūdō , -īnis, f., <i>multitude</i> ,
ex-istimō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>reck-</i>	<i>number.</i>
<i>on, consider.</i>	nox , noctis , f., <i>NIGHT.</i>

opportūnus , -a, -um, adj., <i>fit, op-</i>	suus , -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their.</i>
<i>pōrtune.</i>	tempestās , -ātis, f., <i>time.</i>
ōrātiō , -ōnis, f., <i>speech, address.</i>	tertius , -a, -um, <i>THIRD.</i>
prae-stō , -āre, -itī, -ātus or -itus, <i>excel.</i>	ūnus , -a, -um, <i>ONE.</i>
regiō , -ōnis, f., <i>territory.</i>	videō , -ēre, <i>vidi, visus, see.</i>

235.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētiī virtūte omnibus Gallīs praestābant. 2. Cae-sar initio ūrātiōnis sua in Ario-vistum beneficia commemorāvit. 3. Aquītānia et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum tertia pars Galliae exīstīmātur. 4. Ā castris oppidum Rē-mōrum¹ nōmine Bibrax² longē aberat. 5. Paene³ ūnō tem-pore et ad⁴ silvās et ī flūmine hostēs vīsī sunt. 6. Multā nocte⁵ sē⁶ in castra recēpit.⁶

II. 1. The Belgians, Aquitanians, [and] Celts differ⁷ from one another⁸ in language, institutions, [and] laws. 2. Among the Suessiones, even within our-own remembrance, Divitiacus has been king. 3. The Suessiones have towns to the num-ber of twelve⁹ (twelve in number). 4. Caesar arrived at an opportune moment (time). 5. [There] was at this¹⁰ time at Rome¹¹ a Numidian¹² named Massiva.¹³

236.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Populi Rōmānī socii atque amīci grātiā, dignitatē, honōre auctiōrēs (*increased, made richer*) sunt. 2. Ūnā nocte omnēs herinae¹⁴ dējecti sunt.¹⁵ 3. Intempestā nocte¹⁶ conjūratiōnis prīncipēs convocat per M. Porciū Laecam. 4. Duae¹⁷ fuērunt Ario-visti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, altera Nōrica. 5. Catō cum modestō pudōre, eum innocentia abstinentiā certābat. 6. Tertiā vigiliā omnibus cōpiis¹⁸ ex oppidō ērūpērunt.

II. 1. Our fleet excelled the ships of the Veneti in speed. 2. Accordingly in the beginning kings trained, some¹⁹ the mind, others the body. 3. There was, not far from the road, a town of the Numidians named Vaga. 4. You were, then, at Laeca's on that (*illā*) night, Catiline. 5. The Bellovaci were foremost²⁰

among the Belgians in valor, in influence, and in population (number of inhabitants). 6. Nor in the last²¹ war with (obj. gen.) the Allobroges did the Aeduans render²² assistance to the Romans.

¹ The English form is the same as the Latin nominative.

² **Bibrax**, -actis, F., *Bibrax* (mod. *Bièvre*).

³ paene, adv., *almost*.

⁴ ad, prep., *close by, at*.

⁵ multa nocte, *late at night*.

⁶ sē recēpit (perf. of recipiō, *take back*), *returned*.

⁷ differunt.

⁸ from one another, *inter sē* (lit., among themselves).

⁹ duodecim, indecl. adj.

¹⁰ eā (fem. sing. to agree with the proper case of tempestās).

¹¹ Use the locative form: A. & G. 36, c; H. 48, 4; G. 27, 2.

¹² **Numida**, -ae, M.

¹³ **Massīva**, -ae, M.; see 228, Ex. 4.

¹⁴ **Hermēs** (or *Herma*), -ae, M., *Hermes-pillar* (see general vocabulary); for declension, see A. & G. 37; H. 50; G. 72.

¹⁵ Perf. pass. of dēiciō, *throw down*.

¹⁶ intēpestā nocte, *at an unseasonable hour of the night*.

¹⁷ Nom. pl. fem., *two*.

¹⁸ A. & G. 248, a; H. 419, I., 1, 1), (1); G. 391, Rem. 1.

¹⁹ pars (in apposition w. "kings").

²⁰ were foremost, plūrimum valēbant.

²¹ proximus, -a, -um., adj.

²² did render, tulērunt, perfect of ferō.

LESSON XXVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER.¹

237.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar**, M., *Caesar*.

6. **rēgīna**, F., *queen*.

2. **vir**, M., *man*.

7. **cīvis**, C., *citizen*.

3. **rēx**, M., *king*.

8. **hostis**, C., *enemy*.

4. **Semprōnia**, F., *Sempronia*.

9. **custōs**, C., *guard*.

5. **mulier**, F., *woman*.

238. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that Exs. 1–3 designate *males*, and that they are of the *masculine gender*; (2) that Exs. 4–6 designate *females*, and that they are of the *feminine gender*; (3) that Exs. 7–9 designate either *males* or *females*, and that they are of the *common* (masc. or fem.) *gender*. Frame a general rule for the Gender of Substantives, of whatever declension, whose Gender is determined by their Signification.

239.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. muerō, m., <i>sharp point.</i> | 6. timor, m., <i>fear.</i> |
| 2. pulmō, m., <i>lung.</i> | 7. caesp̄es, -itis, m., <i>turf.</i> |
| 3. sermō, m., <i>conversation.</i> | 8. gurges, -itis, m., <i>whirlpool.</i> |
| 4. dolor, m., <i>pain.</i> | 9. trāmes, -itis, m., <i>path.</i> |
| 5. honor, m., <i>honor.</i> | |

240. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender* of the foregoing substantives, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: **-ō, -or, -es** (gen. **-itis**).

241.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. aetās, f., <i>age.</i> | 15. pāx, f., <i>peace.</i> |
| 2. civitās, f., <i>community.</i> | 16. fortitūdō, -inis, f., <i>fortitude.</i> |
| 3. voluntās, f., <i>pleasure.</i> | 17. māgnitūdō, -inis, f., <i>size.</i> |
| 4. nūbēs, -is, f., <i>cloud.</i> | 18. multitūdō, -inis, f., <i>multi-</i>
<i>tude.</i> |
| 5. rūpēs, -is, f., <i>rock.</i> | 19. ferrūgō, -inis, f., <i>iron-rust.</i> |
| 6. vallēs, -is, f., <i>valley.</i> | 20. imāgō, -inis, f., <i>image.</i> |
| 7. clāssis, f., <i>fleet.</i> | 21. origō, -inis, f., <i>source.</i> |
| 8. nāvis, f., <i>ship.</i> | 22. salūs, -ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i> |
| 9. turris, f., <i>tower.</i> | 23. senectūs, -ūtis, f., <i>old age.</i> |
| 10. mēns, f., <i>mind.</i> | 24. virtūs, -ūtis, f., <i>virtue.</i> |
| 11. pars, f., <i>part.</i> | 25. contemptiō, f., <i>contempt.</i> |
| 12. urbs, f., <i>city.</i> | 26. legiō, f., <i>legion.</i> |
| 13. nox, f., <i>night.</i> | 27. ūrātiō, f., <i>speech.</i> |
| 14. vōx, f., <i>voice.</i> | |

242. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender* of the foregoing substantives, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: **-ās, -ēs** (gen. **-is**), **-is, -s** preceded by a consonant, **-x, -dō** (gen. **-dinis**), **-gō** (gen. **-ginis**), **-ūs** (gen. **-ūtis**), **-iō** (abstract and collective).

243.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>insigne, N., badge.</i> | 7. <i>corpus, -oris, N., body.</i> |
| 2. <i>mare, N., sea.</i> | 8. <i>frigus, -oris, N., cold.</i> |
| 3. <i>rête, N., net.</i> | 9. <i>tempus, -oris, N., time.</i> |
| 4. <i>agmen, N., train, army.</i> | 10. <i>genus, -eris, N., class.</i> |
| 5. <i>flumen, N., river.</i> | 11. <i>latus, -eris, N., side.</i> |
| 6. <i>nomen, N., name.</i> | 12. <i>opus, -eris, N., work.</i> |

244. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note the *gender* of the foregoing nouns, observing at the same time the *nominative endings* printed in **bold-face type**. Frame a rule for the Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension whose Nominative ends in: **-e, -men, -us (gen. -oris, -eris)**.

245.

VOCABULARY.

<i>audāx, -ācis, adj., bold.</i>	<i>noster, -tra, -trum, adj., our.</i>
<i>altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep.</i>	<i>pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.</i>
<i>ingēns, -entis, adj., huge.</i>	
<i>longus, -a, -um, adj., long.</i>	<i>turpis, -e, adj., base.</i>
<i>māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great.</i>	

246.

EXERCISE.

Determine the gender of the following substantives by the rules framed in connection with this lesson; indicate the gender thus determined by attaching to each substantive an appropriate adjective selected from the vocabulary in 245.

<i>aestās, -ātis, summer.</i>	<i>cohors, -rtis, cohort.</i>
<i>altitūdō, -inis, height.</i>	<i>cōnsul, -is, consul.</i>
<i>amor, -ōris, love.</i>	<i>contentiō, -ōnis, contention.</i>
<i>arx, arcis, citadel.</i>	<i>crimen, -inis, charge.</i>
<i>auris, -is, ear.</i>	<i>cubile, -is, couch.</i>
<i>avis, -is, bird.</i>	<i>cunctatiō, -ōnis, delay.</i>
<i>cāligō, -inis, mist.</i>	<i>custōs, -ōdis, guard.</i>
<i>carmen, -inis, song.</i>	<i>Dumnorix, -igis, Dumnorix.</i>
<i>clādēs, -is, disaster.</i>	<i>dux, ducis, leader.</i>
<i>clāmor, -ōris, shout.</i>	<i>eques, -itis, horseman.</i>

facultās, -ātis,	<i>opportunity.</i>	ovile, -is,	<i>sheep-fold.</i>
familiāritās, -ātis,	<i>intimacy.</i>	palmes, -itis,	<i>vine-shoot.</i>
flūmen, -inis,	<i>river.</i>	pater, -tris,	<i>father.</i>
foedus, -eris,	<i>treaty.</i>	pāvō, -ōnis,	<i>peacock.</i>
furor, -ōris,	<i>rage.</i>	pectus, -oris,	<i>breast.</i>
gēns, gentis,	<i>race.</i>	pedes, -itis,	<i>foot-soldier.</i>
homo, -inis,	<i>man</i> (including woman).	prōlēs, -is,	<i>offspring.</i>
insigne, -is,	<i>badge.</i>	puppis, -is,	<i>stern.</i>
juventūs, -ūtis,	<i>youth.</i>	rādix, -icis,	<i>root.</i>
lātitūdō, -inis,	<i>breadth.</i>	regiō, -ōnis,	<i>direction.</i>
latrō, -ōnis,	<i>robber.</i>	scelus, -eris,	<i>crime.</i>
levitās, -ātis,	<i>lightness.</i>	sēdēs, -is,	<i>seat.</i>
leō, -ōnis,	<i>lion.</i>	sedile, -is,	<i>seat</i> (poetic).
litus, -oris,	<i>shore.</i>	sēmen, -inis,	<i>seed.</i>
longitūdō, -inis,	<i>length.</i>	servitūs, -ūtis,	<i>servitude.</i>
lūx, lūcis,	<i>light.</i>	sidus, -eris,	<i>constellation.</i>
miles, -itis,	<i>soldier.</i>	stipes, -itis,	<i>stock</i> (of a tree).
mors, mortis,	<i>death.</i>	suspiciō, -ōnis,	<i>suspicion.</i>
nemus, -oris,	<i>grove.</i>	tēmō, -ōnis,	<i>carriage-pole.</i>
obses, -idis,	<i>hostage.</i>	umbō, -ōnis,	<i>boss</i> (of a shield).
opinio, -ōnis,	<i>opinion, notion.</i>	virgō, -inis,	<i>virgin.</i>

247. Note the gender of each of the following substantives,² and fix its gender in the memory by associating it with an appropriate adjective selected from **245**.

animal, -ālis,	<i>n., animal.</i>
arbor, -oris,	<i>f., tree.</i>
caput, -itis,	<i>n., head.</i>
collis, -is,	<i>m., hill.</i>

ignis, -is,	<i>m., fire.</i>
iter, itineris,	<i>n., journey.</i>
lapis, -idis,	<i>m., stone.</i>
vectigal, -ālis,	<i>n., revenue.</i>

¹ The rules for gender suggested in this lesson are deemed sufficient as practical aids to the memory. The gender of substantives of the third declension not here provided for, should be learned by observation and practice in reading and writing Latin.

² These substantives have already appeared in special vocabularies; they are introduced here because their gender is not provided for in the rules of this lesson.

LESSON XXIX.

SUBSTANTIVES: FOURTH DECLENSION.

248. Learn the paradigms of declension given in the following sections of the grammar: A. & G. 68; H. 116; G. 67.

249. Decline: **frūctus, -ūs, M., fruit;** **exercitus, -ūs, M., army;** **manus, -ūs, F., hand;** **cornū, -ūs, N., horn.**

250. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominative singular* and *dative plural* of the foregoing substantives: A. & G. note preceding 68; H. 116, 1, 2; G. 67.

251. Note the *gender* of the substantives in 249, and frame a Rule for the Gender of substantives of the fourth declension. For verification, see A. & G. 69, *a* (first sentence), *b*; H. 116; G. 68.

252. Decline together, with meanings: **vetus exercitus, veteran army;** **omnis frūctus, all the fruit;** **manus sinistra, left hand;** **dextrum cornū, right wing (lit., horn).**

253.VOCABULARY.¹

ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, lose.	equitātus, -ūs, M., cavalry.
cōgō, -ere, coēgi, cōactus, collect.	impetus, -ūs, M., attack, onset.
cōspectus, -ūs, M., sight.	locus, -ī, M., place; pl. (usually)
cōsulātus, -ūs, M., consulship.	loca, -ōrum, N., places.
dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, carry off.²	manus, -ūs, F., hand; art; band.
	nātūra, -ae, F., nature.
dē-sistō, -ere, -stītī, desist, cease.	occāsus, -ūs, M., setting.

peditātūs, -ūs, m., *foot-soldiers*, **senātūs**, -ūs, m., *senate*.
infantry. **sōl**, -is, m., *sun*.

pellō, -ere, *pepuli*, *pulsus*, *beat*. **sub**,³ prep. w. acc. and abl., *under*;
re-movēō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtus, **sub occāsum**, *towards the set-*
remove. *ting*.

254.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Hostēs ā⁴ sinistrō cornū pulsī erant. 2. Sub occāsum sōlis dēstiterunt. 3. Nam equitātū Dumnorix praeerat. 4. Manūs ā Belgīs cōgēbantur. 5. Oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītū erat. 6. Gallī māgnās peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās cōgunt. 7. Ariovistus in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus est.

- II. 1. The horses of all have been removed from sight. 2. Caēsar began the battle on⁵ the right wing. 3. All the fruits had been lost. 4. The cavalry sustains the attack of the enemy. 5. Almost (*paene*) in sight of our army the children of the Aeduans were carried off into slavery. 6. Crassuś is in command of all the cavalry. 7. The Aeduans had lost all their senate [and] all their cavalry.

255.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Tertiā ex⁴ parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō Helvētiī continentur. 2. Dumnorix māgnūm numerū equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit. 3. Manūs cōguntur, exercitus in ūnum locū condūcitur. 4. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornū vēnit. 5. Helvētiī tamen nōn parēs sunt nostrō exercituī. 6. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās in castra redūxit. 7. Paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et jam in manib⁹ nostris hostēs visi sunt.

- II. 1. The enemy could⁶ not withstand the onsets of our men. 2. The twelfth legion had taken position on⁷ the right wing. 3. Caesar opened the engagement on⁵ the right wing. 4. Thence he leads his army into the country⁸ of the Allobroges. 5. Towards sunset⁹ they ceased. 6. The forces (bands) of the enemy were kept apart. 7. Gradually those (*eī*, nom. pl.) who (*qui*, nom. pl.) were in command of the cavalry were disquieted.

¹ See also, for vocabulary, 252.⁶ were not able (*nōn poterant*) to withstand.² See also 199.⁷ in; why not ~~s~~ as in the next sentence?³ A. & G. 152, c; H. 435, note 1.⁸ *finēs*, plural.⁴ Translate *on*, and see foot-note 4.⁹ *setting of the sun*.

Lesson XXVI.

⁵ See 254, I., sent. 1.

LESSON XXX.

ADJECTIVES: REGULAR COMPARISON.

256.

EXAMPLES.

1. POSITIVE: *altus* (st. *alto-*), *high, deep*.
 COMPARATIVE: *altior*, M. & F., *-ius*, N., *higher, deeper*.
 SUPERLATIVE: *altissimus*, *-a, -um*, *highest, deepest*.
2. POSITIVE: *fortis* (st. *forti-*), *brave*.
 COMPARATIVE: *fortior*, M. & F., *-ius*, N., *braver*.
 SUPERLATIVE: *fortissimus*, *-a, -um*, *bravest*.
3. POSITIVE: *prudēns* (st. *prūdent-*), *sagacious*.
 COMPARATIVE: *prūdentior*, M. & F., *-ius*, N., *more sagacious*.
 SUPERLATIVE: *prūdentissimus*, *-a, -um*, *most sagacious*.
4. POSITIVE: *fēlix* (st. *fēlici-*), *happy*.
 COMPARATIVE: *fēlicior*, M. & F., *-ius*, N., *happier*.
 SUPERLATIVE: *fēlicissimus*, *-a, -um*, *happiest*.

257. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, (1) that the nominative of the comparative and superlative is formed by the addition of *-ior* (N. *-ius*) and *-issimus* (*-a*, *-um*),¹ respectively, to the stem of the positive; and (2) that in vowel-stems the final vowel of the stem disappears before these endings. Frame a rule for the Comparison of Adjectives.

258. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 89; H. 162; G. 86.

259. Learn the declension of the comparative **melior** (**tristior** or **altior**): A. & G. 86; H. 154; G. 87.

260. Compare: (like *altus*) *lātus*, *broad*, *longus*, *long*; (like *fortis*) *levis*, *light*, *gravis*, *heavy*; (like *prūdēns*) *potēns*, *powerful*, *sapiēns*, *wise*; (like *fēlīx*) *vēlōx*, *swift*, *ferāx*, *fertile*; also decline their Comparatives.

261. Decline together, with meanings: *mōns* *altior*, *higher mountain*; **gravior** *fortūna*, *harder lot*; *longius* *iter*, *longer road*.

262.

VOCABULARY.²

aetās, -ātis, f., *age*.

circum-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -duc-tus, *lead around*.

civitās, -ātis, f., *community, state*.

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *commit, intrust*.

filia,³ -ae, f., *daughter*.

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy; severe, hard*.

nōbilis, -e, adj., *high-born, noble*.

rēgnūm, -ī, n., *kingdom; sover-eignty*.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitti, *resist*.

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.

semper, adv., *always*.

Sēquani, -ōrum, m., *the Sequani or Sequanians*.

vulgō, adv., *commonly*.

263.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dē obsidibus gravius⁴ supplicium sūmet. 2. Oppidum ex⁵ omnibus partibus altissimās⁴ rūpēs habēbat. 3. Omnia fortissimī sunt Belgae. 4. Fīliam hominī nōbilissimō conlocat. 5. Resistē, mīles fortissime. 6. Om-nēs graviōris aetātis⁶ convēnerant. 7. Peditum fortissimō-rum salūtem equitātū nōn committam. 8. In Galliā ā potentiōribus vulgō rēgna⁷ occupābantur. 9. Cohortēs longiōre itinere⁸ circumductae erant.

II. 1. The swiftest foot-soldiers are not always the bravest. 2. The Helvetians were hemmed in by a broader and deeper river. 3. They send the noblest men in⁹ the state. 4. The punishment of the Sequani is too severe.⁴ 5. The lands of the Suessiones were very extensive⁴ and (very) fertile. 6. On⁵ one side the Helvetians are hemmed in by the river Rhine [which is] exceedingly broad and (exceedingly) deep.

264.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Carinae plāniōrēs sunt quām¹⁰ nostrārum nāvium.
 2. Ubī dē Caesaris adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs¹¹ facti sunt,¹²
 lēgātōs mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis.¹³ 3. Est gravior fortūna
 Sēquanōrum quam¹⁴ reliquōrum. 4. Suessionēs lātissimōs ferā-
 cissimōsque agrōs possident. 5. Locus ex omni Galliā opportū-
 nissimus āc frūctuōsissimus jūdicatus est.

II. 1. Arioivistus will inflict the severest punishment on¹⁵ all
 the hostages. 2. The Romans will be more faint-hearted (of
 feebler courage¹⁶). 3. Nor according to Swabian notions (accord-
 ing to the customs¹⁷ of the Suebi) is anything¹⁸ esteemed baser
 or more spiritless. 4. Among the Helvetians Orgetorix was by-
 far the most-exalted-in-rank.¹⁹ 5. The Morini were-making-for
 the denser woods. 6. Dumnorix, for-the-sake²⁰ of [extending
 his] political power, gave his mother [in marriage] to a man of-
 very-high-rank¹⁹ and of-very-great-influence.²¹

¹ Superlatives, therefore, are adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are declined like **bonus**.

² For vocabulary, see also 256, 260, 261.

³ For irregularity in the declension of the plural, see A. & G. 36, *c*; H. 49, 4; G. 27, 3.

⁴ The Latin comparatiōne and superlatiōne admit of other translations than those given in 256. Thus, **gravior** may mean *severer*, *rather severe* (*i.e.*, severer than usual), *too severe* (*i.e.*, severer than is fitting); **gravissimus** may mean *severest* or *very (exceedingly) severe*.

⁵ See foot-note 4, Lesson XXVI.

⁶ All [who were] of advanced age, *i.e.*, all the elders. For the genitive *aetatis*, see A. & G. 215; II. 396, V. n. 1; G. 364.

⁷ Translate by the singular, *sorēgnity* or *royal power*; the plural is used in the Latin because repeated instances are referred to.

⁸ A. & G. 258, *g*; II. 420, I, 3); G. 387.

⁹ "in the state" = *of the state*.

¹⁰ sc. carīnae.

¹¹ Predicate adjective with the passive verb **facti sunt** and limiting **Helvētiī**.

¹² **facti sunt**, perf. pass. of **faciō**, *make*; **certiōrēs facti sunt**, (were made more certain, and so) *were informed*.

¹³ See 263, II., sent. 3.

¹⁴ sc. **fortūna**.

¹⁵ See 263, I., sent. 1.

¹⁶ *of feebler courage*, **Infirmiōre animō**: A. & G. 251; H. 419, II.; G. 402.

¹⁷ Express "according to" by putting the word for "customs" in the ablative: A. & G. 253; H. 416; G. 398.

¹⁸ **quicquam**, nominative neuter singular.

¹⁹ Superlative of **nōbilis**.

²⁰ **causā**; **causā** follows the genitive that limits it.

²¹ Superlative of **potēns**.

LESSON XXXI.

SUBSTANTIVES: FIFTH DECLENSION.

265. Learn the declension of **rēs**, *F.*, *thing*; **diēs**, *M.*,¹ *day*; **fidēs**, *F.*, *faith*; **spēs**, *F.*, *hope*; **aciēs**, *F.*, *edge, line of battle, line*: A. & G. 72, 74, *d*; H. 120, 122, 1, 2; G. 69, Rem. 1.

266. Explain the formation, from the stem, of the *nominatives* in **265**: A. & G. note preceding 72; H. 120, 1; G. 69.

267. Note the *gender* of the substantives in **265**, and frame a general Rule for the Gender of substantives of the fifth declension. For verification, see A. & G. 73; H. 123; G. 70.

268. Decline together, with meanings: in sing., **rēs mīlitāris**, *the military art*; in pl., **multae rēs**, *many things*; in sing., **diēs septimus**, *the seventh day*; in pl., **pauci diēs**, *a few days*; in sing., **māgna fidēs**, *great confidence*; in sing. and in nom. and acc. pl. **spēs asperior**, *a more discouraging prospect*; in sing., **aciēs triplex**, *triple line of battle*.

269.

VOCABULARY.²

ac-cidō , -ere, -cidi, <i>happen, occur.</i>	Juventūs , -ūtis, <i>F.</i> , <i>youth</i> .
cōn-stituō , -ere, -ui, -ūtus, <i>sta-</i> <i>tion, post.</i>	medius , -a, -um, adj., <i>middle, mid-</i> <i>dle part of.</i> ³
di-mittō , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>dismiss; lose.</i>	occāsiō , -ōnis, <i>F.</i> , <i>occasion, chance</i> .
dolus , -i, <i>M.</i> , <i>treachery.</i>	* posterus , ⁴ -a, -um, adj., <i>following.</i>
frūmentārius , -a, -um, <i>pertaining</i> <i>to grain; rēs frūmentāria, pro-</i> <i>visions.</i>	premō , -ere, <i>pressi, pressus,</i> <i>press hard, distress.</i>
	quaerō , -ere, -sivi or -ii, -itus, <i>seek; inquire.</i>

secundus, -a, -um, adj., *second*. **trā-dē**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *surrender*; *impart*.
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *keep*; *fi-*
dem servāre, *to keep one's word.* **trīgintā**, indecl. num. adj., *THIRTY*.
ūsus, -ūs, m., *experience*.

270.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Diē septimō pervenit.* 2. *Hostēs sine fidē tempus atque occāsiōnem dolī quaerunt.* 3. *Diērum trīgintā habēbant frūmentum.* 4. *In ūnā⁵ virtūte omnem spem salūtis pōnunt.* 5. *Multa dē rērum nātūrā juventūtī trādunt.* 6. *In colle mediō³ triplicem aciem īstrūxit.* 7. *Omnem rēi frūmentāiae spem dīmiserant.* 8. *Reliquās legiōnēs prō cas-tris in aciē cōnstituit.*

II. 1. *The army⁶ of the enemy had been beaten on the left wing.* 2. *A very opportune incident⁷ occurred.* 3. *On the following day he inquired about the remaining matters.⁷* 4. *Caeser will keep his word as-to⁸ the number of days.* 5. *The remaining legions take position in line of battle on the middle of the hill.* 6. *The soldiers of the second line were distressed for provisions.⁹* 7. *The tribunes had no great experience in military affairs.¹⁰*

¹ *diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

² See also 265, 268.

³ *medius* in agreement with a substantive usually denotes *the middle of*; thus, *in colle mediō*, *on the middle of the hill*: see A. & G. 193; H. 440, notes 1 and 2; G. 287, Rem.

⁴ The asterisk (*) indicates that the form to which it is attached is not in use.

⁵ *alone*.

⁶ *exercitus* = *army* (generic term); *agmen* = *army* (on the march); *aciēs* = *army* (drawn up in battle array). Which is to be preferred here?

⁷ *rēs.*

⁸ *dē.*

⁹ Use the ablative.

¹⁰ *rēs* in the singular.

LESSON XXXII.

ADJECTIVES: PECULIARITIES OF COMPARISON.

NOTE: As the four conjugations in verbs, and the several declensions in substantives and adjectives, have now been treated, the special vocabularies hitherto printed in connection with the exercises will be discontinued. The pupil will henceforth be obliged to depend wholly, therefore, on the general vocabularies at the end of the book. In consulting the Latin-English vocabulary for the meaning of a word whose formation or composition is given, he should study carefully what is printed in brackets, so as to be able to trace the meaning of the complete word from the meaning of the parts which enter into its formation. Right habits formed at this stage will greatly facilitate the acquisition of power to translate at sight.

At this point also, or a little later at the discretion of the teacher, the pupil may with profit begin to take occasional short lessons on the formation of words (see lessons beginning p. 209), and to translate and commit to memory passages from the anecdotes introduced at p. 224. The lessons on formation and the anecdotes should be completed before the continuous extracts from Caesar (p. 234) are begun.

271. Compare, with meanings: **acer**, *sharp*; **celer**, *swift*; **miser**, *wretched*; **pulcher**, *beautiful*: A. & G. 89, *a*; H. 163, 1; G. 88, 1.

272. Compare, with meanings: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *like*; **humilis**, *low*: A. & G. 89, *b*; H. 163, 2; G. 88, 2.

273. Compare, with meanings: **bonus**, *good*; **malus**, *bad*; **magnus**, *great*; **parvus**, *small*; **multus**, *much*: A. & G. 90; H. 165; G. 89.

274. Compare, with meanings: **citerior**, *hither, on this side*; **interior**, *inner*; **prior**, *former*; **propior**, *nearer*; **ulterior**, *farther*: A. & G. 91; H. 166; G. 89, Rem. 2.

275. Compare, with meanings: **exterus**, *on the outside*; **inferus**, *below*; ***posterus**, *coming after*; **superus**, *above*: A. & G. 91, *a*; H. 163, 3; G. 89, Rem. 1.

276.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Pulcherrimam tōtiū¹ Galliae urbem suīs manibus succendent. 2. Inter novissimum² hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum, longum spatiū intererat. 3. Cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmant. 4. Tamen humil-limus homo dē plēbe ope³ dīgnus est. 5. Mājōrī tamen partī placuit castra dēfendere. 6. In Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit. 7. Mājōrēs nātū⁴ lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 8. Quam⁵. māximīs potest⁶ itineribus contendit. 9. Sed Sēquanīs pējus accidit. 10. Trāductī sunt plūrēs.⁷ 11. Summae virtūtis diffīcillima est via.

II. 1. *Geneva*⁸ is the *last*⁹ town of the Allobroges and nearest to the territories of the Helvetians. 2. [There] was but⁹ one legion in farther Gaul. 3. At night-fall¹⁰ they will hasten to the Rhine. 4. They had the greatest abundance of ships. 5. He had stationed the legions on the summit-of¹¹ the ridge. 6. The bravest soldiers had been posted¹² in the upper line. 7. They collect as many ships as they possibly can.¹³ 8. The lot of the Sequani was most pitiable.

277.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar Procillo¹⁴ summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat. 2. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur,¹⁵ pertinent ad īfieriōrem partem flūminis Rhēni. 3. Proxiō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās suās ēdūxit. 4. Multō¹⁶ mājor alacritās studiumque mājus exercituī injectum est.¹⁷ 5. Deī Mercurii sunt plūrima simulācrā. 6. Plūra⁷ Gallōrum scūta ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixa et conligāta sunt. 7. Nostri mājōrēs¹⁸ exemplum posterīs¹⁹ prōdidērunt pul-cherrimum.²⁰ 8. Collis īfīmus²¹ apertus erat, ab superiōre parte silvestris.

II. 1. The Sequanian land is the best in²² all¹ Gaul. 2. He hastens by forced marches²³ into farther Gaul and arrives at (**ad**) Geneva. 3. Caesar treats with Ariovistus on matters of-the-highest-importance.²⁴ 4. At night-fall¹⁰ they hastened to the Rhine

and the marches²⁵ of the Germans. 5. He stationed all the auxiliaries in front of the smaller camp in sight of the enemy. 6. In that-place was the shortest route into farther Gaul. 7. The river Axona is in the remotest [part of the]²⁶ territories of the Remi. 8. The lot of the Sequani is more pitiable and grievous than [that] of the rest.

¹ Genitive feminine of *tōtus*, *a*.-*um*, *all, whole*; see A. & G. 83; H. 151, 1; G. 35.

² *novissimum agmen, the rear*; for comparison, see A. & G. 91, c, 2; H. 167, 2; G. 89, 3.

³ Ablative with *dīgnus*: A. & G. 245, *a* (first line); H. 421, III.; G. 373, Rem. 3.

⁴ *mājörēs nātū*, [those who are] greater by birth, i.e., the elders.

⁵ *quama* strengthens the superlative *māximIs*; read A. & G. 93, *b*; H. 170, 2, (2); G. 317.

⁶ Pres. indic. 3d sing. of *possum*, *be able, can*; translate: *by the greatest possible marches, by forced marches*. *potest* might have been omitted.

⁷ *More* (than one, i.e.) *several*. For declension, see A. & G. 86; H. 165, note 1; G. 89.

⁸ Put the word for "last" at the beginning, and the word for "Geneva" at the end. What is the effect of this arrangement?

⁹ *Erat omnīnd.*

¹⁰ "At night-fall" = *at the first part of the night* = *prīmā nocte*; see A. & G. 193; H. 440, notes 1 and 2; G. 287, Rem.

¹¹ Superlative of *superus* in agreement with substantive; see preceding references.

¹² "had been posted" = *had taken position*; use *cōsistō*.

¹³ *possunt*, 3d pl. pres. indic. of *possum*; imitate 276, I., sent. 8.

¹⁴ *Procillō* (dat.) *habēbat, reposed in Procillus*.

¹⁵ *begin*; *oriuntur* has a passive form, but an active meaning.

¹⁶ *greater by much*, i.e., *far greater*; for the ablative, see A. & G. 250; II. 423; G. 400.

¹⁷ *injectum est*, perf. pass. of *inīcio*: *was infused*.

¹⁸ Comparative of *māgnus* used substantively: *ancestors*.

¹⁹ Plural of **posterus* used substantively: *posterity*.

²⁰ Note the emphatic position of *pulcherrimum*.

²¹ *at the bottom*.

²² cf. foot-note 9, Lesson XXX.

²³ Imitate 276, I., sent. 8.

²⁴ Superlative of *superus*.

²⁵ "marches" = *borders, frontiers*; use the plural of *fīnis*.

²⁶ Superlative of *exterus* in agreement with substantive; cf. foot-note 10.

LESSON XXXIII.

NUMERALS: CARDINALS.

278. Learn, with meanings, the cardinal numerals : A. & G. 94; H. 174; G. 93.

279. Learn the declension of: **ūnus** (A. & G. 83, *a*; H. 175; G. 35), **duo** (A. & G. 94, *b*; H. 175; G. 92), **trēs** (A. & G. 94, *c*; H. 175; G. 92), **ducentī** (A. & G. 94, *d*; H. 177).

280. Decline together: **duae legiōnēs**, *two legions*; **itinera duo**, *two roads*; **trēs senātōrēs**, *three senators*; **passūs ducentī**, *two hundred paces*.

281. Decline together, with meanings: in the sing., **ūnum iter**, *one route*; in the sing., **ūna spēs**, *the only hope*; in the pl., **ūni Suēbī**, *the Suebi alone*; in the pl., **ūna castra**, *one camp*. See A. & G. 94, *a*; H. 175, n. 1; G. 95, Rem. 2 (second line).

EXAMPLES.

1. **Equitēs mille** (Cic. *Fam.* 10, 9, 3), *a thousand horsemen*.
2. **Equitum mille** (Caes. *B. C.* 3, 84, 4), *a thousand horsemen* (lit., *a thousand of horsemen*).
3. **Milia passuum tria** (1, 22, 5), *three miles* (lit., *three thousands of paces*).

283. OBSERVATION: Note (1) that **mille** (Ex. 1) is an *indeclinable adjective*; (2) that **mille** (Ex. 2) is a *substantive* in the *singular number* limited by the *genitive equitum*;¹ (3) that **milia** (Ex. 3) is a *substantive* in the *plural number* limited by the *genitive passuum*.¹

284. REFERENCES: Read carefully: A. & G. 94, *e* with note (to the semicolon); H. 178 with note (to the semicolon); G. 308.

285. Decline together: **diēs quīndecim**, *fifteen days*; **milia sexāgintā tria**, *sixty-three thousand*. See A. & G. 94, *c* (second sentence); H. 176; G. 92.

286.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Factiōnēs** sunt **duae**. 2. **Milia hominum vīgintī quattuor**² ad **Ariovistum vēnērunt**. 3. **Vīcōs quadringtonōs**

incendunt. 4. Cum duābus legiōnibus jugum adscendit.
 5. Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs. 6. Caesar scūtum ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī⁸ dētraxit. 7. Oppida sua omnia, numerō ad⁴ duodecim, vīcōs ad quadrīngentōs, incendunt.
 8. Quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs pollicentur,⁵ Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morinī vīgintī quīnque² mīlia, Menapiī septem mīlia, Aduātūcī decem et novem² mīlia.

II. 1. The place was six hundred paces⁶ distant. 2. There were only two routes. 3. The Belgians inhabit one part. 4. The Nervii were reduced from six hundred senators to three.⁷ 5. Six thousand men hastened to the Rhine. 6. The Nervii were reduced from sixty thousand men to barely⁸ five hundred. 7. He stationed two legions on the topmost ridge. 8. The sum total⁹ was¹⁰ about⁴ three hundred sixty-eight thousand.

287.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Omnia rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia ducentā et sexāgintā tria, Tulingōrum mīlia trigintā sex, Latovicōrum quattuordecim, Rauricōrum viginti tria, Bōjōrum trigintā duo. 2. Ex litteris Caesaris diērum¹¹ vīginti supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

II. 1. In twenty-five days they raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet⁶ broad [and] eighty feet⁶ high. 2. He pitches his camp three miles⁶ from the camp of the enemy. 3. The Helvetians with five hundred horse had routed a great force of cavalry.

¹ It will be enough for the pupil at present to note that the *substantives mīlie* and *mīlia* are followed by the genitive; the *kind* of genitive used after these substantives will be discussed in the next lesson.

² What other form of expression is possible?

³ ūnī mīlitī, *from a soldier*, dat. of ind. obj. after *dētraxit*; in the Latin expression, the soldier is viewed as the person *to whom* the action is done. See A. & G. 229; H. 386, 2; G. 344, Rem. 2.

⁴ *ad* with numerals = *about*.

⁵ *pollicentur*, *promise*, has a passive form with active meaning.

⁶ Use the accusative; this use of the accusative will be discussed in the next lesson.

⁷ Express: *from six hundred to three senators*.

⁸ Express: *barely to*.

⁹ "sum total" = *sum of all*.

¹⁰ *was*, *fuērunt*. See A. & G. 204, b; H. 462; G. 202, Rem. 1, 3).

¹¹ cf. Lesson XXX., foot-note 6.

LESSON XXXIV.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.—ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION
OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE.

288.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Magna est corporis pars aperta** (4, 1, 10), *a great part of the body is exposed.*
2. **Impedimentorum magnum numerum** (2, 17, 2), *a great quantity of baggage.*
3. **Nihil vīni** (2, 15, 4), *no wine* (lit., nothing of wine).
4. **Milia hominum vīginti quattuor** (1, 31, 10), *twenty-four thousand men.*
5. **Omnium fortissimū sunt Belgae** (1, 1, 3), *the Belgians are the bravest of all.*
6. **Nōbilissimōs cīvitatis** (1, 7, 3), *the men of highest rank in the community.*
7. **Multum aestatis** (5, 22, 4), *a considerable part of the summer.*
8. **Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum** (Sall. Cat. 5, 4), *enough eloquence, [but] not enough discretion.*

289. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in each of the foregoing examples, that the *genitive* designates the *whole*, and that the word which the genitive limits designates a *part*. The genitive thus used is called the *Partitive Genitive*. Frame a rule for the Partitive Genitive.

290. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 216; H. 397; G. 366.

291. OBSERVATION: What part of speech is the *partitive word* in Exs. 1-4? in Exs. 5-7? in Ex. 8? Read A. & G. 216, a, 1, 2, 3, 4; H. 397, 1, 2, 3, 4; G. 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, Rem. 4.

292.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit** (1, 48, 3), *for five days in succession Caesar led out his forces [and arrayed them] in front of the camp.*

2. [Casticī] pater rēgnū ī Sēquānīs multōs annōs obtinuerat (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had held regal power among the Sequani for many years.*
3. Repūgnantēs diem noctemque obsident (7, 42, 6), *they besiege day and night those that resist.*
4. Oppidum aberat mīlia passuum octō (2, 6, 1), *the town was eight miles distant.*
5. Duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās perdūxit (7, 72, 3), *he made (carried) two trenches fifteen feet wide.*
6. Hercyniae silvae lātitūdō novem dīērum iter patet (6, 25, 1), *the breadth of the Hercynian forest extends over nine days' journey.*

293. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1-3, that **diēs**, **annōs**, **diem**, and **noctem** answer the question *how long?* In what *case* are they? Note, in Exs. 4-6, that **mīlia**, **pedēs**, and **iter** answer the question *how far?* In what *case* are they? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives denoting Duration of Time or Extent of Space.

294. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 256 (last part), 257; H. 379; G. 335, 2, 336, 337.

295.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Magistrātūs Aeduōrum antīquitus¹ rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsuērant.² 2. Ā castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. 3. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. 4. Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā, altum pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt. 5. Paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnēm rēi frūmentāriae causā³ morātur.⁴

II. 1. Night lasts (is) thirty days together⁵ at the winter season.⁶ 2. Nor was there left much time before (to) sunset. 3. The territories of the Helvetians extended two hundred and forty miles in⁷ length, [and] a hundred and eighty in⁷ breadth. 4. He selected a place suitable

for a camp about six hundred paces from the Germans.
 5. After the destruction of the Cimbri, they had been for many years harassed by their neighbors.

296.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Prīma legiō in castra vēnerat, reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatiū aberant. 2. Explorātōrēs hostiū omni flūminis parte⁸ erant dispositi. 3. Aedui et Arverni dē potentatū inter sē⁹ multōs annōs contendunt.¹⁰ 4. Frūmenta tantā multitudine jūmentōrum atque hominū cōsumēbantur. 5. Ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram milia passuum decem novēm mūrum perdūcit. 6. Ariovistus multōs mēnsēs castris¹¹ sē¹² āc palūdibus¹¹ tenuerat.

II. 1. He was distant a few days'¹³ march from the Germans. 2. The enemy not only¹⁴ blockades the roads, but also¹⁴ leaves behind a strong enough garrison¹⁵ for the camp. 3. Storms ensued¹⁶ several days in succession.¹⁷ 4. The place was distant about six-hundred paces from the enemy. 5. There was the greatest abundance of everything in the town. 6. For several years he has farmed¹⁸ the revenues of the Aedui.

¹ antīquitus, in former times.

² cōsuērant, contracted from cōn-suērant: A. & G. 128, *a*; H. 235; G. 151, 1.

³ See Lesson XXX., foot-note 20.

⁴ morātur, he delays, has a passive form with reflexive meaning.

⁵ "thirty days together" = thirty successive days.

⁶ at the winter season, sub brūmā.

⁷ in with accusative.

⁸ Ablative of place where with preposition omitted; read A. & G. 258, *f*; H. 425, 2; G. 386.

⁹ inter sē, among themselves, with each other.

¹⁰ contendunt, have been contending: A. & G. 276, *a*; H. 467, 2; G. 221.

¹¹ As the ablative of place where in this instance expresses also means by which, the preposition in is omitted: H. 425, 1, 1); G. 387.

¹² himself, accusative singular.

¹³ "a few days' march" = a march of a few days; cf. 287, I., sent. 2 and foot-note.

¹⁴ not only . . . but also, et . . . et.

¹⁵ "a strong enough garrison" = enough of garrison.

¹⁶ secūtae sunt (passive form with active meaning).

¹⁷ "in succession" = successive.

¹⁸ "has farmed the revenues" = has the revenues farmed. Farmed, redemptus, -a, -um.

LESSON XXXV.

NUMERALS: ORDINALS.—ADJECTIVES: GENITIVE IN -īus, DATIVE IN -ī.

297. Learn, with meanings, the first twenty-five ordinal numerals: A. & G. 94; H. 174; G. 93.

298. Study the following table of alternative expressions :

thirteenth, tertius decimus or decimus et tertius (similarly 14–17).

eighteenth, duodecimēsimus or octāvus decimus (similarly 19).

twenty-first, vīcēsimus prīmus or ūnus et vīcesimus.

twenty-second, vīcēsimus secundus or alter et vīcesimus.

twenty-third, vīcēsimus tertius or tertius et vīcesimus (similarly 24 and 25).

299. Decline¹ together: in the sing., *legiō decima, the tenth legion*; *cēnsōrēs vīcēsimī sextī, the twenty-sixth censors*.

300. Learn the declension of: *alius, other*; *nūllus, not any, no*; *sōlus, alone*; *tōtus, whole*; *ūllus, any*; *ūnus, one*; *alter, other* (of two); *uter, which* (of two); *neuter, neither*: A. & G. 83 with *a* and *b*; H. 151, 1; G. 35 with Rem. (end).

301. Decline together: *aliud iter, another road*; *nūlla vōx, not a word*; *ūllum periculum, any danger at all*.

302. Decline together, in the sing.: *prōvincia tōta, the whole province*; *altera pars, the other side*; *utra pars, which part* (of two)?

303.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Diē sextō decimō pervenit. 2. Aliud iter habent nūllum.² 3. Annō ūndēvīcēsimō³ post cōnsulis mortem, urbs expūgnāta est. 4. Prīma et secunda aciēs⁴ hostibus⁵ resistit. 5. Diērum⁶ vīgintī supplicatiō acciderat nūlli.² 6. Sēquanī sōlī auxilium nōn implōrant. 7. Cēnsōrēs vīcēsimī sextī³ ā prīmīs cēnsōribus suērunt. 8. Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs sunt duae. 9. Alter alterī⁷ ūtilis est. 10. Dē quartā vigiliā summum jugum montis adscendit. 11. Cum legiōne duodecimā contendit. 12. Uter utrī anteferendus⁸ est? 13. Potestās erat neutrī.⁹

- II. 1. The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions¹⁰ arrived. 2. Some resisted the enemy⁵ in one quarter, others in another.¹¹ 3. He left behind the fourteenth legion. 4. There he places the baggage of the entire army. 5. In the twenty-sixth year the town was taken by assault. 6. Some¹² hastened to the mountain, the others¹² to the baggage. 7. He waited until¹³ the ninth hour.¹⁴ 8. Neither-party¹⁵ makes¹⁶ a beginning. 9. He will arrive at about the fourth hour¹⁴ of the day. 10. They do not govern according-to¹⁷ the dictates¹⁸ of another. 11. [It] was the eighteenth purificatory sacrifice. 12. He makes a requisition on¹⁹ the whole province.

304.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Aliud *ālii*²⁰ nātūra iter ostendit. 2. Alterius factiōnis p̄incipātum tenent Aedui, alterius Arvernī. 3. Annum jam tertium et vīcēsimū³ rēgnat.²¹ 4. Prīma et secunda aciēs⁴ victis *āc* summōtis resistēbat, tertia venientēs sustinēbat. 5. Post sex legionēs tōtīus exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat;²² inde duae legionēs tōtū agmen claudēbant. 6. Legiōnis¹⁰ nōnae et decimae militēs Atrebatēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt. 7. Alter alterī²³ inimicus erat.

- II. 1. He makes a requisition on¹⁹ the entire province [for] the greatest possible number of soldiers. 2. He sent Galba with the

twelfth legion and a part of the cavalry against²⁴ the Veragri. 3. They ask of one another²⁵ the cause of the tumult. 4. The first and second lines⁴ are under²⁶ arms, the third is fortifying the camp. 5. The Helvetians go in quest of another dwelling place, other habitations. 6. Lysander conquered the Athenians when they had been carrying on war twenty-six years.²⁷

¹ Ordinals are of the first and second declensions, and are declined like **bonus**.

² Note the emphatic position.

³ What is the alternative expression?

⁴ Note the difference between the Latin idiom and the English; **aciēs** is here singular, but must be translated plural.

⁵ A. & G. 227; H. 385, I.; G. 345.

⁶ cf. 287, I., sent. 2 and foot-note.

⁷ Translate: *They are useful to each other* (the one is useful to the other): A. & G. 203.

⁸ *is to be preferred*.

⁹ Trans.: *Neither had power* (power was to neither). For the dative, see A. & G. 231; H. 387; G. 349.

¹⁰ cf. foot-note 4.

¹¹ Translate as if the entire sentence were. *Others resisted the enemy in another part*. See A. & G. 203, c; H. 459, 1; G. 306 (illustrations).

¹² *Some ... the others, alteri ... alteri*.

¹³ ad.

¹⁴ See **hōra** in the general vocabulary.

¹⁵ Use the plural of neuter.

¹⁶ faciunt, 3d pl. of faciō.

¹⁷ ad.

¹⁸ dictates (pl.), **praescriptum**, I, N. (sing.).

¹⁹ "on" is here a sign of the dative of indirect object.

²⁰ See references under foot-note 11.

²¹ *He has been reigning these twenty-three years*; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 10.

²² **conlocārat** = **conlocāverat**; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

²³ cf. foot-note 7.

²⁴ in with accusative.

²⁵ *Another asks from another*; cf. foot-note 7.

²⁶ in with ablative.

²⁷ Translate: *Lysander conquered the Athenians carrying on war in the twenty-sixth year*.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

305.

EXAMPLES.

I. TIME.

- Caesar necessāriis rēbus imperātis, ad legiōnem dēvēnit (2, 21, 1), *Caesar, WHEN HE HAD ISSUED THE NECESSARY ORDERS* (the necessary things having been ordered), *came to the legion*.

2. **Māgnā multitudine peditatūs coactā**, ad castra vēnērunt (4, 34, 5), HAVING COLLECTED A LARGE FORCE OF INFANTRY (a large force having been collected), *they came to the camp.*
3. [Orgetorix], **M. Messallā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus**, cīvitatī persuāsit (1, 2, 1), *Orgetorix, IN THE CONSULSHIP OF MARCUS MESSALLA AND MARCUS PISO (Marcus Messalla and Marcus Piso being consuls), persuaded his countrymen.*
4. **Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū**, Ariōvistus lēgātōs mittit (1, 42, 1), ON LEARNING THE ARRIVAL OF CAESAR (the arrival having been learned), *Ariovistus sent ambassadors.*
5. **Scūtō dētractō**, prōcēssit (2, 25, 2), *he SNATCHED A SHIELD AND (a shield having been snatched, he) went forward.*

II. CAUSE.

6. **Germāni reliquā fugā dēspērātā**, sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt (4, 15, 2), *the Germans, DESPAIRING OF FURTHER FLIGHT (further flight having been despaired of), cast themselves into the river.*
7. **Potentibus Rēmīs**, impetrant (2, 12, 5), AT THE INTERCESSION OF THE REMI (the Remi asking), *they obtain [their request].*

III. CONCESSION.

8. **Paucis dēfendentibus**, expūgnāre nōn potuit (2, 12, 2), THOUGH BUT FEW DEFENDED (few defending) [*it*], *he could not take [it].*

IV. MEANS.

9. **Militēs, pilis missis**, hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt (1, 25, 2), *the soldiers, BY THROWING THEIR HEAVY JAVELINS (javelins having been thrown), broke through the enemy's phalanx.*

V. CONDITION.

10. **Nihil deceit repūgnante nāturā** (Cic. *Off.* 1, 31, 110), *nothing is becoming IF NATURE OPPOSES (nature opposing).*
11. **Sēquanis invitīs**, ire nōn poterant (1, 9, 1), *IF THE SEQUANI WITHHELD CONSENT (the Sequani [being] unwilling) they could not proceed.*

306. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *ablative expressions* printed in **boldface type** in the foregoing examples might be omitted without injury to the construction. In other words, they are *grammatically independent*. Ablatives which are thus grammatically independent of the remaining parts of the sentence are called *Ablatives Absolute* (*i.e.*, independent ablatives).

Note, further, that all the examples, except 3 and 11, contain a *substantive* in the ablative absolute with a *participle*, whereas, in Ex. 3, *both ablatives* are *substantives*, and, in Ex. 11, the *second ablative* is an *adjective* (*invitIs*).

Note, again, that the ablatives absolute express: in 1–5, *time*; in 6 and 7, *cause*; in 8, *concession*; in 9, *means*; in 10 and 11, *condition*.

Note, finally, that the literal construction of the words is frequently disregarded in the English translation. Thus, in Exs. 1, 8, 10, and 11, the ablative absolute is translated by a *subordinate clause*; in Exs. 2, 4, 6, and 9, a *passive participle* is translated by an *active*; in Exs. 3, 4, 7, and 9, a *preposition with a substantive* is used in translation; and in Ex. 5, the participle is translated by a *verb connected with the main verb by a coördinate conjunction*.

Frame rules embodying the foregoing observations.

307. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 255, a; H. 431, 1, 2, 4; G. 408, 409.

308.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūllō hoste prohibente, legiōnem in Allobrogēs perdūxit. 2. Conloquium, interpositā causā, tollit. 3. Nōnnūllī ab novissimīs, dēsertō proeliō,¹ excēdēbant. 4. Propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit.² 5. Mulierēs, pāssīs manibus, flentēs auxilium implorābant. 6. Repūgnante nātūrā, frūstrā contendimus. 7. L. Tullō M'. Lepidō cōnsulibus, P. Autrōnius et P. Sūlla, dēsignātī cōsulēs, poenās dederant.

II. 1. They had not given battle the-day-before, *although they had seized the higher places*.³ 2. *Having made this address*, he dismissed the council. 3. *At the intercession of*

Dumnorix, they obtain their request of⁵ the Sequani. 4. The women and children on⁶ the wall, *with hands outstretched* according to⁷ their wont, besought peace of⁸ the Romans. 5. The Caturiges *seize the higher places and*¹ impede the army's march.⁸ 6. *In Caesar's consulship*, Arioistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people. 7. The Helvetians, *if Caesar withhold consent*,⁹ will endeavor to force a passage¹⁰ through the province.

309.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Secundiōe equitum proeliō hostibus, Cæsar suōs in castra redūxit. 2. Nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia sex ad Rhēnum contendērunt. 3. Male rē gestā, fortūna dēfuit imperātōri. 4. Aequatō omnium periculō, spem fugae tollit. 5. Com-mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine lacesunt.

II. 1. Labienus having seized the mountain, awaited our men. 2. Although two cohorts were sent by Caesar as-a-reënforcement,¹¹ the enemy, inasmuch as our men were overcome with terror, broke boldly through the midst [of them]. 3. In the consulship of Cotta and Torquatus, a great many objects on the Capitol were struck¹² by lightning.¹³ 4. On hearing the shouting, they all broke ranks¹ and hastened to seek safety in flight.¹⁴

¹ Imitate 305, Ex. 5.

² nōn potuit, *he was not able.*

³ Passages in this exercise printed in Italics are to be translated by the ablative absolute.

⁴ hāc, abl. sing. fem.

⁵ s, ab.

⁶ ex.

⁷ cf. foot-note 17, Lesson XXX.

⁸ Translate: *restrain the army from the march*: A. & G. 243; H. 413; G. 388.

⁹ See 305, Ex. 11.

¹⁰ Translate: *will attempt a passage through force (per vim)*. For declension of vīs, *force*, see A. & G. 61; H. 66.

¹¹ subsidiō (dat.).

¹² percussae sunt (perf. pass. of percūtiō).

¹³ by lightning, dē caelō (from heaven).

¹⁴ Ablative of means.

LESSON XXXVII.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

310. Review the present active and perfect passive participles of **amō**, **moneō** (or **dēleō**), **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**), **audio**; and learn, with meanings, the future active participle and the gerundive: A. & G. pp. 77, 79, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 89, 91, 93, 95, 97, 99, 101; G. pp. 54, 57, 58, 61, 64, 67, 68, 71. Learn also the future participle of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

311. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing forms, the following facts:—

1. The *present active participle* is formed by the addition of **-nt**,¹ nom. **-ns**,¹ to the *present stem*,² and the *gerundive* by the addition of **-ndo**,³ nom. **-ndus**, to the *same stem*.

2. The *future active participle* is formed by the addition of **-tūro**, nom. **-tūrus**, to the *verb stem* as it appears in the *perfect passive participle*.⁴

Frame rules for the formation of the Present Active Participle, the Gerundive, and the Future Active Participle in the several conjugations.

312. Form and translate the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Gerundive, of:—

ā-mittō , -ere, -misi, -missus, ⁴ <i>lose.</i>	ex-istimō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>reckon,</i>
cōgō , -ere, <i>coēgi</i> , <i>coāctus</i> , <i>com-</i>	<i>think.</i>
<i>pel.</i>	
com-moveō , -ere, -mōvi, -mōtus,	habeō , -ēre, -ui, -itus, <i>have.</i>
<i>alarm.</i>	mūniō , -ire, -ivī or -ii, -itus, <i>fortify.</i>
dō , <i>dare</i> , <i>dedi</i> , <i>datus</i> , <i>give..</i>	reperiō , -ire, <i>reperi</i> , <i>repertus</i> ,
	<i>find.</i>

313. Learn, with meanings, the Indicative forms of the First (Active) Periphrastic Conjugation⁵ of **amō**: A. & G. 129; H. 233; G. 149.

314. Learn, with meanings, the Indicative forms of the Second (Passive) Periphrastic Conjugation⁶ of **amō**: A. & G. 129; H. 234; G. 150.

315.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. *Populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrus est.* 2. *Aquī-tānia tertia pars Galliae est exīstimānda.* 3. *Obsidēs datūrī erant.* 4. *Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrus erit.* 5. *Bellum gerendūm erit.* 6. *Neque obsidēs repetitūrī neque auxiliūm ā populō Rōmānō implō-rātūrī fuērunt.* 7. *Omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda.* 8. *Militēs ab opere sunt revocandī.* 9. *Iter per prōvinciam per vim tentātūrī sunt.*

II. 1. They had been on-the-point-of-restoring the hostages. 2. They were about-to-compel the Allobroges. 3. The opportunity must not be lost. 4. The [soil] of the Gauls⁶ was not to-be-compared with that⁷ of the Germans. 5. The signal will have-to-be-given with the trumpet. 6. Neither will men of hostile disposition⁸ be likely-to-refrain from injury and mischief. 7. He had been on-the-point-of-obtaining control of his own state. 8. The force of the enemy will have-to-be-kept-asunder.

316.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. *Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrī sumus vel vi⁹ coāctūrī.* 2. *Omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum,¹⁰ signum tubā dandum,¹⁰ ab opere revocandī¹¹ militēs, aciēs instruenda.¹⁰* 3. *Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglēctūrūs erit.* 4. *Occāsiō negōtii bene gerendi¹² āmittenda nōn est.* 5. *Nōs¹³ neque lēgātōs missūrī neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrī¹⁴ sumus.* 6. *Uter utri anteferendus est?*

II. 1. The Germans' mode of life is not to be compared with [that] of the Gauls.⁶ 2. Arioivistus is not¹⁵ likely to reject either¹⁵ my good will or¹⁵ the Roman people's. 3. The authority of the Aeduans ought to have been increased among all the Belgians. 4. They were on the point of sacrificing an opportunity of bringing the matter to a successful issue.¹⁶ 5. The wrongs of the Aeduans ought not to be neglected. 6. The enemy will not be likely, if an opportunity is afforded [them],¹⁷ to refrain from mischief.

¹ Note that the vowel of the present participle is short before -nt- and long before -ns.

² The present stem may be obtained by dropping -re of the present infinitive active; see 136, 1. Note, however, that the present stem of verbs of the fourth conjugation (as, audīō) ends in -ie- (as, audie-) in the present participle and gerundive.

³ Note that the vowel preceding -nd- is short.

⁴ If the perfect participle ends in -sus, the future participle ends in -sūrus.

⁵ Note, in studying the forms of this conjugation, that the *tense* is determined by the form of sum used.

⁶ Gallicus, -a, -um, adj.

⁷ Use ager here, and omit it at the beginning.

⁸ Use the ablative; cf. foot-note 16, Lesson XXX.

⁹ For declension, see references under foot-note 10, Lesson XXXVI.

¹⁰ sc. erat.

¹¹ sc. erant.

¹² Opportunity of the matter to be well conducted = *opportunity of bringing the matter to a successful issue*.

¹³ We.

¹⁴ Fut. act. part. of accipīō.

¹⁵ not . . . either . . . or = *neither . . . nor* = neque . . . neque.

¹⁶ See sentence 4 of the preceding exercise with accompanying foot-note.

¹⁷ Ablative absolute.

LESSON XXXVIII.

DATIVE OF AGENT.— DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE. — DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE.

317.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda** (2, 20, 1), *Caesar had to do everything at once* (lit., all things were to Caesar to be done).
2. **Nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus** (3, 13, 9), *the risk was greatly to be dreaded by our ships*.

3. **Militibus cum hostibus erat pūgnandum** (4, 24, 2), *the soldiers had to fight with the enemy* (lit., the necessity of fighting was to the soldiers).
4. **Cum luxuriā nōbīs¹ certandum est** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 5, 11), *we have to contend with dissipation* (lit., the necessity of contending is to us).

318. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that with the gerundive, in the foregoing examples, the *person upon whom the necessity rests, or by whom the work is to be done*, is expressed by the dative (see **Caesarī, nāvibus, militibus, nōbīs**). Frame a rule for such Datives.

319. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 232; H. 388; G. 353.

320. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note further, that (1) the verbs in Exs. 1 and 2 are *transitive*, and the periphrastic forms have a *subject* expressed, with which they agree in *person, number, and gender*; whereas (2) in Exs. 3 and 4 the verbs are *intransitive*, the periphrastic forms have *no subject*, but are of the *third person singular*, and the *gerundive* is *neuter*. In the latter case the verb is said to be used *impersonally*. State the second of the foregoing observed facts in the form of a General Rule.

321. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 146, c; H. 301, 1, 2; G. 199, Rem. 1.

322.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Volusēnus, vir cōsiliī māgni** (3, 5, 2), *Volusenus, a man of great sagacity.*
2. **Paucōrum diērum iter** (4, 7, 2), *a few days' march.*
3. **Castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō mūnire** (2, 5, 6), *to fortify the camp with a wall (of) twelve feet high (in height).*
4. **Omnēs Britanni capillō sunt prōmissō** (5, 14, 2), *all the Britons have (are of) flowing hair.*
5. **[Thūys] barbā erat prōmissā** (*Nep. Dat.* 3, 1), *Thuys wore (was of) a flowing beard.*

6. [Catō] singulārī fuit industriā (Nep. Cat. 3, 1), *Cato was [a man] of unexampled industry.*

323. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1–3, that the substantives added for description (see *cōnsiliī*, *diērum*, *pedum*) are in the *genitive*, and that this genitive is limited by an *adjective* (see *māgnī*, *paucōrum*, *duodecim*). A genitive thus added to a substantive for further description is called a *Descriptive Genitive* or a *Genitive of Quality*. Frame a rule for the Descriptive Genitive.

324. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 215; H. 396, V., Note 1; G. 364.

325. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 4–6, that the substantives added for description (see *capillō*, *barbā*, *industriā*), are in the *ablative*, and that this ablative is limited by an *adjective* (see *prōmissō*, *prōmissā*, *singulārī*). An ablative thus added to a substantive for further description is called a *Descriptive Ablative* or an *Ablative of Quality*. Frame a rule for the Ablative of Quality.

326. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 251; H. 419, II.; G. 402.

327. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the descriptive expressions in Exs. 2 and 3 denote *measure*; does the ablative, or the genitive, appear to be preferred for this kind of description?

Note, further, that the descriptive expressions in Exs. 4 and 5 denote *physical characteristics*; which of the two cases appears to be preferred for this kind of description?

Compare Ex. 1 with Ex. 6; does there appear to be any difference between the genitive and ablative in these examples?

328. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 215, b, 251, a; H. 419, II., 2, 1), 2), 3); G. 402, Rem. 1.

¹ Dative plural of *nōs*, *we*.

LESSON XXXIX.

329. ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

I. 1. Aduātū Caesarī sunt cōservandī. 2. Tum māgnī ponderis saxa in mūrō conlocābant. 3. Ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānī, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitatiōne in armīs sunt. 4. Nōn omittendum est Nerviīs cōsilium. 5. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium. 6. Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adūlescentem, ad Ariovistum mittit. 7. Num hominēs tantulae statūrae tantī oneris turrim movēre possunt?¹ 8. Cum tantā multitūdine hostium lēgātō nōn est dīmicandum.

II. 1. Sabinus will have to keep² the forces of the enemy asunder. 2. Our horsemen and light armed³ foot-soldiers again sought flight in⁴ another direction. 3. A mountain of great height bounds the remaining space. 4. The commander must exercise² no slight diligence. 5. Protected [as they were] by a rampart (of) fifteen miles in circuit, they kept themselves⁵ within the town.⁶ 6. Iccius the Reman, [a man] of the highest rank and influence among his [countrymen], sent a messenger to Caesar. 7. Neither ought the Romans to have feared⁷ without cause. 8. The Romans move forward with remarkable speed⁸ engines of great height.

330. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Volusēnus, tribūnus militū, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrit. 2. Militibus autem, impeditis manibus, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum. 3. Cīvitās erat māgnā inter Belgās auctōritātē. 4. Ab utrōque⁹ latere collis trānsversam fossam

obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum. 5. Sēquānis vērō omnēs cruciātūs erant perferendi. 6. Īrī sunt speciē et colōre et figūrā tauri.¹⁰

II. 1. Agesilaus was of small stature and spare figure. 2. [It is] not in vain [that] men of such valor venture to cross a very broad river. 3. Caesar will have to inflict punishment on the Veneti. 4. The general should distribute his army more-widely.¹¹ 5. The Britons have all parts of the body shaved¹² except the head and the upper lip.

¹ are able, can.

² cf. 317, Ex. 1.

³ Translate: *foot-soldiers of light armor.*

⁴ in with accusative.

⁵ sēsē (acc. pl.).

⁶ Ablative without preposition: cf. 296, I., sent. 6, with foot-note.

⁷ cf. Ex. 3 in 317; see also 320 (2).

⁸ cf. foot-note 4, Lesson XXIII.

⁹ uterque, -traque, -trumque, each (of two).

¹⁰ The descriptive ablative here takes a genitive instead of an adjective.

¹¹ 18tius.

¹² Translate: *are of every part of the body shaved.*

LESSON XL.

NUMERALS: DISTRIBUTIVE.

331. Learn, with meanings, the distributive numerals from *one* to *twelve*: A. & G. 95; H. 174; G. 95.

332. Decline together: **bīnae nāvēs**, *ships* [taken] *two and two*; **duodēna mīlia**, *twelve thousand apiece*: A. & G. 95; H. 179.

333.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Principes singulos** (5, 6, 4), *the chiefs one at a time*.
2. **Singulī singulos delēgerant** (1, 48, 5), *they had each selected one*.
3. **Bīnae āc ternaē nāvēs** (3, 15, 1), *ships in groups of two and three*.
4. **Quaternae cohortes ex quīnque legiōnibus** (Caes. B. C. 1, 83, 2), *four cohorts from each of the five legions*.

5. **Una¹ castra** (Caes. B. C. 1, 74, 4), *one camp.*
 6. **Bina¹ castra** (Caes. B. C. 3, 19, 1), *two camps.*
 7. **Trīnis¹ castrīs** (7, 66, 2), *in three camps.*

334.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Singulās bīnae āc ternac nāvēs circumsteterant.
 2. Imperant Sēquanīs duodēna mīlia. 3. Ternās² cohortēs ex quattuor legiōnibus reliquit. 4. Inter bīna¹ castra Pompēi³ atque Caesaris ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus. 5. Ibi turrēs cum ternīs tabulatīs ērigēbat. 6. Circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs, trīnis⁴ castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit.

II. 1. Caesar and Ariovistus brought ten [soldiers] each to the conference. 2. Soldiers in groups of five⁵ and six surrounded single [soldiers]. 3. The floats he made fast by means of four² anchors at⁶ each of the four corners. 4. He resolved to spend the winter with three legions in three¹ camps. 5. He erected towers of two stories each.

335.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs praeſēcit.⁷
 2. Imperant Morinīs quīna mīlia. 3. Binīs⁸ cohortibus relictis, reliquum exercitū in cōpiōsissimōs agrōs Biturigum indūcit.
 4. Primam aciem quaternae cohortēs ex quinque legiōnibus tenēbant.

II. 1. And-so with equal courage they matched⁹ [their ships] one by one against the ships of the enemy [taken] two and two.
 2. One camp seemed now to-have-been-formed¹⁰ out of two.

¹ A. & G. 95, *b*; H. 174, 2, 3); G. 95, Rem. 2.

² cf. 333, Ex. 4.

³ Genitive of Pompējus.

⁴ Would ternīs be admissible here? See foot-note 1.

⁵ cf. 333, Ex. 3.

⁶ "at" = *from*; cf. foot-note 4, Lesson XXVI.

⁷ Perfect indicative of *praeſēciō*.

⁸ The distributive shows that *two* from *each legion* is meant.

⁹ *obiciēbant* (pronounced: *obji-
ciēbant*), imperf. indic. of *obiciō* (pronounced: *obji-
ciō*).

¹⁰ *facta*.

LESSON XLI.

PRONOUNS : PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE.

336. Learn, with meanings, the declension of the Personal Pronouns: A. & G. 98; H. 184; G. 98, 99.

337.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Audite Rōmānōs mīlitēs** (7, 20, 8), *listen to [these] Roman soldiers.*
2. **Est ut dīcis, Catō** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 3, 8), *it is as you say, Cato.*
3. **Nōs, nōs cōnsulēs dēsumus** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 1, 3), *we, we the consuls are remiss.*
4. **Vōsne¹ Domitium, an vōs Domitius dēseruit** (Caes. *B. C.* 2, 32, 8), *did you desert Domitius, or did Domitius desert you?*

338. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 1 and 2, the *personal pronouns* **vōs** and **tū**, subjects of **audīte** and **dīcis**, are *not expressed*; whereas, in Exs. 3 and 4, **nōs** and **vōs** are *expressed*. What appears to be the reason of this difference? Frame a rule for the Nominative of the Personal Pronoun.

339. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 194, *a*; H. 446; G. 198.

340.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Habētis ducem memorem vestrī** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 9, 19), *you have a leader [who is] thoughtful of you.*
2. **Grāta mihi vehementer est memoria nostrī tua** (Cic. *Fam.* 12, 17, 1), *your remembrance of us is exceedingly gratifying to me.*
3. **Dēsignat ad caudem ūnum quemque² nostrūm** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 1, 2), *he marks each one of us for slaughter.*
4. **Minus habeō vīrium quam vestrūm utervīs³** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 10, 32), *I have less strength than either of you.*

341. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Of the *two forms* of *genitive* in the plural of the personal pronouns, which appears from the foregoing examples to be preferred for the *objective genitive*? which for the *partitive genitive*?

342. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 194, *b*; H. 446, n. 3; G. 99, Rem. 1.

343. Learn, with meanings, the declension of the Reflexive Pronoun: A. & G. 98, *c*; H. 184 with 2; G. 100.

344.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Ariovistus tantōs sibi sp̄iritūs sūmpserat** (1, 33, 5), *Ariovistus had taken upon himself such airs.*
2. **Reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt⁴** (1, 12, 3), *the rest fled* (gave themselves up to flight).
3. **Duo dē p̄incipātū inter sē contendēbant** (5, 3, 2), *two were contending with each other (between themselves) for supremacy.*
4. **Inter sē differunt** (1, 1, 2), *they differ from one another (among themselves).*
5. **Dē mē pauca dīcam** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 10, 20), *I will speak briefly of myself.*
6. **Tū tē in custōdiam dedisti** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 8, 19), *you offered to give yourself into custody.*

345. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the foregoing examples are *simple sentences*, and that the *reflexive pronoun* refers to the *subject*; (2) that the preposition *inter* with the reflexive, in Exs. 3 and 4, gives the latter a *reciprocal force* (*each other, one another*); (3) that in Exs. 5 and 6, where the subject of the sentence is of the *first or second person* the *personal pronoun* (see *mē* and *tē*) performs the office of the *reflexive*. Frame rules embodying the foregoing observations.

346. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 196, *f*, 98, *a*; H. 448 with note, 449; G. 295, 212.

347.

EXAMPLES.

1. [Patria] **tēcum**, **Catilīna**, **sic agit** (*Cic. Cat. 1, 7, 18*), *your country, Catiline, thus remonstrates with you.*
2. **Haec⁵ vōbīscum ūnā cōnsul agam** (*Sall. Cat. 20, 17*), *these [measures] I shall as consul carry out in conjunction with you.*
3. . . . **sēcum habēbat** (3, 18, 1), *he kept about his person (had with himself).*

348. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, that **tēcum**, **vōbīscum**, **sēcum** are used in place of **cum tē**, **cum vōbīs**, **cum sē**. Frame a rule for the Position of **cum** used with the Ablative of the Personal Pronouns.

349. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 99, e; H. 184, 6; G. 414, Rem. 1.

¹ *ne* is here an interrogative particle introducing the first part of the double question; the second part is introduced by *an*: A. & G. 211; H. 358, 1; G. 460.

² Acc. masc. sing. of *quisque*, *each*.

³ This pronoun is made up of *uter*

(*whichever of the two*) and *vīs* (*you wish or you please*); the first part is declined, the second remains unchanged.

⁴ Contracted from *mandāvērunt*;

cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

⁵ Acc. neut. pl. of *hic*, *this*.



LESSON XLII.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

350.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Ego vigilō ad salūtem, tū ad perniciem rēi pūblicae.*
2. *Ab exercitū meō tē removeō.* 3. *Orgetorix sibi mortem cōscīvit.*
4. *Habētis ducem memorem vestrī,¹ oblītum suī.¹*
5. *Tū, C.² Aviēne, mihi rēique pūblicae inūtilis fuistī.*
6. *Catilīna sēcum suōs ēdūcet.*
7. *Obsidēs inter sēsē dant.*
8. *Nūllum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis postulō.*
9. *Utrīque³ nostrūm grātum est.*
10. *Nimium mihi sūmam.*
11. *Equitēs vōbīscum dē amōre rēi pūblicae certant.*

II. 1. Which-one⁴ of us does not know? 2. Your fellow citizens all fear you. 3. We seek the safety, you (pl.) the destruction of our common country. 4. The citizens will vie with us in⁵ patriotism (love of the commonwealth). 5. The Aedui and Arverni had been contending⁶ with each other many years. 6. To you our common country commits herself. 7. No one has [ever] contended with me without [effecting] his own destruction. 8. I do not myself⁷ commend myself. 9. It will be gratifying to you both.⁸ 10. It is with difficulty⁹ that I keep from¹⁰ you the hands of your countrymen. 11. Review with me [the events of] the night before.¹¹

351.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Vōbis supplex manūs tendit patria communis, vōbis sē, vōbis vītam omnium cīvium commendat. 2. Equitum Rōmānōrum ego vix abs¹⁰ tē jam diū manūs ac tēla contineō.¹² 3. Ego meis cōpiis meōque exercitū vōbis rēgna conciliābō. 4. Belgae, Aquitāni, Galli lēgibus inter sē differunt. 5. Gallōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. 6. Cicerō amantissimus utriusque nostrū est.

II. 1. I, I the consul, am remiss. 2. Lead out¹³ with you, too, all your [associates]. 3. Dismiss your kind solicitude for¹⁴ me, and think of yourselves and your children. 4. The Belgians unite in a sworn league against the Roman people and exchange¹⁵ hostages. 5. Your house and mine¹⁶ are building¹⁷ rapidly. 6. And-so they surrendered themselves and all their [effects] to Caesar.

¹ **vestrī** is in the objective genitive after **memorem**; **sui** is in the same construction after **oblitum**.

² C. is here an abbreviation for **GAI**, vocative of **GĀIus**; see Lesson XXI., foot-note 1.

³ *each* (of two), *both*; decline like *uter*, appending -que throughout.

⁴ **Quis?**

⁵ **dē.**

⁶ A. & G. 277, b; H. 469, 2; G. 225.

⁷ **ipse**, nom. singular masculine.

⁸ cf. sent. 9 of the preceding exercise.

⁹ Translate: *I with difficulty keep*.

¹⁰ **abs** may be used for **ā** before **tē**.

¹¹ Translate: *the preceding night*.

¹² cf. Lesson XXI., foot-note 5.

¹³ **Edūc'** (accent the final syllable):

A. & G. 128, c; H. 238, n. 2; G. 151, 4.

¹⁴ Arrange: *your for me (erg& mē) kind solicitude*.

¹⁵ Translate: *give among themselves*.

¹⁶ Translate: *the house of each of us*.

¹⁷ Present passive.

LESSON XLIII.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. — THE GERUND.

352.

EXAMPLES.

1. [Plēbēs] cupida rērum novārum bellō favēbat (Sall. *Cat.* 48, 1), *the commons, desirous of a change (of new things), favored war.*
2. [Cōnsidius] rēi militāris peritissimus habēbatur (1, 21, 4), *Considius was accounted very well versed in the military art.*
3. Belli haud Ignārus (Sall. *Jug.* 28, 5), *not unacquainted with war.*
4. Habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 9, 19), *you have a leader [who is] thoughtful of you, forgetful of himself.*
5. Plēna erant omnia timōris (Caes. *B. C.* 2, 41, 8), *all (lit., all things) were filled with fear.*
6. Erant complūrēs cōnsili¹ participēs nōbilēs (Sall. *Cat.* 17, 5), *there were a great many nobles concerned in the plot.*
7. Flaccum et Pomptinum, amantissimōs rēi pūblicae virōs, ad mē vocāvī (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 2, 5), *I summoned Flaccus and Pomptinus, men warmly attached to the commonwealth.*
8. Corpus [Catilīnae] patiēns inediae [fuit] (Sall. *Cat.* 5, 8), *Catiline's constitution was capable of enduring abstinence from food.*

353. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing examples, (1) that the *adjectives* *cupida*, *peritissimus*, *Ignārus*, *memorem*, *oblītum*, *plēna*, *participēs*, *amantissimōs*, *patiēns*, from the nature of their signification, require an *object of reference* to complete their meaning; and (2) that the *substantive* added in each instance to complete the meaning of the adjective is in the *genitive case* (see *rērum*, *rēi*, *bellī*, *vestrī*, *sui*, *timōris*, *cōsillī*, *rēi pūblicae*, *inediae*). Also, after noting carefully the *meaning* of the adjectives that govern the genitive in the foregoing examples, frame a rule stating what Classes of Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning.

354. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 218, *a*, *b*; H. 399, I., 1, 2, 3, II.; G. 373, 374.

355. Learn, with meanings, the gerunds of *amō*, *moneō* (or *dēleō*), *tegō* (*regō* or *emō*), *audiō*: A. & G. pp. 77, 81, 83, 87; H. pp. 87, 91, 95, 99; G. pp. 55, 59, 65, 69.

356.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Jūs vocandi senātūm** (Liv. 3, 38, 10), *authority to convene (of convening) the senate.*
2. **Hominēs bellandi cupidī** (1, 2, 4), *men fond of fighting.*
3. **Dē rēbus pertinentib⁹ ad bēātē vīvendum** (Cic. *Off.* 1, 6, 19), *concerning matters which contribute to a happy life (to living happily).*
4. **Ōrātōrem aptum ad dīcendūm** (Cic. *Tusc.* 1, 3, 5), *an orator with aptitude for speaking.*
5. **Mōrēs [p̄uerōrum] sē inter lūdendūm dētegunt** (Quint. 1, 3, 11), *the moral traits of children reveal themselves in play (amid playing).*
6. **Hominis mēns discēndō alitur** (Cic. *Off.* 1, 30, 105), *the mind of man is strengthened by study (by studying).*
7. **Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar** (1, 18, 10), *Caesar learned on making inquiry.*

357. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, that the gerund *vocandi* governs the accusative of direct object (see *senātūm*); and, in Ex. 3, that the gerund *vīvendum* is modified by the adverb *bēātē*. In view of these facts, what part of speech does the Gerund appear to be?

What is the case, and what the construction, in the foregoing examples, of the gerunds *vocandi*, *bellandi*, *vīvendum*, *dīcendūm*, *lūdendūm*, *discēndō*, *quaerendō*. In view of the several constructions here illustrated, what part of speech does the Gerund appear to be?

The Gerund, then, shares the nature of what two parts of speech? In what constructions may it be used?²

358. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 295, 297³, 298 (to the semicolon), 300, 301; H. 541, 542, I., III., IV.; G. 427, 429⁴, 433⁵, 432⁶, 434⁷.

¹ A. & G. 40, b; H. 51, 5; G. 29, *genitive after an adjective*, as in Ex. 2, etc.
Rem. 1.

² The Gerund may be in the *genitive after a substantive*, as in Ex. 1; in the ³ Omit, for the present, in reading, the reference to the Gerundive.

LESSON XLIV.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

359.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulī¹ jūs est vocandī senātū. 2. Diēs prōlātandō māgnās opportūnitātēs corrumpunt. 3. Nōn sōlum ad discendum prōpēnsī sumus, vērum etiam ad docendum. 4. Dumnorix est cupidus rērum novārum. 5. Diem ad dēliberandum sūmam. 6. Militēs praedae sunt participēs. 7. Nōn ego tam barbarus neque tam imperitūs rērum. 8. Summa erat difficultās nāvigandī. 9. Prohibenda est īra in pūniendō. 10. Titus equitandī peritissimus fuit.

II. 1. They strengthen the conspiracy by not believing [in its existence]. 2. In the free towns there are less [adequate] resources for defence.² 3. Private citizens have³ no authority to convene⁴ the senate. 4. Catiline was covetous of others' [property],⁵ lavish of his own. 5. Epaminondas was skilled in war, brave in action,⁶ of very great courage, devoted to the truth. 6. Epaminondas was a good listener.⁷ 7. In deliberating, the mind⁸ is often drawn into contradictory opinions. 8. The soldiers of Sulla, recalling⁹ former victory, ardently-desired civil war.

360.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ea¹⁰ facta commemorandō, militum animōs accendēbat.
 2. Hostium parātus erat ad dimicandum animus. 3. Carthāgō fuit aemula imperi¹¹ Rōmāni. 4. Spatiū pila in hostēs conicendi¹² nōn dabātur. 5. Sagittariōrum adventū Rēmis studium prō-pūgnandi accēssit. 6. Dumnorix fuit cupidus rērum novārum, cupidus imperii, māgnī animi, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritatis.

II. 1. No one was able to maintain his position¹³ on the wall.
 2. Our consul was inured to toil,⁸ of penetrating intellect, not unacquainted with war, and utterly¹⁴ unmoved in the face of dangers. 3. Caesar acquired¹⁶ glory by giving, by relieving, [and] by pardoning. 4. The barbarians are very fond of cattle.

¹ cf. Lesson XXXV., foot-note 9.

² "for defence" = *for defending*.

³ Translate: *no authority is to private citizens*; see foot-note 1.

⁴ "to convene" = *of convening*.

⁵ aliēnus, -a, -um, in neuter singular, used substantively.

⁶ manus; cf. 229 and 230.

⁷ Translate: *fond of listening*.

⁸ Use the plural.

⁹ memor with genitive.

¹⁰ ea, accusative neuter plural, *these*.

¹¹ See foot-note 1, preceding lesson.

¹² Pronounce: *conjiciendū*.

¹³ Translate: *power was to no one of maintaining, etc.*; see foot-note 1.

¹⁴ Sign of superlative

¹⁵ adeptus est.

LESSON XLV.

DEMONSTRATIVES: Hīc, Iste, Ille.

361. Learn the declension of the demonstratives: **hīc**, *this*; **iste**, *that* (of yours); **ille**, *that*. A. & G. p. 52 (including the first sentence of *a*) ; H. 186, I., II., III.; G. 102, I., II., III.

362. Decline together: **haec legiō**, *this legion*; **hōc respōnsum**, *this answer*; **ista mēns**, *that purpose of yours*; **gladiātor iste**, *that [worthless] gladiator*; **illud tempus**, *that time*; **Sōcraticus¹ ille**, *the famous disciple of Socrates*.

363.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Senātus haec intellegit: hīc tamen vīvit** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 1, 2), *the senate knows these things* (just referred to by the speaker); *yet this man* (in sight of the speaker, and perhaps designated by a gesture) *lives*.
2. **Huic legiōnī Caesar indulserat praecipue** (1, 40, 15), *Caesar had especially favored this* (just referred to) *legion*.
3. **Mūtā istam mentem** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 8, 6), *change that purpose of yours*.
4. **Nēmō est istōrum tam misericors** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 7, 16), *there is no one of those men* (with a touch of contempt) *so compassionate . . .*
5. **At ille diem noctemque nāvem tenuit in ancoris** (Nep. *Th.* 8. 7), *yet he kept his vessel at anchor a day and a night*.
6. **Illō tempore** (Caes. *B. C.* 1, 7, 5), *at that time*.
7. **Ille mānsuētūdine clārus factus²; huic sevēritās dīgnitātem addiderat** (Sall. *Cat.* 54, 2), *the former became illustrious through his clemency; to the latter austerity gave³ dignity*.
8. **Mēdēa illa** (Cic. *Manil.* 9, 22), *the famous Medea*.

364. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Are the *demonstratives* in Exs. 1, 4, 5, 7 used *substantively* or *adjectively*? Answer the same question for Exs. 2, 3, 6, 8. Does the demonstrative, when used *adjectively*, appear regularly *to follow* or *to precede* its substantive? Which of these demonstratives may appropriately be called the *demonstrative of the first person*? Which the *demonstrative of the second person*? Which of the *third*? What other distinctions or peculiarities in the use of these pronouns do the translations of the foregoing examples reveal?

365. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 101, 102, *a, b, c, 343, d*; H. 450, 2, 4, 569, I., 1; G. 290, 291, 292, 2, Rem. 1, 678, Rem. 2.

366.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Sī deerit hōc remedium, ad illud⁴ dēclinandum est.**
2. **Xenophōn, Sōcraticus¹ ille, scrīpsit historiam.** 3. **Nōs**

autem,⁵ virī fortēs, istūs⁶ furōrem āc tēla vītāmus. 4. Vītam istam fugae sōlitūdīnīque mandā. 5. Ille per mē crēvit. 6. Illūs facilitās, hūjus cōstantia laudābātur. 7. Illō tempore rēgnū obtinēbat. 8. Ad hās suspīcōnēs certissimae rēs accēdunt. 9. Māgna huic Jovī⁷ habenda est grātia. 10. Gladiātōrī istū nihil dabō.

II. 1. Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest. 2. The beauty of the former,⁸ the virtue of the latter,⁸ was commended. 3. Two Roman knights relieved you of that⁹ anxiety. 4. Indeed,¹⁰ I suppose, that¹¹ centurion Manlius declared war in his own name.¹² 5. Having given this answer,¹³ he withdrew. 6. How long will that insane folly of yours mock us? 7. Swords are drawn both by those and by our party. 8. He, yonder¹⁴ Jupiter, resisted [them]. He [preserved] the Capitol, he [preserved] these temples, he preserved the whole¹⁵ city.

¹ Sōcraticus, -a, -um, *belonging to Socrates*; hence, used substantively, *disciple of Socrates*.

² sc. est; perfect passive of faciō.

³ Lit., *had added*.

⁴ ille (especially the neuter illud) often, as here, means *the following*.

⁵ Conjunction, *however, but*; for position, see: A. & G. 345, b; H. 569, III.; G. 486, Rem.

⁶ Contemptuous; translate: *that madman or that wretch*.

⁷ See Jūppiter in general vocabulary.

⁸ See 363, Ex. 7.

⁹ See 363, Ex. 3.

¹⁰ Etenim (at the beginning).

¹¹ Contemptuous.

¹² Ablative of *manner*.

¹³ What construction? cf. 305, Ex. 2.

¹⁴ "yonder" = *that*.

¹⁵ cūnctus, -a, -um; see cūnctus in general vocabulary.

LESSON XLVI.

DEMONSTRATIVES (DETERMINATIVES): **Is, Ipse, Idem.**

367. Learn the declension of the demonstratives (determinatives): *is, he, this, that; ipse, self; idem, the same*: A. & G. 101; H. 186, IV., V., VI.; G. 101.

368. Decline together: *ea mūnītiō, that fortification; id iter, that journey; hōc ipsum tempus, this very time; eadem fortūna, the same fortune; idem prīnceps, the same chief.*

369.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit** (1, 2, 3), *he persuaded them to it* (persuaded it to them) *more easily because-of-the-following-fact (hōc).*
2. **In eō itinere persuādet Casticō** (1, 3, 4), *on this journey he prevails upon Casticus.*
3. **Dixi ego Idem in senātū** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 3, 7), *I also (I the same) said in the senate.*
4. **Haec eadem centuriōnibus mandābant** (7, 17, 8), *they delivered these same [assurances] to the centurions.*
5. **Eōdem tempore equitēs fugam petēbant** (2, 24, 1), *at the same time the cavalry took to flight.*
6. **Ipse eōdem itinere ad eōs contendit** (1, 21, 3), *he hastened in person to them (he himself hastened, etc.) by the same route.*
7. **Ipse sibi inimīcus est** (Cic. *Fin.* 5, 10, 28), *he is an enemy to himself (i.e., he is his own enemy).*
8. **Ipsō terrōre equōrum ḍordinēs perturbant** (4, 33, 1), *by the mere fright (fright itself) of the horses, they throw the ranks into confusion.*
9. **Hōc ipsō tempore** (6, 37, 1), *at this very time.*

370. OBSERVATION: Compare **id** (Ex. 1) with **eō** (Ex. 2); which is used *substantively*? which *adjectively*? Note that **eis** (Ex. 1) and **eōs** (Ex. 6) are used as *personal* pronouns. Compare **idem** (Ex. 3) and **eadem** (Ex. 4) with **eōdem** (Ex. 5) and **eōdem** (Ex. 6); which are used *substantively*? which *adjectively*? Note that **Idem** (Ex. 3) is translated *also*. Note that **ipse** is translated, in Ex. 6, *in person*; in Ex. 8, *mere*; and in Ex. 9, *very*. Note that **ipse** (Ex. 7) does not, as the English translation might lead us to expect, agree with **sibi**, but with the *subject* of the sentence.

371. REFERENCES: A. & G. 195, *e, f, l*; H. 451, 3, 452, 1, 2; G. 100, 296, 297, 298.

372.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Māgna¹ huic ipsī Jovī habenda est grātia.¹ 2. Eōdem tempore lēgātī ab Aeduīs veniēbant. 3. Initium ējus² fugae factum est³ ā Dumuorige atque ējus⁴ equitibus. 4. Id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs comperi. 5. Ipse sibi mortem cōscīvit. 6. Atrebatēs eandem bellī fortūnam experiuntur.⁵ 7. Hōc idem in reliquīs fit⁶ cīvitātibus. 8. Pompējus eadem illa agit. 9. Ipsōrum lingua Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. 10. Ob eās causās ēi mūnītiōnī T. Labiēnum lēgātūm praeſēcit;⁷ ipse in Ītaliā contendit. 11. Ipse ad eōs contendit equitātūmque omnem ante sē⁸ mittit.

II. 1. From Pontus also⁹ the famous Medea once fled.¹⁰ 2. For¹¹ this reason Caesar hastened into Gaul. 3. With equal¹² speed they hastened to our camp. 4. Learn these [facts] from the very [persons] who¹³ have escaped¹⁴ from the massacre itself. 5. All [men] love themselves. 6. The Germans came in-great-numbers to him in¹⁵ camp. 7. Having called¹⁶ together their chiefs, he takes them severely to task. 8. Divitiacus the Aeduan again¹⁷ responded. 9. He, in the consulship¹⁸ of Marcus Messalla and Marcus Piso, persuaded his countrymen. 10. This district was called the Tigurine. 11. On the following day

they move their camp from that place. Caesar does¹⁸ the same.

¹ Note the emphasis produced by the separation of the adjective from its substantive.

² Used adjectively, *this*.

³ Perfect passive of **faciō**, *make*.

⁴ Used as a personal pronoun, *his*.

⁵ From **exerior**, which has a passive form with active meaning.

⁶ 3d sing. pres. of **fīō**, *be done*.

⁷ 3d sing. perf. indic. of **praeſiciō**.

⁸ Could *eum* be substituted for *sē*?

See A. & G. 196; H. 449, 1); G. 295.

⁹ cf. 369, Ex. 3.

¹⁰ **profūgit**, perf. of **profugiō**.

¹¹ cf. 372, sent. 10.

¹² Translate: *the same*.

¹³ **qui**, nominative plural masculine.

¹⁴ **fūgērunt**, perf. of **fugīō**.

¹⁵ Note the difference of idiom: "to him in camp" = *to him into camp*.

¹⁶ What construction must be used?

¹⁷ Translate: *the same Divitiacus*.

¹⁸ **facit**, 3d sing. pres. indic. of **faciō**.

373. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons XLV. and XLVI.

I. 1. Hic testāmentō, ille proximitāte nītitur.¹ 2. Ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant. 3. Māgna² dīs³ immortālibus habenda est atque huic ipsi⁴ Jovī Statōri, antiquissimō custōdi hūjus urbīs, grātia.² 4. Exclūsi eōs quōs (*whom*) tū ad mē miserās. 5. Īdem⁴ principēs cīvitātū ad Caesarem revertērunt. 6. Ego ūnius ūsūram hōrae gladiātōri isti ad vivendum nōn dabō. 7. Id hōc facilius eīs persūasit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur. 8. Helvētīi ferē cottidiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum (*when*) aut suīs⁵ finibus eōs⁶ prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum⁷ finibus bellum gerunt.

II. 1. That which⁸ *they*⁹ had accomplished¹⁰ in twenty days, *he* had done in one day. 2. He was the only one to be feared¹¹ out of all that-crew.¹² 3. You gave yourself into custody. 4. On your arrival those benches [near you] were cleared.¹³ 5. The Suessiones enjoy¹⁴ the same constitution and the same laws. 6. This [part of] Gaul is my province just as¹⁵ that is yours.

¹ *relies, depends*; this verb is passive in form, but active in meaning, and is construed with the ablative.

² cf. 372, foot-note 1.

³ From **deus**; for declension, see A. & G. 40, *f*; H. 51, 6; G. 29, 5.

⁴ Nom. pl. masc. of **īdem**.

⁵ See references under foot-note 8, Lesson XLVI.; also G. 294. What change of meaning would result if **eōrum** were substituted for **suīs**?

⁶ What would be the meaning if **sē** were substituted for **eōs**?

⁷ What would **suīs** mean here?

⁸ **quod**, neuter singular accusative.

⁹ Use the proper form of **ipse**.

¹⁰ **cōnfēcerant**, from **cōnficiō**.

¹¹ Translate: *he alone (fīnus) was to be feared* (pass. periphrastic).

¹² Use the plural of **iste**.

¹³ **vacuēfacta sunt**, perfect passive of **vacuēfaciō**.

¹⁴ **ūtuntur**; this verb has a passive form with active meaning, and is construed with the ablative.

¹⁵ **sicut**.

LESSON XLVII.

THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.—THE TWO SUPINES.

374.

EXAMPLES.

1.

<p>a. Jūs vocandī senātūm (<i>Liv.</i> 3, 38, 10), <i>right of convening the senate.</i></p> <p>b. Jūs vocandī senātūs, <i>right of the senate to be convened.</i></p>	<i>authority to convene the senate.</i>
--	---

2.

<p>a. Cupiditās bellū gerendī, <i>desire of carrying on war.</i></p> <p>b. Cupiditās bellī gerendī (1, 41, 1), <i>desire of war to be carried on.</i></p>	<i>eagerness to fight.</i>
---	----------------------------

3.

<p>a. Diēs prōlātandō (<i>Sall. Cat.</i> 43, 3), <i>by putting off the days.</i></p> <p>b. Diēbus prōlātandīs, <i>by the days to be put off.</i></p>	<i>by postponing the day [of execution].</i>
--	--

4.

<p>a. Male gerendō negōtiūm, <i>by managing business badly.</i></p> <p>b. Male gerendō negōtiō (<i>Cic. Cat.</i> 2, 10, 21), <i>by business to be managed badly.</i></p>	<i>through bad management of business.</i>
--	--

375. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in the examples marked *a*, the *gerund* is used with a *direct object*; whereas, in the examples marked *b*, the *gerundive* is used in *agreement with the substantive which was formerly the direct object*, and the latter has the same construction which the *gerund* formerly had. Note, further, that the two forms of expression have the *same meaning*. The examples marked *a* illustrate the *Gerund Construction*; those marked *b* illustrate the *Gerundive Construction*. Frame a rule for changing the Gerund Construction to the Gerundive.¹

376. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 296; H. 544, 1; G. 428.

377. Restore the gerund construction to the gerundive in the following examples:

1. **Exercitum Ariovistum opprimendi causā habet,** *he has an army for the purpose of crushing Ariovistus.*
2. **Ea facta commemorandō, militum animōs accendēbat,** *by recalling these exploits, he fired the hearts of the soldiers.*

378 Learn the following supines:²

1ST CONJUGATION.

1. **rogātūm, to ask.**
2. **memorātū, in relating.**

3D CONJUGATION.

1. **perditūm, to ruin.**
2. **dictū, in saying.**

2D CONJUGATION.

1. **vīsum, to see.**
2. **monitū, in reminding.**

4TH CONJUGATION.

1. **auditūm, to hear.**
2. **auditū, in hearing.**

379. OBSERVATION: It has been seen (Lesson XLIII.) that the *gerund* is a verbal *substantive* of the *second declension*, used in four cases. The *supine* is also a verbal *substantive*; of what *declension* is it, and in what *cases* is it used?

380.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Lēgātōs mittunt rogātūm auxiliūm** (1, 11, 2), *they send ambassadors to ask assistance.*
2. **Ad senātūm vēnisse³ auxiliūm postulātūm** (1, 31, 9), *to have come to the senate to petition for assistance.*
3. **Incrēdibile memorātū est** (Sall. *Cat.* 6, 2), *it is incredible to relate (in the relating).*
4. **Difficile dictū est** (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 12), *it is difficult to speak (in the speaking).*

381. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the first two of the foregoing examples (1) that the *supines* **rogātūm** and **postulātūm** are construed with *verbs of motion* (**mittunt** and **vēnisse**); and (2) that they express *purpose*. Frame a rule for the use of the *Supine* in **-um**.

382. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 302; H. 546; G. 436.

383. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 3 and 4, (1) that the *supines memoratū* and *dictū*, are used with *adjectives*; and (2) that they answer the question *in what respect?* or *from what point of view?* Frame a rule for the use of Supines in -ū.

384. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 303; H. 547; G. 437.

¹ The gerundive construction is generally preferred to the gerund construction; and, in connection with a preposition, the gerundive construction is always to be taken.

² *amō, dēleō, tegō, regō, and emō*, which have heretofore served as paradigms, have no supine.

³ Perf. act. infin. of *veniō*.

LESSON XLVIII.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE GERUND, GERUNDIVE, AND SUPINES.

385.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Gallī legiōnis opprimendae cōnsilium cēpérunt.¹
 2. Diēs prōlātandō māgnās opportūnitātēs corrumpunt.
 3. Vix iīs rēbus administrandīs tempus dabātur. 4. Ex cīvitātē profūgī et ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum.
 5. Persicile factū² est cōnāta perficere.³ 6. Ariovistus cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendit.
 7. Propīnquās suās nūptum iī aliās cīvitātēs Dumnorix conlocārat.⁴ 8. Nec hōc est dictū mīrābile. 9. Dē expūgnandō oppidō spēs hostēs fefellit. 10. Sum cupidus tē audiendī. 11. Nōn modo ad īsīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuit. 12. Frontō vir movendārum lacrimārum perītissimus fuit.

- II. 1. You had sent two knights to me to pay their respects. 2. The best [thing] to do² is to declare war. 3. *He* was more earnest to restore⁵ me than [he had been]

to retain me. 4. Caesar gave the signal for the battle to begin.⁶ 5. He gives his daughter in marriage⁷ to Manilius. 6. You have been able not merely to set at defiance the laws, but even to destroy⁸ them. 7. Of this kind of death it is difficult to speak. 8. In recounting the disaster of the community, they said . . . 9. They are seeking⁹ to destroy themselves and the commonwealth. 10. Orgetorix is selected to accomplish¹⁰ these things.

386.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar exercitum in Galliā Ariovistī opprimendi causā habēbat. 2. Militēs in quaerendis suis¹¹ pūgnandī tempus dimitēbant. 3. Eā dē rē difficile dictū est. 4. Exclūsi eōs quōs¹² tū ad mē salūtātum miserās. 5. Ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.¹³ 6. Tōtiū ferē Galliae lēgāti, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum¹⁴ convēnērunt.

II. 1. They squander their wealth in levelling mountains. 2. One legion had been sent to forage.¹⁵ 3. The best thing to do² is to cut off¹⁶ the Romans from grain and supplies. 4. All the morally bad, then, [are] slaves: nor is this so wonderful in-point-of-fact¹⁷ as in the form of statement.¹⁸ 5. Suddenly the Gauls formed¹ the design of renewing the war and crushing the legion. 6. You live, and you live not to forsake,¹⁹ but to persevere in¹⁰ your shameless course.

¹ cēpērunt, *formed*, perf. indic. of capiō.

¹¹ sc. sīgnīs.

¹² whom.

² factū, supine in -ū of faciō, do.

¹³ Perf. indic. of proficisciō, *set out*.

³ Pres. infin. of perficiō, *accomplish*.

¹⁴ Sup. of grātulōr, *congratulate*;

⁴ See Lesson XXXV., foot-note 22.

this verb has a pass. form with act. mean-

⁵ Translate: *desirous of restoring*.

ing.

⁶ Translate: *of the battle to be begun*.

¹⁵ frūmentātum, sup. of frūmen-

⁷ cf. 385, I., sent. 7.

tor, which has a pass. form with act.

⁸ "have been able to destroy" = meaning.

¹⁶ prohibeō with abl.

have availed for destroying. cf. 385,

¹⁷ rē.

I., sent. 11.

¹⁸ Translate: *in saying*.

⁹ eunt, 3d person plural of eō, go.

¹⁹ cf. 386, I., sent. 5.

¹⁰ The gerundive of cōficiō, *accom-*

plish, is cōficiendus, -a, -um.

LESSON XLIX.

VERBS IN -IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

387. Learn, with meanings, the inflection and synopsis of **capiō**, *take*, in the Indicative and Imperative moods, Active and Passive; also the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines: A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 106–108; G. pp. 72, 73.

388. Using **capiō** as a model, form the same parts of: **rapiō**, *snatch*; **jaciō**, *throw*; **ēiciō**,¹ *expel*.

389. Learn the declension of the relative pronoun **qui**, *who, which, that, what*: A. & G. 103; H. 187; G. 103.

390.

EXAMPLES.

1. **In finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē sine morā dēdidērunt** (2, 15, 2), *he came into the territories of the Ambiani, who surrendered without delay.*
2. **Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae** (1, 1, 1), *all Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgians inhabit.*
3. **Illi, cum iīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, ēruptionem fēcērunt** (2, 33, 2), *they, with those arms which they had withheld and concealed, made a sortie.*
4. **Longē sunt hūmānissimī, qui Cantium incolunt** (5, 14, 1), *[those] who inhabit Kent are by far the most highly civilized.*

391. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1–3, that the relatives **qui**, **quārum**, and **quae** refer to **Ambiānōrum**, **partēs**, and **armīs** respectively; and that they agree with these substantives in *number* and *gender*. The substantive to which a relative thus refers is called the *Antecedent*.

In what *construction* is **qui** (Ex. 1)? **quārum** (Ex. 2)? **quae** (Ex. 3)? Is the *case* of the Relative, then, determined by that of the Antecedent?

Frame a rule for the Gender, Number, and Case of the Relative.

392. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 198; H. 445; G. 615, 616.

393. OBSERVATION: Note that, in Ex. 4, the antecedent of **qui** (*ei, those*) is omitted.

394. REFERENCES: A. & G. 200, c; H. 445, 6; G. 620, 621.

¹ **ēiciō** (= *ex + jaciō*) is to be pronounced as if it were written **ējiciō**; so also all compounds of **jaciō** with mono-syllabic prepositions: **as, abiciō** (pro-

nounced: **abjiciō**), **coniciō** (pronounced: **conjiciō**), etc. For the principal parts of **ēiciō**, see the general vocabulary.



LESSON L.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

395.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcit. 2. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum¹ continenter bellum gerunt. 3. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, quibus in tabulīs ratiō cōfēcta erat. 4. Quī² omnibus hominibus crēdit, saepe dēcipitur. 5. Legiōnem cui Galba praeerat, mīsit. 6. Sūlla cum māgnō equitātū in castra vēnit, quōs³ ex Latiō et ā sociīs coēgerat. 7. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūjus lēgātiōnis Divicō p̄rīnceps fuit. 8. Ego⁴ quī tē cōfirmō,⁴ ipse mē nōn possum.⁵

II. 1. Those will be visited with punishment⁶ by whom arms shall be taken.⁷ 2. Catiline, whom the consul has

expelled, is fleeing. 3. These are [the things] which I demand. 4. He sends⁸ reinforcements to the support of⁸ our men who are in retreat.⁹ 5. He hastened to convey his army across. . . . This¹⁰ movement made one side of his camp secure. 6. The nature of the site which our men had selected for a camp was as follows.¹¹ 7. We often despise those with whom and among whom we live. 8. Here am [I] who did⁴ [the deed].

396. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Convocātis Aeduōrum p̄incipib⁹, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Liscō, qui summō magistrātū praeerat, graviter eōs accūsat. 2. Ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōsēderant, castra posuit. 3. Unus ex eō numerō qui⁸ ad caudem parāti erant, Massivam obtruncat. 4. Tum dēmum Liscus, öratiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat p̄opōnit. 5. Nāvium quod¹² fuerat ūnum in locum coēgerant; quibus¹³ āmissis, sē Caesari dēdidērunt.

II. 1. He persuades Casticus, whose father had held sovereign power among the Sequani for many years. 2. The Helvetians send ambassadors to Caesar . . . Of this¹⁴ embassy, Divico, who had been the leader of the Helvetians, was the head. 3. Meanwhile, by means of that legion which he had with him and the soldiers who had assembled from the province, he extends a wall from Lake Geneva, which flows into the river Rhone, to mount Jura, which separates the territory of the Sequani from [that of] the Helvetii.

¹ A. & G. 104, *e*; H. 187, 2; G. 414.
Rem. 1.; cf. 348 and 349.

² Account for the omission of the antecedent.

³ Read: A. & G. 199, *b*; H. 445, 5; G. 616, 3, I.

⁴ Note that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent (expressed or understood).

⁵ *am able, can*; sc. cōfirmāre.

⁶ Use the plural.

⁷ Translate: *shall have been taken*.

⁸ submittō with dative.

⁹ "who are in retreat" = *fleeing*.

¹⁰ "This movement" = *which thing*.

In Latin the relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative.

¹¹ "as follows" = *this*.

¹² nāvium quod fuerat, *all their ships* (lit., what of ships there had been).

¹³ Translate: *these*; cf. foot-note 10.

¹⁴ See 395, I., sent. 7; cf. foot-note 10.

LESSON LI.

TWO ACCUSATIVES: SAME PERSON OR THING.
— WITH COMPOUNDS.

397.

EXAMPLES.

1. [Casticus] patrem senatus amicum appellaverat, *the senate had called the father of Casticus friend.*
2. [Casticus] pater a senatu amicus appellatus erat (1, 3, 4), *the father of Casticus had been called friend by the senate.*
3. Hunc [montem] murus circumdatus arcem efficit (1, 38, 6), *a wall built round it makes this mountain a citadel.*
4. Ancum Marcium regem populus creavit (Liv. 1, 32, 1), *the people chose Ancus Marcius king.*
5. Tē sapientem et appellant et existimant (Cic. Lael. 2, 6), *you they both call and think wise.*

398. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1 and 3-5, that the verbs are followed by *two accusatives denoting the same person or thing.* What *classes* of verbs (*i.e.*, verbs of what meaning) admit this double construction? Frame a rule for the Two Accusatives here illustrated.

399. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 239, *a*; H. 373; G. 334.

400. OBSERVATION: Note, in Ex. 1, that the senate did not *call* the father of Casticus, but *called him friend*; and that, therefore, the complete predicate is not **appellaverat**, but **amicum appellaverat**. As **amicum** forms an essential part of the *predicate*, it may be called the *Predicate Accusative* in distinction from **patrem**, which is the *Direct Object*. What are the Predicate Accusatives in Exs. 3-5? What are the Direct Objects?

401. OBSERVATION: Note that, in Ex. 2, the *passive construction* is illustrated. What has the *Predicate Accusative* of the

Active Construction become in the Passive? What has the Direct Object become? Change Exs. 3-5 into the Passive Construction.

402. REFERENCES: H. 373, 1, 2; G. 197 (second paragraph).

403.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hibērum cōpiās trājēcit** (Liv. 21, 23, 1), *he threw his forces across the Ebro.*
2. **Duodecim mīlia equitū Hibērum trādūxit** (Liv. 21, 23, 1), *he led twelve thousand horse across the Ebro.*
3. **Id anīnum advertit** (1, 24, 1), *he directed his attention to this.*

404. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs in the foregoing examples are *compounds*, being made up of a *simple verb* and a *preposition*. Is the *simple verb* in each instance *transitive* or *intransitive*? What *case*, then, would it take if it stood alone? What *case* would the *preposition* take if it stood alone? How, then, are the *two accusatives* to be accounted for? Frame a rule for the Two Accusatives here illustrated.

405. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 239, b; H. 376; G. 330, Rem. 1.

406.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Arioistus in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus est. 2. Suā cunctātōne hostēs nostrōs mīlītēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcerant. 3. Omnēs cōpiās Rhēnum trādūixerant. 4. Hostis apud mājōrēs nostrōs is dīcēbātur quem nunc peregrīnum dīcimus. 5. Hāc igitur mente Hellēspontum cōpiās trājēcit. 6. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt.

II. 1. Spurius Cassius was made master of the horse. 2. In this council he proclaimed Cingetorix a public enemy. 3. On !¹ veterans, conduct a new army and a new leader across the Ebro! 4. The full moon rendered the tides very high. 5. Caesar, having been informed by Titurius, led all his cavalry and light armed² Numidians across the bridge.

¹ *Agite*, 2d pl. imper. of *agō*, *lead*.

² cf. Lesson XXXIX., foot-note 3.

LESSON LII.

Two ACCUSATIVES: PERSON AND THING.

407.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Racilius mē sententiam rogāvit** (Cic. *Q. Fr.* 2, 1, 3), *Racilius asked me my opinion.*
2. **Ip̄s enim est p̄m̄s rogātus sententiam** (Liv. 37, 14), *for he was asked his opinion first.*
3. **Juventūtem mala facinora ēdocēbat** (Sall. *Cat.* 16, 1), *the youth he trained to (taught thoroughly) acts of lawlessness (evil deeds).*
4. **Cicerō per lēgātōs cūncta ēdoctus [est]** (Sall. *Cat.* 45, 1), *Cicero received detailed information of (was thoroughly taught) everything through the envoys.*

408. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Exs. 1 and 3, that the verbs are in the *active* and are followed by *two accusatives*, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*. Note that, in Exs. 2 and 4, the same verbs are used in the *passive*. What does the Accusative of the Person become in the passive construction? the Accusative of the Thing? What *classes* of verbs (*i.e.*, verbs of what meaning) admit this double construction?¹ Frame a rule for the constructions here illustrated.

409. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 289, c, Rem. (first two lines); H. 374, 1; G. 833, Rem. 1.

410.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quaerit ex perfugīs causam** (7, 44, 2), *he asks the deserters for an explanation (an explanation from the deserters).*
2. **Mulierēs pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt** (2, 13, 3), *the women besought the Romans for peace (asked peace from the Romans).*
3. **Ab Lentulō postulant jūsījūrandum** (Sall. *Cat.* 44, 1), *they demand of Lentulus an oath.*

411. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Do the foregoing verbs of asking and demanding conform to the rule already established (407 and 408)? How is the *person* expressed with *quaerō*, *petō*, and *postulō*? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these verbs.

412. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 239, Rem. (second paragraph); H. 374, n. 4; G. 333, 2.

413.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Caesar sententiam ā cōsule rogātus est. 2. Cele-
riter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet; quaerit ex sōlō ea
quae in conventū dixerat. 3. Cicerōnem lēgāti cūncta
ēdocuērunt. 4. Quod ab alterō postulant, ī sē recūsant.
5. Hōs ego dē rē pūblicā sententiam rogō. 6. Ad haec
quae interrogātus es, respondē.

II. 1. Cato, on being appealed to for² his opinion, de-
livered the following address. 2. We must ask Caesar
for peace.³ 3. Cicero, thoroughly-informed-of everything
through the envoys, directed the praetors . . . 4. The Ubii
earnestly pressed Caesar for aid. 5. You taught us this art.
6. Cicero asked Silanus his opinion first, because he was
consul elect.

¹ The learner should be careful to distinguish the two accusatives here considered from those illustrated in 397. In the examples under 397 the two accusatives denote the *same* person or

thing; whereas, of the two accusatives illustrated in 407, one denotes the person, the other the thing.

² Translate: *having been asked.*

³ cf. Exs. in 317.

414. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons LI. and LII.

I. 1. Liscus summō magistrātui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creātūr annuus. 2. Licet vōbīs in Ubiōrum finibus cōsidere, qūorum sunt lēgāti apud mē et ā mē auxilium petunt. 3. Caesar rogātus sententiam ā cōsule, haec verba locūtus est.¹ 4. Trēs jam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiī id flūmēn trādūxerant. 5. Sed juventūtem, quam, ut suprā diximus, inlēxerat, multis modis² mala facinora ēdocēbat.

II. 1. Having armed the soldiers whom he thought suitable for this enterprise, he came to the town. 2. There-is-a-panic³ throughout the camp,⁴ and they ask of one another⁵ the cause of the confusion. 3. When⁶ the Helvetians had been informed⁶ of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 4. In this struggle,⁷ the Germans whom Caesar had led across the Rhine ignominiously fled. 5. Dionysius taught Epaminondas music. 6. Under the tuition of Hannibal⁸ he had been thoroughly-trained in all the arts of war.

¹ spoke; perf. indic. of **loquor**, which has a pass. form with act. meaning.

⁵ cf. Lesson XXXV., foot-note 25.

² cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 4.

⁶ Use ubi with the perfect indicative.

³ **trepidātur**: A. & G. 146, c; H. 301, I; G. 199, Rem. 1.

⁷ cf. Lesson XXVI., foot-note 5.

⁴ Translate: in the entire camp; cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 8.

⁸ Translate: under Hannibal [as] master.



LESSON LIII.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. — INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES: -ne, Nōnne, Num.

415. Learn the declension of the interrogatives: **quis** (subst.), *who?* **quid** (subst.), *what?* and **qui** (adj.), *which, what?:* A. & G. 104; H. 188, I., II.; G. 104 and Rem.

416. Decline together: **qui mīles**, *what soldier?* **quaē urbs**, *what city?* **quod genus**, *what class?*

417.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentiā salūtāvit?** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 7, 16), *who in (lit., out of) this (so) great concourse greeted you?*
2. **Quid tandem tē impedit? Mōsne mājōrum?** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 11, 28), *what, pray, hinders you? Is it the practice of the fathers?*

3. **Nōnne** [vōs] prōjēcit ille? (Caes. *B. C.* 2, 32, 8), *did not he cast you off?*
4. **Num negāre audēs?** **Quid tacēs?** **Convincam, sī negās** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 4, 8), *do you dare to deny it? Why are you silent? I will prove it, if you deny it.*

418. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in the foregoing interrogative sentences, that the question in each case is indicated not by a change in the order of the words, but by the introduction of some interrogative word. Note, further, that the interrogative word is a *pronoun* in Ex. 1 (see **Quis**), and in the first question of Ex. 2 (see **Quid**); whereas, in the second question of Ex. 2 (see -ne in **Mōsne**), in Ex. 3 (see **Nōnne**), and in the first question of Ex. 4 (see **Num**), it is an *interrogative particle*. Does the question containing the appended interrogative particle -ne (Ex. 2) suggest the answer *yes*, the answer *no*, or does it simply ask for information? What answer does **Nōnne** (Ex. 3) suggest? **Num** (Ex. 4)?

419. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 210, *a, c*; H. 351, 1, Notes 1, 2, and 3, also 2; G. 456, 457, 458.

420.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgīstī? 2. Ubī proximā nocte fuīstī, quōs convocāvīstī? 3. Quā rem pūblicam habēmus? 4. In quā urbe vīvīmus? 5. Nōnne sibi salūtem fugā petīvit? 6. Num dūbitās id imperante mē facere quod jam tuā sponte faciēbās?¹ 7. Num quāmne familia nostra quiēta erit? 8. Quibus² gaudiīs³ exsultābis! 9. Cui est Āpūlia attribūta? 10. Quō tandem⁴ animō³ hōc tibī ferendum est? 11. Potestne⁵ tibī haec lūx, Catilīna, aut hūjus caelī spīritus esse⁵ jūcundus? 12. Nōnne etiam aliō incrēdibili scelere hōc scelus cumulāstī?⁶

II. 1. What plan⁷ will they adopt? 2. What and how-great states are in arms? 3. In⁸ what direction is the enemy marching? 4. Whom did you leave at Rome,⁹ whom did you take¹⁰ with you? 5. To whom has the Picene

district been assigned? 6. [When] betrayed by¹¹ him, were you not preserved by Caesar's generosity? 7. "Do you see, soldiers?" says he.¹² 8. In-what-way did they defend their towns? 9. Can [there] be⁵ peace or amity between¹³ purposes so opposed? 10. Do you not seem¹⁴ to see with your eyes these [things] which you have heard?

421.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Autrōniō nōnne sodālēs, nōnne conlēgæ sui, nōn veterēs amicī dēfuērunt? 2. Quanta est insulae māgnitūdō? quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolunt? quem ūsum belli habent? qui sunt idōnei portūs? 3. Quae in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sunt dicta? 4. Num mē gefellit, Catilīna, diēs?

II. 1. Shall I stand in arms¹⁵ against Caesar, my general? 2. Did not all these who are foremost in the commonwealth desert Autronius? 3. Did, then, the shipwreck of so-many leaders do-away-with the art of steering? 4. From what classes of men are those [contemptible]¹⁶ forces obtained? 5. From what regions do they come, and what [things] have they learned there?

¹ tuū sponte faciēbas, you were going to do of your own free will.

² The interrogatives are used in exclamations.

³ cf. foot-note 4, Lesson XXIII.

⁴ tandem, pray (exclamation).

⁵ potest, 3d sing. of possum; esse, pres. infin. of sum; potest esse, can be.

⁶ cumulāsti = cumulāvisti; cf. foot-note 2, Lesson XXXIV.

⁷ "what plan" = what (subst.) of plan (part. gen.)?

⁸ Translate: into what part?

⁹ See Lesson XXVII., foot-note 11.

¹⁰ "take" = lead out.

¹¹ per.

¹² inquit (def.), says he, is placed after one or more words of a direct quotation.

¹³ in with ablative.

¹⁴ Translate: Do you not seem to yourselves? For seem, use the passive of videō.

¹⁵ "in arms" = armed.

¹⁶ Which of the demonstratives must be used here?

LESSON LIV.

VERBS: SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

422. Learn, without meanings, the inflection and synopsis of the Subjunctive Tenses of **sum**: A. & G. pp. 68, 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 50.

423. Inflect (like **sum**) in the same tenses: **absum**; also learn the synopsis.

424. Learn, without meanings, the inflection and synopsis of the Subjunctive Tenses, Active and Passive (including the Periphrastic Conjugations), of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 76, 77, 78; H. 87, 89, 115; G. pp. 54–57, 82.

425. Inflect (like **amō**) in the foregoing Tenses of both Voices: **cōfirmō**, **laudō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

426. Learn (as in **424**) the inflection and synopsis of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 80; H. pp. 91, 93; G. pp. 58–61.

427. Inflect (like **moneō** or **dēleō**): **habeō**, **compleō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

428. Learn (as in **424**) the inflection and synopsis of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 82; H. pp. 95, 97; G. pp. 64–67.

429. Inflect (like **tegō**, **regō**, or **emō**): **dūcō**, **mittō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

430. Learn (as in 424) the inflection and synopsis of **capiō**: A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 106, 108; G. pp. 72, 73.

431. Inflect (like **capiō**): **rapiō, jaciō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.

432. Learn (as in 424) the inflection and synopsis of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 86; H. pp. 99, 101; G. pp. 68–71.

433. Inflect (like **audiō**): **pūniō, vestiō**; also learn the synopsis of these verbs.



LESSON LV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

434.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quis habet Etrūriam?** *who has Etruria in charge?*
2. **Videō quis habeat Etrūriam** (*Cic. Cat. 2, 3, 6*), *I see who has Etruria in charge.*
3. **Cui est Āpūlia attribūta?** *to whom has Apulia been assigned?*
4. **Videō cui sit Āpūlia attribūta** (*Cic. Cat. 2, 3, 6*), *I see to whom Apulia has been assigned.*

435. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the questions contained in Exs. 1 and 3 invite a *direct answer*, and that the verb is in the *indicative mood*. Note, further, that in Exs. 2 and 4 these questions have been made the *direct object* of **videō**, and that they no longer invite an answer. The questions of Exs. 1 and 3 are called *Direct* or *Independent*; those of Exs. 2 and 4 are called *Indirect* or *Dependent*. What mood in the Indirect Question has taken the place of the *indicative* in the Direct? Does any change of mood take place in English? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in Indirect Questions.

436. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 334; H. 529, I.; G. 469.

437. What are the Primary or Principal Tenses of the verb? the Secondary or Historical Tenses? See A. & G. 285, 1, 2; H. 198, I., 1, 2, 3, 4, II., 1, 2, 3; G. 216.

438.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Videō quis habeat Etrūriam** (*Cic. Cat. 2, 3, 6*), *I see who has Etruria in charge.*
2. **Vidēbō quis habeat Etrūriam**, *I shall see who has Etruria in charge.*
3. **Viderō quis habeat Etrūriam**, *I shall have seen who has Etruria in charge.*
4. **Videō quis habuerit Etrūriam**, *I see who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*
5. **Vidēbō quis habuerit Etrūriam**, *I shall see who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*
6. **Viderō quis habuerit Etrūriam**, *I shall have seen who had (has had) Etruria in charge.*
7. **Vidēbam quis habēret Etrūriam**, *I saw who had Etruria in charge.*
8. **Vidi quis habēret Etrūriam**, *I saw who had Etruria in charge.*
9. **Videram quis habēret Etrūriam**, *I had seen who had Etruria in charge.*
10. **Vidēbam quis habuisset Etrūriam**, *I saw who had had Etruria in charge.*
11. **Vidi quis habuisset Etrūriam**, *I saw who had had Etruria in charge.*
12. **Videram quis habuisset Etrūriam**, *I had seen who had had Etruria in charge.*

439. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Is the verb of the *leading clause*, in Exs. 1-6, in a *primary* or a *secondary tense*? Answer the same question for the *subjunctive* of the *dependent clause* in the same examples. Is the verb of the *leading clause*, in Exs. 7-12,

in a *primary* or a *secondary tense*? Answer the same question for the *subjunctive* of the *dependent clause* in the same examples. Does the subjunctive of a dependent clause, then, adapt its tense to that of the verb in the leading clause? Frame a general rule for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.

440. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 286; H. 490, 491; G. 510 (first paragraph).

441. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the action denoted by the *subjunctive*, in Exs. 1–3 and 7–9, is represented as *continued*, or *incomplete*, with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. Which *tense* of the *subjunctive* is used to express this continuance or incompleteness when the leading verb is in a *primary tense* (see Exs. 1–3)? when the leading verb is in a *secondary tense* (see Exs. 7–9)?

Note that the action denoted by the *subjunctive*, in Exs. 4–6 and 10–12, is represented as *completed* with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. Which *tense* of the *subjunctive* is used to express this completeness when the leading verb is in a *primary tense* (see Exs. 4–6)? when the leading verb is in a *secondary tense* (see Exs. 10–12)?

Frame special rules for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.

442. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 286, Rem.; H. 492, 1, 2, 493, 1, 2; G. 510.



LESSON LVI.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING PRINCIPLES.

443.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Quid proximā, quid superiore nocte ēgerīs, quis nostrūm¹ īgnōrat? 2. Expōnam enim vōbīs, Quirītēs, ex quibus generibus hominum istae² cōpiae comparentur.

3. Quid eā nocte ēgisset, quid in proximam cōstituisset, ēdocuī. 4. Quid hostēs cōsiliī caperent, exspectābat. 5. Quae in Trēveris gererentur, ostendit. 6. Videō quanta tempestās invidiae nōbīs impendeat. 7. Intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcerim. 8. Docēbat etiam quae senātūs cōsulta, quotiēns, quamque honōrifica in Aeduōs facta essent. 9. Quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetūs premātur, docet.

II. 1. Who among us³ does not know where you were last night? 2. He understood at what risk⁴ he had done this. 3. Caesar knew for⁵ what reason these things were said. 4. I will recount what cities, fortified by nature, the Roman people took in war.⁶ 5. Caesar inquired of the captives wherfore Ariovistus did not come to an engagement.⁷ 6. They compel merchants to declare from what districts they come, and what (pl.) they have learned there. 7. Nor was it altogether clear in what direction the enemy had marched. 8. He made known what he disapproved in him. 9. He set forth to the citizens what the senate had decreed the-day-before.

444.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit. 2. Neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent, reperiēbat. 3. Et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgunt et quid quisque eōrum audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerunt. 4. Memorāvit quibus in locis māximae hostium cōpiae ā populō Rōmānō parvā manū fūsae essent. 5. Vidētē quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.

II. 1. At the same time he-called-his-attention-to what had been said in his own presence⁸ in the council of the Gauls about Dumnorix. 2. He had not-yet perceived for what reason they were withdrawing. 3. Who among⁸ us does not know what (pl.) was done last night, what the night before? 4. The consul pointed out from what classes of men Catiline's forces had

been collected. 5. Ascertain what⁹ is the nature of the mountain and what⁹ the ascent by a circuitous path.¹⁰

¹ Why not **nostrI?**

² Contemptuous.

³ " who among us " = *who of us*.

⁴ Trans.: *with how-great risk*.

⁵ **dē.**

⁶ " in war " = *by fighting*.

⁷ " to come to an engagement " = *to contend in battle* = **proeliō dēcertāre**.

⁸ Trans.: *himself present* (abl. abs.).

⁹ **quālis**, -e, adjective.

¹⁰ Trans.: *in circuit*.

LESSON LVII.

INDEFINITES.

445. Learn the declension of the indefinites: **quis**, *any one*; **qui**, *any*; **quidam**,¹ *a, a certain, some one*; **quīvis**, *any you please, any one you please*; **aliquis**, *some, some one*; **quisque**, *every, each, every one, each one*: A. & G. 104, 105, c, d (first four lines and paradigm), e (first three lines); H. 190, 1, 2, 1), 2), Notes 1 and 2; G. 105, 1, 2, 5, 6.

446. Decline together: **sī quis**, *if any one*; **sī qua rēs**, *if anything*; **spēs aliqua**, *some hope*; **quidam¹ homo**, *a man*; **quodcumque² bellum**, *whatever war*; **nōbilissimus quisque**, *all the nobility*;³ **quaevīs vīs**,⁴ *any force whatever*.

447.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Nāvēs tōtae (*throughout*) factae erant ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim⁴ et contumēliam preferendam. 2. Nam omnēs in quibus aliquid dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant. 3. Ubi cuique locus silvestris spem salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. 4. Haec castra sīlvam quandam¹ contingēbant. 5. Errant sī quicquam⁶ ab hīs praesidiī spērant. 6. Quae cumque² bella gerentur sine ullō periculō tuō cōfidentur. 7. Obsidēs nōbilissimī cūjusque³ līberōs poscit et in eōs

omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn ad voluntātem ējus facta est.

- II. 1. They are conscious⁶ of [having done] some wrong.
2. It-is-better for us to-submit-to⁷ any fortune whatever.
3. He hears these [tidings] from some (*quidam*) deserters belonging-to-the-town.
4. Nor do they have any⁸ clothing except skins.
5. Unless some help⁹ comes from¹⁰ Caesar,
- the same thing will have to be done by¹¹ all the Gauls.
6. Caesar summons¹² the foremost men of each community.
7. Whoever shall be in authority over¹³ the province, shall defend the Aedui.
8. And so they dare to attack¹⁴ any number whatever.

448.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Alicūjus injūriae sibī cōncius est.
2. Idōneum quendam hominem dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat.
3. Neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam⁵ habētur.
4. At Caesar, p̄incipibus cūjusque cīvitatis ad sē ēvocātis, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit.

- II. 1. By [holding out] great rewards, he prevailed upon one (*quidam*) of¹⁶ the Gallic horsemen.
2. I shall send to you some one of¹⁵ my [followers].
3. And so they dare, however few [they may be], to attack¹⁴ any number whatever of horsemen.
4. There is timber of every description except beech and fir.
5. If any crime has been committed, these-same-persons¹⁶ determine the rewards and the penalties.

¹ *n* is used for *m* before *d*, *e.g.*, *quen-*
dam (acc. sing.) and *quōrundam* (gen. pl.).

² A. & G. 105, *a*.

³ Lit., *every noblest* [man]; decline in singular only; note that *quisque* follows the superlative.

⁴ For declension of *vīs*, see A. & G. 61; H. 66; G. 76, *D*.

⁵ *quisquam*, *anyone*, has *qui-*
quam or *quidquam*, *anything*, in the nominative and accusative neuter singular; it lacks the feminine singular and the entire plural. For use of *quisquam*, see A. & G. 202, *c*; H. 457; G. 304.

⁶ Translate: *they are conscious to themselves.*

⁷ *patI*, pres. infin. pass. with act. meaning.

⁸ Translate: *anything of clothing*; see foot-note 5.

⁹ “some help” = *something of help*.

¹⁰ Translate: *shall be in Caesar*.

¹¹ What construction must be used?

¹² *to summon* = *ad sē ēvocāre*.

¹³ Use *obtineō* with accusative.

¹⁴ *to attack*: *adire ad*.

¹⁵ “of” = *from*.

¹⁶ *Idem*, nom. pl. masc.

LESSON LVIII.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.—DATIVE OF SERVICE.

449.

EXAMPLES.

1. **H̄is erat inter s̄ē d̄ē p̄incipātū contentiō** (7, 39, 2), *these had a struggle with each other for precedence* (lit., there was to these a struggle, etc.).
2. **At Catōni studium modestiae, decoris erat** (Sall. *Cat.* 54, 5), *Cato, on the other hand, had a preference for sobriety and dignity of behavior* (lit., there was to Cato a preference, etc.).
3. **Est igitur homini cum deō similitudō** (Cic. *Leg.* 1, 8, 25), *man has, then, a likeness to God* (lit., there is to man a likeness, etc.).

450. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case is the verb **sum** construed in the foregoing examples? By what English verb is it translated? How, then, may Possession be expressed in Latin? Frame a rule for the construction here illustrated.

451. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 281; H. 387; G. 349.

452.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar equitātum suis auxiliō misit** (4, 37, 2), *Caesar sent the cavalry to the assistance of his men* (to his for assistance).
2. **Tulingi, qui novissimis praesidiō erant** (1, 25, 6), *the Tulingi, who served as a guard to the rear* (were to the rear for protection).
3. **Quibus corpus voluptati, anima oneri fuit** (Sall. *Cat.* 2, 8), *to these the body [served] for pleasure, [and] thought was a bore* (the soul was for a burden).
4. **Eādem cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit** (5, 11, 7), *he left the same forces to guard the ships* (to the ships for protection).

453. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With how many *datives* are the verbs in the foregoing examples construed? What do these datives respectively denote? Note that the *transitive verbs* (see **m̄sit**, Ex. 1, and **rel̄quit**, Ex. 4) take, besides the dative, an *accusative* also. Frame a rule embodying your observations.

454. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 233; H. 390, I., II.; G. 350.

455.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Quid in meā Galliā Caesari negōtiī est? 2. Multis corpus voluptati, anima oneri est. 3. Lēgātūm minōribus castris praesidiō reliquerat. 4. Familiāritās mihi cum eō est. 5. Q. Caepiōnī fortūna bellī crīminī, invidia populī calamitati fuit. 6. In hāc īsulā est fōns aquae dulcis cui nōmen Arethūsa est. 7. Tertiam legiōnem nostris subsidiō m̄sit.

II. 1. Traders have no access to them. 2. The friendship of the Roman people is a protection to me. 3. Two legions served as a guard to the baggage. 4. Our diminutive stature excites the contempt¹ of the Gauls. 5. No one could maintain his position² on the wall. 6. He sent the third line to the relief of our men [who were] struggling against odds.³

456.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. At nōbis est domi⁴ inopia, foris aēs aliēnum. 2. Mihi autem mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā aut Caesari aut omnino populō Rōmānō negōtiī sit.⁵ 3. Militēs sibi ipsi ad pūgnam erant impedimentō. 4. Ea rēs māgnō ūsui nostris fuit.

II. 1. These [matters] are my business.⁶ 2. He reminded many, to whom this had been a source of booty, of the victory⁷ of Sulla. 3. The associates of Catiline had all sorts of⁸ miseries in abundance, but no⁹ favorable condition or⁹ prospect.

¹ Trans.: *is to the Gauls for contempt.*

² cf. Lesson XLIV., foot-note 13.

³ Present participle of *labōrō*.

⁴ Locative form, *at home*; for declension, see: A. & G. 70, f; H. 119, 1; G. 67, Rem. 2.

⁵ Account for mood and tense.

⁶ Trans.: *are to me for a care.*

⁷ Use the genitive.

⁸ "all sorts of" = *all*.

⁹ "no . . . or" = *neither any . . . nor*.

LESSON LIX.

THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE AS
OBJECT.—TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.

457. Learn, with meanings, the Infinitives of **sum**: A. & G. p. 69; H. p. 85; G. p. 51.

458. Learn, with meanings, the Infinitives, Active and Passive, of **amō**: A. & G. pp. 77, 79; H. pp. 87, 89; G. pp. 55, 56. Form the Infinitives of **cōfirmō** and **laudō**.

459. Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **moneō** (or **dēleō**): A. & G. p. 81; H. pp. 91, 93; G. pp. 59, 61. Form the Infinitives of **habeō** and **compleō**.

460. Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **tegō** (**regō** or **emō**): A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 95, 97; G. pp. 65, 67. Form the Infinitives of **dūcō** and **mittō**.

461. Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **capiō**: A. & G. p. 83; H. pp. 107, 108; G. pp. 72, 73. Form the Infinitives of **rapiō** and **jaciō**.

462. Learn (as in **458**) the Infinitives of **audiō**: A. & G. p. 87; H. pp. 99, 101; G. 69, 71. Form the Infinitives of **pūniō** and **vestiō**.

463.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs intellēxit** (2, 8, 3), *he knew that our men were not inferior* (lit., our men not to be inferior).

2. **Neque hominēs temperātūrōs¹ existimābat** (1, 7, 4), *nor did he think that the men would refrain* (lit., the men to be about to refrain).
3. **Divicō respondit ita Helvētiōs institūtōs esse** (1, 14, 7), *Divico replied that the Helvetians had been so trained* (lit., the Helvetians to have been so trained).
4. **Caesar Dumnorigem dēsignārī sentiēbat** (1, 18, 1), *Caesar perceived that Dumnorix was meant* (lit., Dumnorix to be meant).

464. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in each of the foregoing examples, the leading verb has, for its object, a clause whose *verb* is in the *infinitive* and whose *subject* is in the *accusative*. Note, further, that **intellēxit** is a verb of *knowing*, **existimābat** a verb of *thinking*, **respondit** a verb of *telling*, and **sentiēbat** a verb of *perceiving*. What classes of verbs, then, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative as Object? Frame a rule for this construction.

465. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 272; H. 535, I. (read also 1, 2, 3); G. 527.

466. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *present infinitives esse* (Ex. 1) and **dēsignārī** (Ex. 4) are translated by the *past tense*; and that they denote, therefore, the same time as the verbs (**intellēxit** and **sentiēbat**) on which they depend. In other words, these present infinitives represent the time of the action not as present absolutely, but as present relatively to the time denoted by the principal verb. How does the *future infinitive temperātūrōs* (Ex. 2) represent the time of the action? Answer the same question for the *perfect infinitive Institūtōs esse* (Ex. 3). Frame a rule for the use of the Infinitive Tenses.

467. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 288; H. 537; G. 529, 530.

¹ sc. **esse**; the auxiliary of the fut. infin. act. is often omitted.

LESSON LX.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

468.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dīxit pējus vīctōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs vīctīs accidisse. 2. Lēgātum sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum¹ exīstīmābat. 3. Reperiēbat initium fugae factum² ā Dumnorige. 4. Ex persugīs quibusdam oppidānīs audit Saburram Uticae appropīnquāre. 5. Divitiacus respondit scīre sē illa esse vēra. 6. Summum in cruciātūm sē ventūrōs¹ vidēbant.

II. 1. Caesar remembered³ that the army had been beaten by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke. 2. They said that the Aedui had lost all their nobility, all their senate, [and] all their cavalry. 3. He said that our plans were reported to the enemy. 4. Caesar learned that by these means (things) Dumnorix was increasing his private resources. 5. Caesar answered that he would make peace with them. 6. He knew that it would be [attended] with great danger to the province.⁴

469.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō initium fugae factum ā Duinnorige atque ējus equitibus; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātūm perterritūm. 2. Sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna⁵ conciliātūrum cōfirmat. 3. Negāvit aut cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, aut hanc cōsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

II. 1. They knew that he had done in one day what *they*⁶ had accomplished with-the-utmost-difficulty in twenty days. 2. They supposed that they should either persuade the Allobroges or con-

strain them by force. 3. He said that he had fled from the state and come to the senate to solicit⁷ aid.

¹ cf. Lesson LIX., foot-note 1.

² sc. esse.

³ "remembered" = *held by memory*.

⁴ Use the genitive.

⁵ The plural is used here because sov-

ereign power in two states is thought of; use the singular in translation.

⁶ Use the proper form of *ipse*.

⁷ cf. 380, Ex. 2.

—○—○—○—○—○—

LESSON LXI.

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.—INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

470.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Neque fugere dēstitērunt** (1, 53, 1), *nor did they cease to flee*.
2. **Helvētiī nostrōs lacessere coepērunt** (1, 15, 3), *the Helvetians began to attack our men*.
3. . . . **quod accidere solēbat** (6, 15, 1), *which was wont to happen*.

471. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the infinitives *fugere* (Ex. 1), *lacessere* (Ex. 2), and *accidere* (Ex. 3), are *without subject accusative*. Note, further, that the verbs on which these infinitives depend (*dēstitērunt*, *coepērunt*, *solēbat*), are verbs of *incomplete meaning*. As the infinitive in these cases is added to *complete* the meaning of the verb on which it depends, it is called the *Complementary Infinitive*. After what *class* of verbs, then, is the Complementary Infinitive used? Frame a rule for this construction.

472. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 271 with note; H. 533, I., 1, 2; G. 424.

473.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Mea facta mihi dīcere licet** (Sall. *Jug.* 85, 24), *I have the right to speak of my own deeds* (to speak is lawful for me).
2. **[Mihī] nōn placuit reticēre** (Sall. *Jug.* 85, 26), *I am resolved not to remain silent* (to remain silent has not seemed good to me).

3. **Tē prōvidēre deceſ** (*Sall. Jug. 10, 7*), *it is proper for you to see to it* (for you to see to it is becoming).
4. **Pulchrum eſt bene facere rēi pūblicae** (*Sall. Cat. 3, 1*), *to serve the commonwealth by deeds* (to do well for the commonwealth) is honorable.

474. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs **licet** (Ex. 1), **placuit** (Ex. 2), and **deceſ** (Ex. 3), are *impersonal*; and that they have as *subject* an *infinitive*, either *without* subject accusative (see **dicere**, Ex. 1, and **reticēre**, Ex. 2), or *with* subject accusative (see **tē prōvidēre**, Ex. 3). Note also that the verb **eſt** (Ex. 4) has an *infinitive (facere)* as *subject*. With what *classes* of verbs, then, is the Infinitive used as Subject? Frame a rule for this construction.

475. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 270, *a*; H. 538, 1; G. 428.

476.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Līberī eōrum ī servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbent.¹
 2. Hīs rēbus coercērī mīlitēs solent. 3. Nōn oportet¹
 mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō jūre impedīrī. 4. Nōbīs eſt
 in animō sine ullō maleficiō per prōvinciam iter facere.
 5. Nōbīs praestat quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī²
 quam ā Gallīs per cruciātum interfici. 6. Cōnstituērunt
 jūmentōrum quam³ māximum numerum coēmere. 7. In-
 īquum eſt dē stīpendiō recūsāre.

II. 1. It-was-generally-understood that Caesar would first carry on war in Venetia. 2. Still, the majority were in favor of defending⁴ the camp. 3. They decided to establish friendship with the neighboring states. 4. The Helvetians began⁵ to maintain their ground more boldly.⁶
 5. Priority of time ought not in every instance to be regarded.⁷ 6. We are at liberty⁸ to do this. 7. Their lands ought⁹ not to be laid waste.

477.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ariovistus respondit amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi prae-sidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre. 2. Helvētiī audācius⁶ sub-sistere et proeliō nostrōs lacesſere coepērunt. 3. Si antiquissimum quodque tempus¹⁰ spectāri oportet, populi Rōmāni jūstissimum est in Galliā imperium.

II. 1. It is the intention of¹¹ the Helvetians to march through the country of the Sequani and Aedui. 2. It is reported to Caesar that the Helvetians intend to march through the country of the Sequani and Aedui. 3. If the decision of the senate has a claim to be respected,¹² Gaul ought⁹ to be free.

¹ dēbeō is personal; oportet is im-personal. Both express moral obligation, or a necessity founded on duty.

² See foot-note 7, Lesson LVII.

³ cf. foot-note 5, Lesson XXXII.

⁴ Trans.: it seemed good (placuit) to the greater part to defend.

⁵ coepērunt.

⁶ audācius, more boldly.

⁷ Translate: it is not right (oporet) [for] each earliest time to be re-garded. For order, cf. Lesson LVII., foot-note 3.

⁸ Trans.: it is permitted to us.

⁹ Use dēbeō.

¹⁰ See sent. 5 in the preceding exercise.

¹¹ Imitate 476, I., sent. 4.

¹² Translate: if it is proper [for] the decision of the senate to be respected.

LESSON LXII.

DEPONENT VERBS.—ABLATIVE WITH \bar{U} tor,
Fruor, ETC.

478.

EXAMPLES.

1. Tabulās pictās mirārī (Sall. Cat. 11, 6), to admire paintings.
2. Hostem verērī (1, 39, 6), to fear the enemy.
3. Hostēs sequitur (1, 22, 5), he pursues the enemy.
4. Oppidō potitur (7, 11, 8), he gets possession of the town.
5. Ad Vesontiōnem morātūr (1, 39, 1), he tarries (i.e., detains himself) at Vesontio.

479. OBSERVATION: Note, in the foregoing examples, that the verbs have a passive form, but an active (Exs. 1-4) or reflexive

(Ex. 5) *meaning*. Such verbs are called *Deponent* (from **dē-pōnō**, *lay aside*) because they have laid aside their passive meaning.

480. REFERENCES: A. & G. 135; H. 231; G. 211.

481. Learn the inflection and synopsis of one deponent verb under each conjugation: A. & G. 135, *a, c*; H. 231, 1, 3, 232 (see note); G. pp. 74–81.

482.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Māteriā ūtēbātur** (4, 31, 2), *he used the timber*.
2. **Vita quā fruimur brevis est** (Sall. *Cat.* 1, 3), *the life which we enjoy is short*.
3. . . . **quōrum māgna multitudō servōrum mūnere fungitūr** (Nep. *Paus.* 3, 6), *large numbers of whom discharge the duty of slaves*.
4. **Numidae lacte et carne vescēbantur** (Sall. *Jug.* 89, 7), *the Numidians subsisted on milk and meat*.
5. **Caesar oppidō potitūr** (7, 11, 8), *Caesar obtains possession of the town*.

483. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: With what case, in the foregoing examples, are the following verbs construed: **ūtēbātur** (Ex. 1), **fruimur** (Ex. 2), **fungitūr** (Ex. 3), **vescēbantur** (Ex. 4), **potitūr** (Ex. 5)? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used with these verbs.

484. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 249; H. 421, I.; G. 405.

485.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Linguā Gallicā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine¹ ūtēbātur.** 2. **Equitēs officiō fūctī renūntiant paucōs in aedificiūs esse inventōs.** 3. **Lacte, cāseō, carne² vescor.** 4. **Tūtius esse arbitrābantur, commicātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere vīctōriā potīrī.** 5. **Quae agat,³ quibuscum loquātur,³ sciō.** 6. **Is mihi vīvere atque fruī animā vidētur,**

quī praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmam quaerit.
 7. Partiendum⁴ sibi exercitum putāvit. 8. Vercingetorix ex arce suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur.

II. 1. Our men obtained possession of the baggage and camp. 2. Wondering⁵ what was³ the cause of this behavior, he inquired of them personally. 3. They share⁶ with their leaders all advantages in life. 4. The [territories of the] Belgians begin at the extreme confines of Gaul [and] extend towards the north-east.⁷ 5. It is very easy to obtain⁸ control of all Gaul. 6. Adopting⁹ the same policy, they burn their towns and villages, and set out together with the Helvetians. 7. And I do not know whether⁹ this is³ to be wondered at.

486.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Est genus quoddam hominum, quod Hilōtae vocātur, quōrum māgna multitūdō agrōs Lacedaemoniōrum colit servōrumque mūnere fungitur. 2. Rōmānōs pulsōs¹⁰ superātōsque,¹⁰ castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potitōs¹⁰ renūtiāvērunt. 3. In suis finibus dēcertābunt et domesticis cōpiis rēi frūmentariae ūtentur.

I. 1. One of those who stood next¹¹ stepped over¹² this [man] as he lay prostrate¹³ and discharged¹² the same office. 2. The soldiers will subsist chiefly on milk, cheese, and game. 5. How long, pray, Catiline, will you abuse our patience?

¹ cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 8.

² carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat.

³ Account for mood and tense.

⁴ A. & G. 135, d; H. 231, 2; sc. esse.

⁵ Use perf. part.

⁶ Trans.: enjoy together with their leaders.

⁷ Trans.: north and rising sun.

⁸ Use potior.

⁹ Express whether by appending -ne to the gerundive.

¹⁰ sc. esse.

¹¹ Trans: one from the nearest.

¹² "stepped over and discharged" = having stepped over, discharged.

¹³ Trans.: this [man] lying.

LESSON LXIII.

INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE: HORTATORY, OPTATIVE, DUBITATIVE.

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

487.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Persequāmur eōrum mortem** (7, 38, 8), *let us avenge their death.*
2. **Discēdant in Italiā omnēs ab armis** (Caes. B. C. 1, 9, 5), *let all throughout Italy lay down their arms (withdraw from arms).*
3. **Quaesierit sānē** (Cic. Mil. 17, 46), *suppose, if you will (sānē), that he did make inquiry.*

488. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *subjunctive persequāmur* (Ex. 1) expresses *exhortation*, that *discēdant* (Ex. 2) expresses *command*, and that *quaesierit* (Ex. 3) expresses *concession*. Are the clauses containing these subjunctives *dependent* or *independent*? Frame a rule for these and similar Subjunctives.

489. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 266; H. 483, 484, II., III., IV.; G. 256, 1, 3, 257.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

490.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Stet haec urbs praeclāra** (Cic. Mil. 34, 93), *may this illustrious city abide!*
2. **Utinam P. Clōdius vīveret** (Cic. Mil. 38, 103), *would that Publius Clodius were alive!*
3. **Utinam ille omnēs sēcum cōpiās suās ēdūxisset** (Cic. Cat. 2, 2, 4), *would that he had taken with him all his forces!*

491. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *subjunctives* in the foregoing examples express *wish*. Are the clauses containing them *dependent* or *independent*? In what *tense* is the subjunctive in Ex. 1? Does the wish in this example relate to *present, past, or future time?* Is the wish conceived of as *possible*

or impossible of fulfillment? In what tense is the subjunctive in Ex. 2? To what time does it relate? Does it represent the wish as fulfilled or unfulfilled? Answer the last three questions for the subjunctive in Ex. 3. What particle accompanies the subjunctive in Exs. 2 and 3? Frame rules for Mood and Tense in Expressions of Wishing.

492. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 267, b; H. 484, I., 483, 1, 2; G. 253, 254.

DUBITATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

493.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ēloquar an sileam** (*Verg. Aen. 3, 39*), shall I speak out, or hold my peace?
2. **Hunc ego nōn admirer** (*Cic. Arch. 8, 18*), can I help admiring (should I not admire) this man?
3. **Nam quid dē Cyrō nūntiāret** (*Cic. Milt. 18, 48*), pray, what need had he to bring news of Cyrus?

494. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note (1) that the subjunctives in Ex. 1 are in a question expressing doubt, (2) that the subjunctive in Ex. 2 is in a question expressing indignation, (3) that the subjunctive in Ex. 3 is in a question expressing impossibility. Are the questions containing these subjunctives dependent or independent? Frame a rule for these and similar Subjunctives.

495. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 268; H. 484, V., 486, II.; G. 258, 251.



LESSON LXIV.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE HORTATORY, OPTATIVE, AND DUBITATIVE SUBJUNCTIVES.

496.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Discēdat uterque ab armīs exercitūsque dīmittat.
2. Valeant, valeant, cīvēs meī; sint incolumēs, sint flōrentēs, sint beātī; stet haec urbs p̄aeclāra mihiq̄ue patria

cārissima! 3. Nam quid ea memorem, quae, nisi eīs qui vīdēre, nēminī crēdibilia sunt? 4. Tranquillā rē pūblicā meī cīvēs perfruantur! 5. Proficiscantur, nē¹ patiantur dēsideriō² suī Catilinām miserum tābescere. 6. Hunc ego nōn dīligam, nōn admirer? nōn omnī ratiōne dēfendendum putem? 7. Utinam exstārent illa carmina! 8. Mihi salvā rē pūblicā vōbīscum perfruī liceat! 9. Hōc utinam ā prīncipiō tibi placuisset!

II. 1. Let Marius have eternal glory;³ let Pompey be preferred to all. 2. Would that my fellow citizens had been uninjured, had been prosperous, had been happy! 3. But who could suppose that the Teucri would come⁴ to the shores of Hesperia? 4. May I but (*modo*) accomplish my endeavors! 5. Why should I speak of Gabinius? 6. If they remain in the city, let them look for what⁵ they deserve. 7. If they cannot⁶ stand, let them fall. 8. Who could hesitate to release himself from fear,⁷ and the commonwealth from peril?⁷

497.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Utinam P. Clōdius nōn modo vīveret, sed etiam prætor, cōsul, dictātor esset potius⁸ quam hōc spectāculum vidērem! 2. Sit Scipiō clārus ille, cūjus virtūte Hannibal ex ītaliā dēcēdere coāctus est; habeātur vir ēgregius Paullus ille, cūjus currum rēx potentissimus et nōbilissimus Persēs honestāvit. 3. Cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā dēspērētis?

II. 1. Therefore let the reprobates go; let them separate themselves from the good. 2. Would that this which I am saying were not¹ true!⁹ 3. Why should I allow soldiers to be wounded who have done their best to serve me?¹⁰

¹ nē is the regular negative with the hortatory and optative subjunctives.

² cf. Lesson XXIII., foot-note 8.

³ Translate: *be of eternal glory.*

⁴ In what mood? See 463, Ex. 2.

⁵ "what" = *those [things] which.*

⁶ nōn possunt.

⁷ Ablative without preposition.

⁸ rather.

⁹ Translate: *would that I were not saying this truly.*

¹⁰ "who have . . . me" = *having deserved best (optimē) from (dē) me.*

LESSON LXV.

ADVERBS: FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

498.

EXAMPLES.

POSITIVE.

ADJECTIVES.

	ADVERBS.
1. <i>jūstus</i> (st. <i>jūsto-</i>);	<i>jūstē</i> , <i>justly</i> .
2. <i>līber</i> (st. <i>lībero-</i>);	<i>līberē</i> , <i>freely</i> .
3. <i>pulcher</i> (st. <i>pulchro-</i>);	<i>pulchrē</i> , <i>beautifully</i> .
4. <i>ācer</i> (st. <i>ācri-</i>);	<i>ācritē</i> , <i>sharply</i> .
5. <i>fortis</i> (st. <i>forti-</i>);	<i>fortiter</i> , <i>bravely</i> .
6. <i>audāx</i> (st. <i>audāci-</i>);	<i>audācter</i> (<i>audāciter</i>), <i>boldly</i> .
7. <i>sapiēns</i> (st. <i>sapient-</i>);	<i>sapienter</i> , <i>wisely</i> .

COMPARATIVE.

8. <i>jūstior</i> , <i>juster</i> ;	<i>jūstius</i> , <i>more justly</i> .
9. <i>līberior</i> , <i>freer</i> ;	<i>līberius</i> , <i>more freely</i> .
10. <i>pulchrior</i> , <i>more beautiful</i> ;	<i>pulchrius</i> , <i>more beautifully</i> .
11. <i>ācrior</i> , <i>sharper</i> ;	<i>ācrius</i> , <i>more sharply</i> .
12. <i>fortior</i> , <i>braver</i> ;	<i>fortius</i> , <i>more bravely</i> .
13. <i>audācior</i> , <i>bolder</i> ,	<i>audācius</i> , <i>more boldly</i> .
14. <i>sapientior</i> , <i>wiser</i> ;	<i>sapientius</i> , <i>more wisely</i> .

SUPERLATIVE.

15. <i>jūstissimus</i> (st. <i>jūstissimo-</i>);	<i>jūstissimē</i> , <i>most justly</i> .
16. <i>līberrimus</i> (st. <i>līberrimo-</i>);	<i>līberrimē</i> , <i>most freely</i> .
17. <i>pulcherrimus</i> (st. <i>pulcher-</i> <i>rimo-</i>);	<i>pulcherrimē</i> , <i>most beautifully</i> .
18. <i>ācerrimus</i> (st. <i>ācerrimo-</i>);	<i>ācerrimē</i> , <i>most sharply</i> .
19. <i>fortissimus</i> (st. <i>fortissimo-</i>);	<i>fortissimē</i> , <i>most bravely</i> .
20. <i>audācissimus</i> (st. <i>audācis-</i> <i>simo-</i>);	<i>audācissimē</i> , <i>most boldly</i> .
21. <i>sapientissimus</i> (st. <i>sapien-</i> <i>tissimo-</i>);	<i>sapientissimē</i> , <i>most wisely</i> .

499. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *adverbs* formed from *adjectives* of the *second* and *first declensions* (Exs. 1–3, positive, and Exs. 15–21, superlative) end in **-e**; and that these adverbs may be formed from the *stem* of the *adjective* by changing the *final stem vowel* to **-e**.¹

Note, further, that adverbs formed from the *positive* of *adjectives* of the *third declension* (see Exs. 4–7) may be obtained by adding the suffix **-ter** to the *stem* of the *adjective*.²

Note, finally, that the *comparative* of an adverb formed from an *adjective* (see Exs. 8–14) is the *neuter singular accusative* of the *comparative* of the *adjective* used adverbially.

Frame rules for forming the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative of Adverbs from the corresponding Adjectives.

500. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 148, *a*, *b*, *d*; H. 304, II., 2, IV., 306; G. 90, 1, 2, 4.

501. Form adverbs from the following adjectives and compare them: **indignus**, *unworthy*; **studiōsus**, *eager*; **miser**, *wretched*; **celer**, *quick*, *swift*; **gravis**, *heavy*; **brevis**, *brief*; **vehemēns**, *violent*; **prūdēns**, *sagacious*; **fēlix**, *happy*.

502. Account for the form of the following adverbs: **facile**, *easily*; **multum**, *much*; **plūrimum**, *very much*, *exceedingly*; **postrēnum**, *finally*; **crēbrō**, *frequently*; **paulō**, *by a little*, *a little*; **ūnā**, *in company*, *together*; **quā**, *where*: A. & G. 148, *d*, *e*; H. 304, I., II.; G. 90, 3, 4.

503. Compare: **diū**, *long* (in time); **saepe**, *often*; **bene**, *well*; **male**, *ill*: A. & G. 92; H. 306, 2, 4; G. 91.

504.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet; quae rit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat; dīcit liberius atque audācius. 2. Persequāmur eōrum mortem quī indīgnissimē

interiērunt.³ 3. Belgae ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe com-mēant. 4. Omnēs ācērrimē fortissimēque pūgnābant. 5. Omnia quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs per-turbant.

II. 1. They were able⁴ to use their swords more easily. 2. Galba was-not-disposed⁵ to try fortune further.⁶ 3. Hav-ing assembled the leaders of the Aedui, he took them severely to task. 4. They knew that he had done in a single day what⁷ they had accomplished with the utmost difficulty in twenty days. 5. The-battle-was-carried-on⁸ with the greatest energy. 6. The enemy broke through the midst [of them] with the greatest boldness. 7. The army must be more widely distributed.

505. • Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar amīcissimē dē vōbīs et illī gravissimē jūdicāvē-runt. 2. Lēgātī dixērunt Aeduōs omni tempore dē populō Rō-mānō bene meritōs esse. 3. Equitēs cupidius novissimum agmen insecūti sunt. 4. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs.

II. 1. Darts could⁴ not be thrown very easily⁹ from the lower position, and [those] cast by the Gauls fell with greater force.¹⁰ 2. Dumnorix was especially popular with¹¹ the common people.

¹ Adverbs in -ē were originally abla-tive forms.

⁶ Comparative of *saepe*.

⁷ “what” = *that which*.

² But stems in -nt- drop -t- before -ter.

⁸ *pūgnābātur*.

³ Perf.indic.3d pl. of *intereō*, *perish*.

⁹ *satis commode*.

⁴ *poterant*.

¹⁰ Translate: *more heavily*.

⁵ *nōlēbat*.

LESSON LXVI.

ABLATIVE: SEPARATION AND WANT.

506.

EXAMPLES.

1. [Marius] **bis Italiam obsidiōne liberāvit** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 10, 21), *Marius twice relieved Italy from siege.*
2. **Vos Sulpiciū vitā privāstis** (Cic. *Phil.* 9, 4, 8), *[it is] you [who] have deprived Sulpicius of life.*
3. **Eō errōre careō** (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 10), *I am free from that error.*
4. **Sed nōn egeō medicinā** (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 10), *but I need no medicine.*
5. **Iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant** (1, 16, 3), *the Helvetians had turned their line of march away from the Arar.*
6. **Proeliō abstinentebat** (1, 22, 3), *he held off from battle.*
7. **Hannibal ex Italīa dēcēdere coactus est** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 10, 21), *Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy.*
8. **Helvētiī hōc cōnatū dēstitērunt** (1, 8, 4), *the Helvetians desisted from this attempt.*
9. **Ēgredere ex urbe** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 8, 20), *depart from the city.*
10. **Hostēs proeliō excēdēbant** (3, 4, 3), *the enemy withdrew from the fight.*

507. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that each of the foregoing illustrations contains a verb expressing separation, and that this verb is construed with the ablative.

Is the ablative in Exs. 1-4, used *with* or *without* a preposition? With what classes of verbs, then, does the Ablative of Separation omit the preposition?

With what prepositions are the verbs of separation in Exs. 5-10 compounded? Note that the *ablatives* construed with these compound verbs in Exs. 5, 7, and 9 *have a preposition*; whereas the *ablatives* in Exs. 6, 8, and 10 *have no preposition*. What explanation of this difference can you suggest?

Frame rules for the use or the omission of the Preposition with the Ablative of Separation.

508. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 243, *a, b*; H. 414, I., 413, n. 3; G. 388 (both paragraphs).

509.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Gubernātōre opus est** (*Liv.* 24, 8), *there is need of a pilot.*
2. **Auctōritāte tuā nōbīs opus est** (*Cic. Fam.* 9, 25, 3), *we have need (there is to us need) of your authority.*
3. **Factō opus est** (*Sall. Cat.* 1, 6), *there is need of action.*
4. **Mātūrātō opus est** (*Liv.* 8, 13, 17), *there is need of hastening.*

510. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: By what *case* is the *person* or *thing needed* expressed with **opus** in the foregoing examples (see **gubernātōre**, **auctōritāte**, **factō**, and **mātūrātō**)? By what *case* is the *person needing* expressed (see **nōbīs** in Ex. 2)? Note that the *thing needed* is expressed in Exs. 3 and 4 by the *perfect passive participle* (see **factō** and **mātūrātō**). What constructions, then, are used with **opus**?

511. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 243, *e*; H. 414, IV., n. 2, n. 3; G. 390.

512.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. 2. Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, līberā rem pūblicam metū. 3. Huic trādita urbs est, nūda praesidiō.¹ 4. Magistratibus igitur opus est, sine quōrum prūdentia esse cīvitās nōn potest. 5. Factō, nōn cōnsultō, in tālī periculō opus est. 6. Helvētiī, eā spē dējectī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. 7. Complūrēs diēs frūmentō mīlitēs carent.² 8. Una centuria facta est immūnis mīltiā.¹ 9. Hunc ā tuīs ārīs arcēbis.

- II. 1. The charioteers, meanwhile, gradually withdrew from the battle. 2. We shall live without anxiety and fear, and shall free mind and body from trouble. 3. The orator has need of a mind [that is] free¹ from envy and all vices. 4. They threatened Caesar with the sword [as he was] coming out from the senate. 5. It is a great undertaking and requires no (nōn) slight practice. 6. There is no need of deliberation.³

¹ A. & G. 243, *d*; H. 414, III.; G. 388 (end).

² cf. Lesson XXI., foot-note 5.

³ cf. sent. 5, preceding exercise.

LESSON LXVII.

ABLATIVES: SOURCE AND CAUSE.

ABLATIVE OF SOURCE.

513.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Pisō amplissimō genere nātus** (4, 12, 4), *Piso, born of a very illustrious family.*
2. **Eā familiā ortum** (Sall. *Cat.* 31, 7), *descended from such a family.*
3. **Is Ascanius, quācumque mātre genitus** (Liv. 1, 3, 3), *this Ascanius, of whatever mother born . . .*

514. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *perfect participles* in the foregoing illustrations express *birth* or *origin*. How is *source* denoted in connection with these participles? Frame a rule for this construction.

515. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 244, *a*; H. 415, II.; G. 395.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

516.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar beneficiis māgnus habēbātur** (Sall. *Cat.* 54, 2), *Caesar was considered great because of his benefactions.*
2. **Ipsā vacuitāte omnis molestiae gaudēmus** (Cic. *Fin.* 1, 11, 37), *we take pleasure in the mere absence of all annoyance.*

517. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: What do the *ablatives* in the foregoing examples express? Frame a rule for these and similar Ablatives.

518. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 245; H. 416; G. 407.

519.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Mithridātēn¹ rēgiō genere ortum, rēgem cōstituit.
2. Helvētiī suā vīctōriā īsolenter glōriābantur. 3. Alter

est Coton, antiquissimā familiā natus atque ipse homo summae potentiae. 4. Eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem in rē militārī sūmēbant. 5. Reperiēbat plérōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab² Germānīs. 6. Gubernātōris ars ūtilitāte laudātur.

II. 1. Catiline made a boast of his vices. 2. Lycomedes, descended from a royal race, laid claim to this priestly dignity. 3. He had said this at the bidding of his master. 4. Lucius Catiline, [who was] born of a noble family, was of great vigor both of mind and of body. 5. Cato was commended for his steadfastness. 6. This happened because of the inexperience of the enemy, and the valor of the soldiers.

¹ Greek accusative of *Mithridatēs*, ² A. & G. 244, a, Rem.; H. 415, II., -is, n., *Mithridates*. note; G. 395 (end).

520. Supplementary Exercises on Lessons LXVI. and LXVII.

I. 1. Pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premi vidēbatur. 2. Ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. 3. Quid¹ mihi aut vitā aut cīvitātē opus est,¹ quam beneficiō Caesaris habēre vidēbor? 4. Omnia rērum nātūrā cōgnitā levāmur superstitione, liberāmur mortis metū. 5. Tantummodo inceptō opus est.

II. 1. Among these was Piso, an Aquitanian, born of a very illustrious family. 2. Why should anybody suppose² that this [man] will withdraw from his allegiance? 3. When a violent tempest arises,³ then there is need of a man and a pilot. 4. Catiline withdrew from the city because of his fear of the consul. 5. Labienus, having seized the mountain, was waiting for our men and holding off from battle.

¹ Quid (adv. acc.) mihi opus est, what need have I?

² What mood? See 493, Ex. 3.

³ Use the perfect tense.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERB: **P**ossum.—IMPERSONAL USE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS IN THE PASSIVE.

521. Learn the composition, inflection, and synopsis of **possum**, *be able, can*: A. & G. 120, *b*; H. 290, II., notes 1, 2, 1), 2), 3); G. 115.

522.

EXAMPLES.

1. **A**criter pūgnātum est (1, 50, 2), *the fight was vigorously maintained.*
2. **D**ictō pārētur (Liv. 9, 32, 4), *the order is obeyed* (obedience is rendered to the order).
3. **H**uic rēi subventum est ā nōbīs (Cic. Att. 1, 17, 9), *I supported this proposition* (to this thing support was given by us).
4. **H**ūc concurrexit (7, 84, 2), *they make for this point in a body* (a general rush is made).

523. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the verbs in the foregoing illustrations are *intransitive*, i.e., they do not take a direct object in the active voice. How are they used in the *passive*? What, then, is the *gender* of the *participle* in the compound tenses of the passive (see Exs. 1 and 3; cf. also **317**, Exs. 3 and 4)? In the case of intransitive verbs that govern the *dative* (e.g., **pāreō**, *obey, subveniō, support*), is this dative *changed* in the passive, or is it *retained* (see Exs. 2 and 3)? Frame a rule for the use of Intransitive Verbs in the Passive.

524. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 146, *c*; H. 301, 1; G. 199, Rem. 1, 208.

525.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Tōtīus Galliae¹ plūrimum Helvētiī possunt. 2. Sed Caesar, ubi ad eum ventum est, haec verba locūtus est.
3. Quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ūltériōrem

contendit. 4. Labiēnus, ut erat ēī praeceptum ā Cae-sare, proeliō abstinēbat. 5. Hīs persuādēre nōn poterant. 6. Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat. 7. Neque hostibus nocētur. 8. Mihi profectō poterit ignōsci. 9. Nōbīs parum crēdē-bātur. 10. Intellegēs quid invictī Germānī virtūte possint.² 11. Quid hostis virtūte posset,² periclitabātur.

II. 1. He demands of the whole province the largest possible³ number of soldiers. 2. He says that he cannot⁴ grant any one a passage through the province. 3. He had very little influence⁵ owing to his youth. 4. I am believed. 5. Why am I envied? 6. I am convinced that he will not reject my friendship. 7. The ships of the enemy could not be injured.⁶ 8. He shows what the discipline and resources of the Roman people have been able [to effect]. 9. Those with whom they had come up⁷ made a stand.

526.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. 2. Caesar intellēxit neque hostiū fugam reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse. 3. Sēsē nē vultūm⁸ quidem Germānōrum dīcēbant ferre⁹ potuisse. 4. Id oppidum ex itinere oppūgnārē cōnātus, propter mūri altitūdinem expūgnārē nōn potuit.

II. 1. He inquired of them what communities were in arms, and what was their strength¹⁰ in war. 2. For they had learned that the enemy's ships could not be damaged¹¹ by the beak. 3. A rush was made to-that-point¹² from the nearest redoubts, and the fight was maintained desperately by the enemy.

¹ A. & G. 216, a, 2; H. 397, 3; G. 371.

² Account for mood and tense.

³ cf. sent. 3 of the preceding exercise.

⁴ "He says that he cannot" = *he denies that he can*.

⁵ Translate: *was able very little.*

⁶ cf. sent. 6, preceding exercise.

⁷ Translate: *Those to whom it had been come.*

⁸ Note that with **nē . . . quidem** the emphatic word is placed between **nē** and **quidem**.

⁹ Present infinitive of **ferō**.

¹⁰ "what was their strength" = *what they could*.

¹¹ cf. preceding exercise, sent. 2.

¹² **ēō**.

LESSON LXIX

IRREGULAR VERBS: Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

527. Learn the inflection and synopsis of *volō, wish, be willing*; *nōlō, be unwilling*; *mālō, wish rather*: A. & G. 138, 1, 2, 3; H. 293 with note 2; G. 189.

528.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nōnnūlli**, ut suspiciōnem vītārent, remanēbant (1, 39, 3), *some stayed to escape (that they might escape) suspicion.*
2. **Nē exire posset, valvās obstrūxērunt** (Nep. *Paus.* 5, 2), *they barricaded the doors that he might not get out.*
3. **Virgultis conlēctis, quibus fossās compleant, pergunt** (3, 18, 8), *having gathered brushwood with which to fill (that with it they may fill) the trenches, they proceed.*
4. **Praesidia dispōnit, quōd facilius [Helvētiōs] prohibēre pos- sit** (1, 8, 2), *he establishes garrisons at intervals, that (thereby) he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.*

529. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the dependent clauses in the foregoing examples express *purpose*. Clauses expressing purpose are called *Final Clauses*. What *mood* is used in final clauses? Is the final clause in Ex. 1 *affirmative* or *negative*? What *particle* introduces it? Answer the same questions for the final clause in Ex. 2. Note that the final clause in Ex. 3 is introduced by the *relative pronoun quibus*, and that *quibus* is equivalent in meaning to *ut eis*. Note that the final clause in Ex. 4 contains a *comparative* (*facilius*); by what word is this final clause introduced? Frame rules (1) for the Mood and (2) for the Introductory Word to be used in Final Clauses.

530. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 317, b; H. 497, I., II., 1 (first sentence), 2 (first sentence); G. 543, 1 (first sentence), 2, 545, 1, 2, 3.

NOTE: The sequence of tenses in dependent subjunctive clauses has already been illustrated and explained (see Lesson LV.).

531.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Si pāce ūtī vultis, inīquum est dē stīpendiō recūsāre.
 2. Caesar omnium ex cōspectū remōvit equōs, ut spem fugae tolleret. 3. Nōlī exīstimāre hunc esse exercitum. 4. Nē commeātū prohibērētur, ūtrā eum locum castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit. 5. Praestō erat ille, quī fugientīs exciperet. 6. Ab hīs quaerēbat cūr bellum quam pācem māluissent. 7. Quō barbarōs facilius repellerent, clāssēs aedificārunt¹ exercitūsque comparārunt.¹

II. 1. What do you mean ?² 2. Cato chooses rather to submit than to fight. 3. On (in) making inquiry, he learned for (dē) what reasons Ariovistus was unwilling to treat with Caesar. 4. They sent³ envoys to Dumnorix, that at his intercession⁴ they might obtain⁵ their request from the Sequani. 5. He was at hand to effect a junction⁶ with the leaders in-the-city. 6. He endeavored to keep the forces of the enemy apart, that it might not be necessary to fight⁷ with so great a multitude at once. 7. In order to retard⁸ Caesar's attack more effectually, he barricaded⁹ the gates.

532.

Supplementary Exercises.

- I. 1. Equitatūm omnem praemittit, qui⁸ videant⁶ quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.⁵ 2. Nōluit eum locum vacāre. 3. Quae vellet ostendit. 4. Omnia permiscērī māvultis quam exercitūs dimittere. 5. Omnis alāriōs in cōspectū hostium cōstituit, ut ad speciem ūterētur. 6. Quāle praemium Miltiadi sit tribūtum docēbō, quō facilius intellegī possit quae omnium civitātum sit nātūra. 7. Ille etiam grave tum vulnus accēpit, nē quid dē summā rē pūblicā dēminuerētur.

- II. 1. Do not force these [men] to do without your aid.⁹ 2. He wishes to discuss¹⁰ with you matters of the highest interest to [you] both.¹¹ 3. He ordered them to open the maniples, that they might more easily use their swords. 4. Caesar places in command of the legion a lieutenant, that the individual soldiers¹²

may have him as a witness of their valor. 5. He explained why Cato had chosen rather to submit than to fight. 6. They sent⁸ envoys to him to say⁵ that it was their intention¹³ to march without [committing any] depredation. 7. He barricaded⁸ the gates that the soldiers might not break⁵ into the town.

¹ cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2.

² "What do you mean?" = *what do you wish for yourself?*

³ Use the historical present; see: A. & G. 276, *d*; H. 467, *III*; G. 220.

⁴ Translate: *he [being] intercessor.*

⁵ For tense, see: A. & G. 287, *e*; H. 495, *II*; G. 511, Rem. 1.

⁶ "to effect a junction" = *who should unite himself.*

⁷ Use *cōfīlgō* impersonally in the passive periphrastic conjugation.

⁸ cf. Lesson L., foot-note 3.

⁹ Translate: *Be unwilling* (cf. 531, I., sent. 3) *to rob these of your aid.*

¹⁰ *agere dē.*

¹¹ "matters of the highest interest to you both" = *the greatest things of each.*

¹² "the individual soldiers" = *each one.*

¹³ "that it was their intention" = *that it was to themselves in mind.*



LESSON LXX.

IRREGULAR VERBS: Ferō, Eō.—COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES.

533. Learn the inflection and synopsis of **ferō**, *bear*, and **eō**, *go*: A. & G: 139, 141; H. 292, 2, 295; G. 186, 185.

534.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Persuādent Rauricis utī ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur** (1, 5, 4), *they persuade the Raurici to go with them.*
2. **Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem addūceret** (1, 42, 4), *Ariovistus demanded that he should not bring a single foot-soldier.*
3. **Veritus ut impetum sustinēre posset, lītterās Caesarī remittit** (5, 47, 4), *fearing that he might not be able to sustain the attack, he sent back a dispatch to Caesar.*
4. **Nē Divitiaci animum offenderet, verēbātur** (1, 19, 2), *he feared that he might wound the feelings of Divitiacus.*

535. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the final clauses in the foregoing examples are the *direct objects* of the verbs on which they depend, and that they therefore express purpose somewhat less obviously than those of the preceding lesson. As they complete the meaning of the verbs whose objects they are, they are called *Complementary Final Clauses*. Note, further, that the verbs on which they depend (see **persuādent**, 1, **postulāvit**, 2, **veritās**, 3, **verēbātur**, 4) denote an *action directed towards the future*. What *class of verbs*, then, do Complementary Final Clauses follow? What Mood do they require? Frame a rule for Complementary Final Clauses.

536. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 331; H. 498, I., II., III.; G. 546.

537. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 3 and 4, the complementary final clause follows a verb of *fearing* (**veritās**, Ex. 3, **verēbātur**, Ex. 4). How is **ut** (Ex. 3) translated? Is this its *usual* meaning? How is **nē** (Ex. 4) translated? Is this its *usual* meaning? Frame a rule for the use of the Particle after Expressions of Fearing.

538. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 331, *f*; H. 498, III., note 1; G. 552⁵.

539.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Fer mihi auxilium. 2. Servitūtem preferre mālunt. 3. In tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōflecta erat quī numerus domō¹ exīsset² eōrum, quī arma ferre possent. 4. Neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt. 5. Hīs mandāvit ut quae diceret Arioquistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. 6. Mulierēs mīlitēs implōrābant nē sē ī servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent. 7. Timēbant nē ab hoste circumvenīrentur. 8. Rem³ frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportāri posset, timēbant. 9. Nōnnūllī Caesarī nūntiārant² nōn propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs mīlitēs. 10. Ego enim ab ineunte aetāte incēnsus sum studiō utriusque vestrūm.

- II. 1. At one time⁴ they waged war against [others], at

another⁴ they repelled [it when] waged against [themselves]. 2. One must often incur enmity⁵ for the public welfare. 3. He went away at the beginning of summer.⁶ 4. He warns him to avoid⁷ all grounds of suspicion. 5. They feared that our army might be led against⁸ them. 6. Take care to attach to yourself the aid⁹ of all [classes]. 7. He persuades this [man] to go over to the enemy. 8. Caesar thought that he ought to take special precautions¹⁰ lest this should happen. 9. "Lay the matter before the senate," you say: I shall not.¹¹ 10. I must return. 11. Go hence!

540.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartitō intulērunt. 2. Is Amūlium rēgem interēmisso fertur. 3. Respondit in eam partem itūrōs atque ibī futūrōs Helvētiōs. 4. Sic eat quaecumque Rōmāna lūgēbit hostem!¹² 5. Allobrogibus imperāvit ut Helvētiis frūmentī cōpiam facerent. 6. Eō cōnsiliō domōs¹ suās Helvētiī reliquērunt, uti tōtī Galliae bellum īferrent imperiōque potirentur.¹³ 7. Caesar postulāvit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent.

II. 1. Would that the soldiers had passed through without [committing any] depredation! 2. I do not know through whose territory they have gone. 3. They betook themselves to the town. 4. They suffer no wine¹⁴ to be imported. 5. It is your [duty] to see that they do not injure me. 6. They demanded of Arioquistus that he should select some place for a conference. 7. There was reason-to-fear¹⁵ that they might seem to have been cruel.

¹ For declension, see: A. & G. 70, *f*; H. 119, 1; G. 67, Rem. 2.

² A. & G. 128, *a*; H. 235; G. 151, 1.

³ Rem frūmentāriam, ut... posset = Ut rēs frūmentāria... posset. The construction used in the text gives special emphasis to rem frūmentāriam.

⁴ aliās... aliās, at one time... at another.

⁵ "One must often incur enmity" = enmities must often be incurred.

⁶ Trans.: summer beginning.

⁷ In this and similar cases occurring later, the English infinitive is to be translated by ut with the subjunctive.

⁸ addūcō ad.

⁹ Use the plural.

¹⁰ Use the passive impersonally.

¹¹ Trans.: I shall not lay the matter.

¹² The exclamation of Horatius as he slew his sister: Liv. 1, 26, 4.

¹³ Note that this final clause is in apposition with eō cōnsiliō.

¹⁴ "no wine" = nothing of wine.

¹⁵ Passive periphrastic.

LESSON LXXI.

IRREGULAR VERB: FÍÓ.—ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.
—ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

541. Learn the inflection and synopsis of **fíó**, *be made, become*: A. & G. 142; H. 294; G. 188.

542.

EXAMPLES.

1. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{Quis est enim quam ego mítior?} \\ b. \text{Quis est enim mē mítior? (Cic. Cat. 4, 6, 11),} \end{array} \right\}$ *for who is milder than I?*
2. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{Docet sē nihil amplius scīre quam lēgātōs (Sall. Cat. 47, 1),} \\ b. \text{Docet sē nihil amplius scīre lēgātīs,} \end{array} \right\}$ *he declares that he knows no more than the envoys.*
3. **Lúce sunt cláriōra nōbis tua cōnsilia** (Cic. Cat. 1, 3, 6), *your schemes are clearer to us than the light.*
4. **Celerius omni opīniōne** (2, 3, 1), *more quickly than any one had thought possible (than all opinion).*

543. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, *a*, that **quam** is expressed with the *comparative mítior*, and that **ego** is in the *nominative*; whereas, in Ex. 1, *b*, **quam** is omitted, and the *nominative ego* has been changed to the *ablative mē*. Compare Ex. 2, *a* with Ex. 2, *b*; how has the omission of **quam** affected the *accusative lēgātōs*? Note, further, that **quam** is omitted after the *comparative* in Exs. 3 and 4; in what *case* are **lúce** (Ex. 3) and **opīniōne** (Ex. 4)? By what *Case*, then, is the *Comparative* followed when **quam** is omitted? Frame a rule for this construction.

544. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 247; H. 417; G. 399.

545.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hibernia dīmidiō minor [est] quam Britannia** (5, 13, 2),
Ireland is smaller by half than Britain.

2. [Patria] mihi vītā meā multō est cārior (Cic. Cat. 1, 11, 27), *my country is far (by much) dearer to me than my life.*
3. Paucis ante diēbus (1, 18, 10), *a few days before (before by a few days).*
4. Quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illa sequēbātur (Sall. Cat. 54, 5), *the less he paid court to glory, the more she followed [him] (lit., by what less, by that more).*

546. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note, in Ex. 1, that the ablative **dīmīdiō** tells *by how much* Ireland is smaller than Britain; in other words, it expresses the *degree of difference* denoted by the comparative **minor**. Point out the words in the remaining examples which express degree of difference. In what case are they? By what case, then, is Degree of Difference denoted after Comparative expressions? Frame a rule for this construction.

547. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 250; H. 423; G. 400.

548.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Dē Caēsarī adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs fiunt.
 2. Quid fierī velit, ēdocet. 3. Proelium adversum paucis
 ante diēbus erat factum. 4. Semprōniae cāriōra omnia
 quam¹ pudīcītia fuit.² 5. Celerius opīniōne exercitum ad-
 dūcit. 6. Nēmō Rōmānōrum fuit ēloquentiō Cicerōne.
 7. Multō ego vigilō ācrius qd̄ salūtem quam tū ad perni-
 ciem rēi pūblicae. 8. Quārē in hostēs impetus nōn fieret,
 nōndum perspexerat. 9. Quantō vōs attentius ea agētis,
 tantō illīs animus īfīrmīor erit. 10. Festīnandō plūs
 timōris quam perīculī effēcerant.

- II. 1. This was at that time easily done. 2. Would
 that an attack on⁴ the enemy were in progress. 3. He
 holds all his [friends] dear; me indeed⁵ [he holds] dearer
 than himself.⁶ 4. These are under (in) arms the year
 after, those remain at home.⁷ 5. The greater the fault
 is, the severer is the mortification. 6. There-was-in this

man no less vanity than recklessness.⁸ 7. He showed what he wished to have done.⁹ 8. He accomplished less than he had anticipated.¹⁰ 9. That is much more to be feared.

549.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fīebat. 2. In cōspectum hostium celerius opīnōne eōrum exercitum addūcit. 3. Eārum rērum ā nostris fiet nihil. 4. Bellī spolia māgnifica magis quam¹ ūrātiō mea vōs hortantur. 5. Carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs sunt quam nostrārum nāvium. 6. Quō dēlictum mājus est, eō poena est tardior.

II. 1. These [reports] which are talked of are less [important] than is generally supposed.¹¹ 2. [Those] who had advanced a little too far for the purpose of seeking [materials for] an embankment,¹² had¹³ to be sent for. 3. The immortal gods seemed to foreshadow these things which are now taking place. 4. The safety of my fellow citizens has always been dearer to me than my own life.⁸ 5. He has not yet learned what is in progress.

¹ Rewrite this sent. omitting **quam**.

² fuit here follows the number of the nearer substantive **pudicitia** rather than that of the more remote **omnia**.

³ Rewrite this sent. introducing **quam**.

⁴ in with accusative.

⁵ quidem; it follows the word which it emphasizes.

⁶ Use the reflexive **sē** with **ipse**.

⁷ at home, **domī**.

⁸ Express in two ways.

⁹ cf. 548, I., sent. 2.

¹⁰ less than his own expectation.

¹¹ Translate: less than opinion.

¹² cf. 386, I., sent. 1.

¹³ cf. examples in 317.

LESSON LXXII.

DEFECTIVE VERBS: **Ōdī, Coepī, Meminī.** — VERBS OF MEMORY.

550. Learn the inflection and synopsis, with meanings, of **coepī**, *I began*; **ōdī**, *I hate*; **meminī**, *I remember*: A. & G. 143, *a, b, c*, note; H. 297, I., 2; G. 190, 5.

551.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Vivōrum meminī** (Cic. *Fin.* 5, 1, 3), *I keep the living in mind.*
2. **Meminī, neque unquam oblīviscar noctis illius** (Cic. *Planc.* 42, 101), *I remember, nor shall I ever forget that night.*
3. **Alii, reminiscentēs veteris fāmae** (Nep. *Phoc.* 4, 1), *others, recalling his early fame.*
4. **Recordor nōn L. Brūtum sed legiōnēs nostrās** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 20, 74), *I call to mind not Lucius Brutus, but our legions.*
5. **Omnia meminērunt** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 7, 21), *they remember everything.*
6. **Num illa oblītus est** (Cic. *Ac.* 2, 83, 106), *did he forget those things?*
7. **Ea reminiscere** (Cic. *Fam.* 4, 5, 5), *recall these things.*
8. **Id saepe sum recordātus** (Cic. *Att.* 8, 12, 5), *I have often recalled it.*

552. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: By what cases may verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* be followed (see foregoing examples)? What seems to be the *regular* construction with **recordor** (see Exs. 4 and 8)? What case regularly follows verbs of remembering and forgetting when the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a *neuter adjective* or *pronoun* (see Exs. 5–8)? What seems to be the construction after **meminī**, **oblīviscor**, and **reminiscor** when the object remembered is *not* expressed by a *neuter adjective* or *pronoun* (see Exs. 1–3)? Frame rules embodying these observations.

553. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 219 and Rem. (last sentence); H. 406, II., 407, note 1; G. 375, Rem. 2.

554.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Semper in cīvitātē quibus¹ opēs nūllae sunt vetera
ōdēre, nova exoptant. 2. Helvētiī proeliō nostrōs lacessere
coēpērunt. 3. Mementō meī. 4. Reminiscere veteris
incommodi populi Rōmānī. 5. Plēriique mortālēs, sceleris
oblītī, dē poenā disserunt. 6. Eās rēs reminisci et re-
cordārī videntur. 7. In mūrum lapidēs jacī coeptī sunt.²
8. Intellegēbat omnēs hominēs condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse.
9. Quam multa meminērunt augurēs! 10. Probātūrus sum
vōbīs dēfēnsiōnem meam sī id memineritis, quod oblīvisci

nōn potestis. 11. Mēns mea pueritiae memoriam recordātur
ūltimam. 12. Cōstantiae tuae meminī.

II. 1. I entreat you to remember these things. 2. It is not becoming either³ to exercise partiality or³ to cherish hatred. 3. They began to follow and attack our men in (a) the rear. 4. A great quantity of dust began² to be seen. 5. Remember (pl.) us. 6. I cannot forget the old indignity. 7. Recall to mind the ancient valor of the Helvetians. 8. When I reflect on all the stages of your life, I do not see at what period you learned those things. 9. He favors the Helvetians, [but] hates Caesar. 10. Turn your thoughts from⁴ slaughter and conflagrations. 11. He forgets nothing but⁵ injuries. 12. He recalled the bitter experience of an earlier time. 13. I call to mind⁶ not the two Decii, not the two Scipios, — but our own legions.

555.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Eundem Achillam,⁷ cūjus suprā meminimus, omnibus cōpiis praefēcit. 2. Atque ego, qui oīnnia officiō mētior, recordor tamen tua cōnsilia. 3. Cum aliquō dolōre flāgitiōrum⁸ suōrum recordābitur. 4. Plērius mortālēs postrēma meminēre, et in hominibus impiis sceleris eōrum obliti dē poenā disserunt, si ea paulō sevērior fuit. 5. Parum oīdisse malōs cīvēs vidētur.

II. 1. I forget for-the-moment⁹ your injuries, Clodia. 2. The mind remembers the past, sees the present, foresees the future. 3. He exhorted the Aeduans to forget disputes and disagreement. 4. They began by putting to death¹⁰ all the worst¹¹ without trial.

¹ cf. 393 and 394.

² A. & G. 143, a (second line); H. 297, 1; G. 190, 5 (end).

³ Trans.: *it is becoming neither . . . nor.*

⁴ "turn your thoughts from" = *forget.*

⁵ "nothing but" = *nothing unless:*

⁶ *recordor.*

⁷ For declension, see **Aeneas** (or **Leōnidās**): A. & G. 37; H. 50; G. 72.

⁸ Is this the *usual* construction with *recordor*?

⁹ *jam.*

¹⁰ Trans.: *They at first began to put to death.*

¹¹ "all the worst" = *each worst*; cf. Lesson LVII., foot-note 3.

LESSON LXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF RESULT).

556.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ita mē gessī ut omnēs cōservārēminī** (*Cic. Cat.* 3, 10, 25), *I so conducted my administration that you were all saved.*
2. **Ita repente prōcurrērunt ut spatium nōn darētur** (1, 52, 3), *they ran forward so suddenly that no time was allowed.*
3. **Quis est tam lyncēus quī in tantīs tenebrīs nihil offendat** (*Cic. Fam.* 9, 2, 2), *who is so sharp-sighted as not to stumble amid such darkness (that he would not stumble, etc.).*
4. **Quae rēs, commeātūs ut ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat** (2, 5, 5), *this movement rendered it possible for supplies to be brought to him (brought it about that supplies could, etc.).*
5. **Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna** (4, 29, 1), *on the same night it chanced that it was full moon.*

557. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the dependent clauses in Exs. 1-3 express *consequence* or *result*. Such clauses are called *Consecutive Clauses*, or *Clauses of Result*. What mood is used in consecutive clauses? Is the consecutive clause in Ex. 1 *affirmative* or *negative*? What *particle* introduces it? Answer the same questions for the consecutive clause in Ex. 2. Is the negative particle of the consecutive clause the same as that of the *final clause* (see 528, Ex. 2)? Note that the consecutive clause in Ex. 3 is introduced by the *relative pronoun* (*qui*), and that *qui* is here equivalent in meaning to *ut is*. Frame a rule for the Mood and the Introductory Word to be used in Consecutive Clauses.

558. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 319 and a (first sentence); H. 500, I., II.; G. 554.

559. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the consecutive clause of Ex. 4 is the *direct object* of the verb (*efficiēbat*) on which it depends, and that the latter is a verb denoting the *accom-*

plishment of an effort. What *class* of verbs, then, do Object Clauses of Result follow? What Mood do they require? Frame a rule for Object Clauses of Result.

560. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 332; H. 501, II., 1; G. 557.

561. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the consecutive clause of Ex. 5 is the *subject* of the *impersonal verb accidit*. With what *class* of verbs, then, are Subject Clauses of Result found? What Mood do they require? Frame a rule for Subject Clauses of Result.

562. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 332, a; H. 501, I., 1; G. 558.

563. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quis potest esse tam āversus ā vērō quī neget haec omnia quae vidēmus? 2. Tantus timor exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 3. Fiēbat ut minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īferre possent. 4. Nōn tam imperītus sum rērum ut nōn sciam Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium nōn tulisse. 5. Verbōrum obscūritās facit ut nōn intellegātur rēs. 6. Fortūna vestra facit ut īrae meae temperem. 7. Illae tamen omnēs dissēnsiōnēs erant ējusmodī¹ quae nōn ad dēlendam, sed commūtandam rem pūblicam pertinērent. 8. Aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut Gallī bellī renovandī cōnsilium caperent. 9. Tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostri proelium redintegrārent.

II. 1. Sabinus gave ground for so-strong-a² suspicion of his cowardice that the enemy dared to come up even³ to the rampart of the camp. 2. Nor am I so iron-hearted as not to be affected.⁴ 3. Arioivistus had assumed such arrogance that he seemed insufferable.⁵ 4. The-result-will-be⁶ that the enemy will escape danger by their swiftness. 5. The obscurity of the subject⁷ causes the language not to be understood.⁸ 6. So stealthily did they glance at one another⁹

that they seemed to betray themselves by-their-own-actions.¹⁰

7. The Aeduans have deserved so [well] of (dē) the Roman people that their towns ought not to be assaulted.

564.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Éjusmodi*¹ sunt tempestatēs cōnsecūtae uti sub pellibus militēs continēri nōn possent. 2. Nēmō enim est tam senex qui sē annum nōn putet posse vivere. 3. Hostēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut ex jacentium corporibus pūgnārent.

II. 1. And it so happened that out of so large² a number not a single ship¹¹ was missing.¹² 2. We are not persons of such incredulity that¹³ nothing seems to us¹³ true. 3. And so, although twelve ships had been lost,¹⁴ he rendered it possible for the voyage to be made¹⁵ well enough with the rest.

¹ of such a kind, such: A. & G. 215, a; H. 396, V., n. 1; G, 364.

² tantus.

³ jam.

⁴ Translate: *that I am not affected.*

⁵ Translate: *did not seem sufferable.*

⁶ cf. 563, I., sent. 3.

⁷ Use rēs in plural.

⁸ Translate: *causes that the language is not understood.*

⁹ Translate: *among themselves.*

¹⁰ Use ipse in app. with the subject.

¹¹ "not a single ship" = *no ship at all.*

¹² "was missing" = *was missed.*

¹³ "persons of such incredulity that to us" = *those to whom.*

¹⁴ Ablative absolute.

¹⁵ Translate: *caused that it could be sailed;* use nāvigō impersonally in the passive.

LESSON LXXIV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY
QUÖMINUS AND QUİN.

565.

EXAMPLES.

1. Tē infirmitās valētūdinis tuae tenuit quō minus venīrēs (Cic. Fam. 7, 1, 1), *the feebleness of your health kept you from coming* (so that thereby [quō = ut eō] you came less).

2. Neque illis superbia obstābat quō minus aliēna Institūta imitārentur (Sall. Cat. 51, 37), *neither did pride prevent them from imitating foreign institutions.*

566. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the dependent clauses in the foregoing examples are introduced by **quod minus**. What mood do they take (see **venires**, Ex. 1, and **imitarentur**, Ex. 2)? Note also that the verbs on which these clauses depend (**tenuit**, Ex. 1, and **obstebat**, Ex. 2) are verbs of *hindering*. Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in clauses like the foregoing.

567. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 319, c; H. 505, II., 1; G. 549.

568.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Nemō est tam fortis quin rēi novitātē perturbētur** (6, 39, 3), *no one is so brave as not to be disconcerted by the unexpectedness of the situation.*
2. **Quis est quin contendat** (Sall. *Jug.* 4, 7), *who is there who does not contend?*
3. **Retinērī nōn potuerant quin tēla conicerent** (1, 47, 2), *it had not been possible to restrain them from throwing darts* (lit., *they had not been able to be restrained, etc.*)
4. **Nōn dubitābat quin summissiōrēs essent futūrae** (8, 31, 2), *he had no doubt that they would be more submissive.*
5. **Nūllum tempus intermisērunt quin lēgātōs mitterent** (5, 55, 1), *they let no occasion pass without sending ambassadors.*
6. **Facere nōn possum quin cottidiē ad tē mittam** (Cic. *Att.* 12, 27, 2), *I cannot help writing to you every day.*

569. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the consecutive clauses in the foregoing examples are introduced by **quin**, and that the leading clause in each example contains a *negative expression*. Note, further, that the *negative expression* of the leading clause is: a *general negative* (**nemō**) in Ex. 1; an *interrogative implying a negative* in Ex. 2 (**quis est = nemō est**); a *negative expression of hindering* (**retinērī nōn potuerant**) in Ex. 3; a *negative expression of doubting* (**nōn dubitābat**) in Ex. 4; and a *negative expression of omitting or refraining* (**nūllum . . . intermisērunt** and **facere nōn possum**) in Exs. 5 and 6. Frame a rule, or rules, for the use of **quin** with the Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses.

570. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 319, *d*; H. 504; G. 550, 551.

571.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Nēmō est quīn ubivīs quam ibī ubī est esse mālit.
 2. Sed custōdiīs quō¹ id sine perīculō minus¹ facerēmus impediēbāmur. 3. Nōn est dubium quīn tōtūs Galliae² plūrimum Helvētiī possint. 4. Nōn possunt mīlitēs contīnēri quīn in urbem irrumpant urbemque dēleant. 5. Neque abest suspīcio quīn ipse sibī mortem cōncīverit. 6. Quis est quīn cernat quanta vīs sit ī sēnsibus? 7. Prohibērī nōn possumus quō minus cottidiē aquam pētāmus. 8. Nōn dubitō quīn probātūrus sim vōbīs dēfēnsiōnem meam. 9. Ego nihil praetermisī quīn Pompējum ā Caesaris conjūnctiōne āvocārem. 10. Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent.

II. 1. The enemy endeavored to hinder our men from fleeing for refuge to their camp. 2. We have not³ been able to deter even³ the Suessiones from conspiring with the Belgians. 3. We do not doubt that he will inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages. 4. Nothing is so difficult that it cannot be found out by searching. 5. There is no doubt⁴ that the Romans will deprive the Aeduans of freedom.⁵ 6. Nor did he refuse to submit to the penalty of the law. 7. I cannot help⁶ declaring to you my opinion. 8. Who then can doubt⁷ that [true] wealth consists in virtue?

572.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Quis est omnium quīn divitiis et sūmptibus, nōn probitāte neque industriā cum mājōribus suis contendat? 2. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. 3. Itaque dēterritus nōn est quō minus, primā aciē prō vāllō iñstrūctā, reliqua pars exercitūs opus faceret.

II. 1. Rest assured⁸ that the Romans will wrest liberty from the Aeduans. 2. Parmenio wished to deter him from drinking

the drug. 3. Nor do we refuse to remain⁹ forever under your sway. 4. No one might¹⁰ withdraw from the line of march without being cut off by Caesar's cavalry.

¹ quōd may be separated from minus
by the intervention of other words.

⁶ See 568, Ex. 6.

² See foot-note 1, Lesson LXVIII.

⁷ What mood? See 493, Ex. 3.

³ See Lesson LXVIII., foot-note 8.

⁸ Translate: *be unwilling to doubt.*

⁴ cf. 571, I., sent. 3.

⁹ "remain" = *be.*

⁵ Translate: *wrest freedom from* (lit.,
to) *the Aeduans* (dat.).

¹⁰ Nūlli licēbat.



LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

573.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs conti-**
nērent (4, 34, 4), *there ensued storms which (of such severity*
that they) kept our men in camp.
2. **Hōc qui postulāret reperiēbātur nēmō** (Caes. *B. C.* 3, 20, 4), *no*
one was found who (so unreasonable that he) demanded this.
3. **Fuēre qui crēderent** (*Sal. Cat.* 17, 7), *there were some who believed.*
4. **Rem idōneam dē quā quaerātur, et hominēs dīgnōs qui-**
buscum disserātur putant (*Cic. Ac.* 2, 6, 18), *they consider the*
subject suitable to be inquired into, and the men worthy of being
argued with.

574. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the relative clauses of result in the foregoing examples express some *characteristic* of the antecedent. Thus the relative clause *quae ... continērent* (Ex. 1) describes the severity of the storms by saying that they kept the men in camp. Note, further, that the relative clause of characteristic follows a *general negative* (*nēmō*) in Ex. 2, an *indefinite* (omitted) antecedent in Ex. 3, an antecedent limited by *idōneam* in Ex. 4, and an antecedent limited by *dīgnōs* in Ex. 4. In what *mood* is the *verb* of a Relative Clause of Characteristic?

With what Antecedents are Relative Clauses of Characteristic especially used? Frame a rule embodying these observations.

575. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 320, *a, f*; H. 503, I., II., 2; G. 633, 634.

576.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō¹ exīre possent. 2. Erant eō tempore qui exīstīmārent indicium illud ā P. Autrōniō māchinātum.² 3. Indignī vōs estis qui in meō exercitū ōrdinēs dūcātis. 4. Voluptās est sōla³ quae nōs vocet ad sē. 5. Neque is sum qui mortis perīculō terrear. 6. Repertī sunt mīlītēs qui scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. 7. Hunc Caesar idōneum jūdīcāverat quem cum mandātīs mitteret.

II. 1. Storms followed which prevented the enemy from fighting. 2. [There] are [persons] here who urge you to revolt⁴ from us. 3. He deems Procillus a suitable [person] to send⁵ to Ariovistus. 4. He seems to be worthy to command. 5. Nor has any one been found⁶ up to this time who refused⁶ to die. 6. There were [some] who said that Catiline had passed round blood in sacrificial dishes.

577.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Qui sē ūltrō morti offerant facilius reperiuntur quam qui dolōrem patienter ferant. 2. Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum lēgātōs dē pāce misissent. 3. Quis servus libertātē⁷ dignus fuit cui nostra salūs cāra nōn esset?

II. 1. [He] who quietly obeys seems to be worthy to command. 2. In the camp of Pompey it was possible to see many things which betokened confident expectation of victory. 3. Nor is there any one who asserts that he has penetrated to the beginning of that forest. 4. There are [those] who say that Catiline has been driven into exile by me.

¹ See foot-note 1, Lesson LXXX.

⁵ cf. sent. 7, foregoing exercise.

² sc. esse.

⁶ A. & G. 287, *a*; H. 495, 1; G. 511,

³ A. & G. 320, *b*; H. 503, II., 1.

Rem. 2.

⁴ Translate: *urge that you revolt.*

⁷ cf. Lesson XXXII., foot-note 3.

LESSON LXXVI.

CONSTRUCTIONS USED WITH VERBS OF FEELING.

578.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Miserēminī sociōrum** (Cic. *Verr.* 2, 1, 28, 72), *pity* [our] *allies*.
2. **Miserēscite rēgis** (Verg. *Aen.* 8, 573), *take pity on the king*.
3. **Commūne periculum miserābantur** (1, 39, 4), *they bewailed the common danger*.

579. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **miserēminī** (Ex. 1) and **miserēscite** (Ex. 2) are *intransitive*, and mean ‘feel pity’; what *case* follows them? Note, on the other hand, that **miserābantur** is *transitive* and means ‘express pity for,’ ‘lament,’ ‘bewail’; what *case* follows it? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these verbs?

580. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 221, *a*; H. 406, I.; G. 376 (first line).

581.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tuī mē miseret, meī piget** (Eun. ap. Cic. *Div.* 1, 31, 66), *I pity thee, I loathe myself* (it pities me of thee, it loathes me of myself).
2. **Taedet omnīnō eōs vītae** (Cic. *Att.* 5, 16, 2), *they are utterly weary of life* (it wearies them of life).
3. **Mē meōrum factōrum nunquam paenitēbit** (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 10, 20), *I shall never regret my acts* (it will never repent me of my acts).
4. **Pudet mē nōn tuī quidem, sed Chrysippi** (Cic. *Div.* 2, 15, 35), *I am not ashamed of you indeed, but of Chrysippus*.

582. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **miseret** (Ex. 1), **piget** (Ex. 1), **taedet** (Ex. 2), **paenitēbit** (Ex. 3), and **pudet** (Ex. 4) are *impersonal verbs of feeling or emotion*. By what *case* is the *person experiencing the feeling* expressed? (See **mē**, Ex. 1, **eōs**, Ex. 2, **mē**, Ex. 3, **mē**, Ex. 4.) By what *case* is the *object exciting the feeling* expressed? (See **tuī** and **meī**, Ex. 1, **vītae**, Ex. 2, **factōrum**, Ex. 3, **tuī** and **Chrysippi**, Ex. 4.) Frame a rule for the constructions to be used with the foregoing Impersonals.

583. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 221, *b*; H. 409, III.; G. 376.

584.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Quid illīus interest ubī sīs** (Cic. *Att.* 10, 4, 10), *what matters it to him where you are?*
2. **Docet quantō opere commūnis salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī** (2, 5, 2), *he shows how important it is for the general safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart.*
3. **Meā māgnī interest tē ut videam** (Cic. *Att.* 11, 22, 2), *it is of great importance to me to see you.*
4. **Tuā māximē interest tē valēre** (Cic. *Fam.* 16, 4, 4), *it is of the greatest importance to you that you keep your health.*

585. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that with the *impersonal interest* the *person or thing affected* is expressed by the *genitive* in Exs. 1 and 2 (see **illīus**, Ex. 1, and **salūtis**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3 and 4 the *person interested* is expressed *not* by the genitive of the personal pronoun, as might have been expected, but by the *ablative feminine of the possessive* (see **meā**, Ex. 3, and **tuā**, Ex. 4). Frame a rule for the constructions to be used with the Impersonal *interest*, to express the Person or Thing Affected.

586. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 222, *a*; H. 408, I., 1, 2; G. 381 (both paragraphs).

587.**EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Mē meōrum cōnsiliōrum nunquam paenitēbit.
2. Misereor vestrī. 3. Miseret tē aliōrum, tuī tē nec miseret nec pudet.¹ 4. Sunt hominēs quōs īnfāmiae suae neque pudeat neque taedeat. 5. Māgnī² interest Cicerōnis, vel meā potius, vel mehercule utriusque. 6. Quis est hodiē cūjus intersit istam lēgem manēre? 7. Māgnī² interest tuā et meā. 8. Allobrogēs Umbrēnum ōrābant ut suī miserērētur. 9. Miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam. 10. Dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō

paenitēre necesse est. 11. Mē cīvitātis mōrum piget tae-detque.

II. 1. You are neither sorry for nor ashamed of yourself. 2. It concerns the general safety for me to have a conference with Ariovistus. 3. The women bewailed their little children. 4. I have not been dissatisfied with my soldiers, nor you with your leader. 5. It is highly² important to me for us to be together. 6. They are neither ashamed of their infamy nor weary [of it]. 7. It is of more³ importance to them than to me. 8. He demands that they have compassion on him.⁴ 9. Can any one pity us?

588.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Nōn tam meā quam r̄ei p̄ublicae interest utī salvus sim. 2. Plērius eōrum qui ante mē sententiās dixēre, cāsum r̄ei p̄ublicae miserāti sunt. 3. Eōrum nōs magis miseret qui nostram misericordiam nōn requirunt, quam qui illam efflāgitant. 4. Hūjus post mortem, populum jūdicii sui paenitēbat.

II. 1. It matters very little⁵ to me. 2. Caesar used to say that it was not so important for himself⁶ as for the state that he should be preserved. 3. Do you not feel that you dishonor⁷ this temple, the city,⁸ life,⁸ light⁸? 4. I pity the misfortunes of Jugurtha. 5. Every one is dissatisfied with his own lot.

¹ For the arrangement of the words in this sentence, see references under Lesson XXI., foot-note 21.

² A. & G. 252, *a*; H. 408, III.; G. 382, 1.

³ *magis*.

⁴ A. & G. 196, *a*; H. 449, 1; G. 521.

⁵ *minimē*.

⁶ Proper form of *suus*.

⁷ "Do you not feel that you dishonor this temple?" = *does it not shame you of this temple?*

⁸ Repeat "not" with each substantive.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: PRESENT AND PAST SUPPOSITIONS.

PRESENT AND PAST SUPPOSITIONS, PROTASIS INDETERMINATE.

589. EXAMPLES.

1. **Si mē cōnsulis, suādeō** (*Cic. Cat.* 1, 5, 13), *if you ask my advice, I recommend [it].*
2. **Si quisquam fuit unquam remōtus ab inānī laude, ego profectō is sum** (*Cic. Fam.* 15, 4, 13), *if there ever was any one indifferent to empty applause, I assuredly am the man.*
3. **Sin autem servīre meae glōriae māvis, ēgredere** (*Cic. Cat.* 1, 9, 23), *if, however, you prefer to minister to my glory, depart.*
4. **Si stāre nōn possunt, corruant** (*Cic. Cat.* 2, 10, 21), *if they cannot stand, let them fall.*

590. EXPLANATION OF TERMS: Sentences like the foregoing, containing a clause introduced by **si**, *if*, or one of its compounds (see **sin**, Ex. 3), are called *Conditional Sentences*. The clause expressing the *condition* (**si . . . cōnsulis**, Ex. 1, **si . . . laude**, Ex. 2, **sin . . . māvis**, Ex. 3, **si . . . possunt**, Ex. 4) is called the *Protasis*; the clause expressing the *conclusion* (**suādeō**, Ex. 1, **ego . . . sum**, Ex. 2, **ēgredere**, Ex. 3, **corruant**, Ex. 4) is called the *Apodosis*.

591. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *Protasis* in the foregoing examples *simply states* a supposed case, without implying either that it is *true* or that it is *false*. Thus, **si mē cōnsulis**, *if you ask my advice* (Ex. 1), does not imply that the person addressed either *does* or *does not* ask the advice of the speaker. Note, further, that the *Protasis* expresses a *present* supposition in Exs. 1, 3, and 4; and a *past* supposition in Ex. 2. In what *mood* is the verb of the *Protasis* in each of these examples (see **cōnsulis**, Ex. 1; **fuit**, Ex. 2; **māvis**, Ex. 3; **possunt**, Ex. 4)? Is there a like uniformity as to mood in the verbs of the *Apodosis* (see **suādeō**, Ex. 1; **sum**, Ex. 2; **ēgredere**, Ex. 3; **corruant**, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the use of Moods in *Conditional Sentences* like the foregoing.

592. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 306; H. 508 and 4; G. 597.

PRESENT AND PAST SUPPOSITIONS, PROTASIS FALSE.

593.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Servi mei si mē metuerent, domum meam relinquendam putārem** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 7, 17), *if my slaves feared me, I should think that I ought to leave house and home.*
2. [Vitam] si ēripuiisset, multās animi atque corporis poenās adēmisset (Cic. *Cat.* 4, 4, 8), *if he had taken away life, he would have relieved [them] of many torments of mind and body.*
3. **Magis id dicerēs, si adfuiissēs** (Cic. *Lael.* 7, 25), *you would say so all the more, if you had been there.*
4. **Si imperfectus easet, quid dicerent** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 7, 15), *what would they say, if he had been put to death?*

594. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in each of the foregoing examples states the supposed case in such a way as to imply its *falsity*. Thus, **servi mei si mē metuerent, if my slaves feared me** (Ex. 1), implies that the speaker's slaves *do not* fear him; and **si . . . adfuiissēs, if you had been there** (Ex. 3), implies that the person addressed *was not* there.

Note, further, that the Protasis expresses a *present* supposition in Ex. 1, and a *past* supposition in Exs. 2, 3, and 4; also, that the verb of the Apodosis refers to *present* time in Exs. 1, 3, and 4, and to *past* time in Ex. 2.

What *mood* is used in both Protasis and Apodosis in these examples? What *tense* is used for *present* time? for *past* time? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tense in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

595. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 308; H. 510 and n. 1; G. 599.

596.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Si iterum experīrī volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre. 2. Si Catilīna in urbe remānsisset, nunquam nōs rem pūblicam liberāssēmus. 3. Parcite dīgnitātī Lentulī si

ipse fāmae suae unquam pepercit. 4. Sī quid mihi ā Cae-sare opus esset, ego ad eum vēnissem. 5. Id ego sī verbō adsequī possem, istōs ipsōs ēicerem. 6. Sī et in urbe et in eādem mente permanent, ea quae merentur exspectent. 7. Mihi sī haec condiciō cōnsulātūs data est, feram nōn sōlum fortiter vērum etiam libenter. 8. Sī in hunc animadver-tissem, crūdēliter fēcissem.

II. 1. If they wish to enjoy peace, it is unfair [for them] to refuse [to pay]¹ the tribute. 2. Bring back the men if you wish to be free from suspicion in-my-eyes.² 3. If there were room for error, I should readily permit [it]. 4. If he had been conscious³ of [having done] any wrong, it would not have been difficult [for him] to be on his guard. 5. Pardon the young⁴ Cethegus⁴ if he has not a second time made war on his country. 6. Still, if it is your pleasure, let it be voted. 7. Nor would you, if you were an Athenian, ever have been illustrious. 8. Would⁵ he,⁶ then, if he had lived to be a hundred years⁷ old, regret⁶ his old age?

597.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Huic fācinori sī paucōs putātis adfinēs esse, vehementer errātis. 2. Sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet. 3. Si hōc idem huic adulēscētī optimō P. Sēstīo dixisse, jam mihi senātus vim et manūs intulisset. 4. Sī id culpā senectūtis acci-deret, eadem mihi ūsū venirent.

II. 1. If you cannot die contentedly, do you hesitate to con-sign your life to flight and solitude? 2. If your parents hated you, you would, as I think, withdraw to some place out of their sight.⁸ 3. If Catiline had come off conqueror, doubtless great bloodshed and disaster would have overwhelmed the country.

¹ recūsāre dē.

² mihi.

³ Translate: *conscious to himself.*

⁴ Translate: *the youth of Cethegus.*

⁵ What inter. particle? cf. 417, Ex. 4.

⁶ cf. 581, Ex. 3.

⁷ *had lived to the hundredth year.*

⁸ ab eōrum oculis.

LESSON LXXVIII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: FUTURE SUPPOSITIONS.

598.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nunquam labere si te audiēs** (Cic. *Fam.* 2, 7, 1), *you will never err if you (shall) follow your own convictions (hear yourself).*
2. **Si iste unus tollētur, periculum residebit** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 13, 31), *if he alone (shall) be removed, the danger will remain.*
3. **Vix feram sermōnēs hominum si id fēceris** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 9, 23), *it will be hard for me to endure men's criticisms if you do (shall have done) this.*

599. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in each of the foregoing examples states a supposed *future* case with *vividness*, though without implying either that it will or that it will not be fulfilled. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in both Protasis and Apodosis in this form of conditional sentence? Note that, in Ex. 3, the action expressed by the verb of the Protasis (**fēceris**) is represented as *completed* at the time denoted by the verb of the Apodosis (**feram**) ; what *tense* is used to express this completeness? Note, further, that the verbs of the Protasis in the foregoing examples are rendered by the *present* tense in the English translation; in such cases, which language is the more exact, the Latin or the English? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tenses in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

600. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 307 (to the semicolon), *a, c* (omit what follows the comma in the third line); H. 508 and 2; G. 597.

601.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Si quis deus mihi largiātur ut repuerāscam, valdē recūsem** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 23, 83), *if some god should freely grant me the privilege of becoming a child again, I should stoutly refuse it.*

2. **Ego si Scipiōnis dēsideriō mē movērī negem, mentiar** (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 10), *if I should say that I am not affected with grief at the loss of Scipio, I should speak falsely.*
3. **Si gladium quis apud tē sānā mente dēposuerit, repeatat Insāniēns, reddere peccātum sit** (Cic. *Off.* 3, 25, 94), *if a man should deposit (should have deposited) with you a sword [when] in his right mind, and should ask it back again [when] insane, it would be wrong to restore it.*

602. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Protasis in the foregoing examples states the supposed future case with *less vividness* than in the examples of 598, and thereby represents the fulfillment of the supposed case as somewhat less probable. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in both Protasis and Apodosis in this form of conditional sentence? Note that, in Ex. 3, the action expressed by the verb of the first Protasis (*dēposuerit*) is represented as *completed* at the time denoted by the verb of the Apodosis (*sit*); what *tense* is used to express this completeness? Frame a rule for the use of Mood and Tenses in Conditional Sentences like the foregoing.

603. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 307, *b, c*; H. 509 and n. 1; G. 598.

604.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nisi dēcēdēs, ego tē prō hoste habēbō. 2. Si discēsseris, māgnō ego tē praemiō remūnerābor. 3. Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat? 4. Si quis deus tē interroget, quid respondeās? 5. Si poterimus, castellum expūgnābimus; sī minus potuerimus, agrōs Rēmōrum populābimus. 6. Si vim facere cōnābimī, prohibēbō. 7. Si tē interfēcerō, multis ego nōbilibus grātum faciam.

II. 1. If we can,¹ we shall destroy the bridge; if we cannot,¹ we shall cut off the Romans from supplies. 2. I could not go away if I should wish [to]. 3. If you give satisfaction to the Aeduans for (dē) the injuries [you have done

them], I shall make peace with you. 4. Ought not² the country to obtain her request, even if she should not be able to apply force? 5. If this (pl.) is reported³ to Ario-vistus, he will inflict punishment on (*dē*) the hostages. 6. If you do³ this, there will be lasting friendship between you and the Roman people.⁴

605.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. *Etiam sī hominum studia dēficiant, dī⁵ ipsī immortālēs cōgant tanta vitia superāri.* 2. *Si sē ejēcerit, sēcumque suōs edūixerit, exstinguētur atque dēlēbitur stirps āc sēmen malōrum omnium.* 3. *Si quis pater familiās,⁶ liberis suis ā servō interfectis, supplicium dē servō nōn sūmpserit, utrum⁷ is clēmēns an crūdēllissimus esse videātur?* 4. *Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex his regiōnibus, ego tē nōn prō amicō sed hoste habēbō.* 5. *Pietātē adversus deōs sublātā,⁸ fidēs etiam et jūstitia tollātur.*

II. 1. If they should remain in Rome,⁹ they would be rescued by a hired mob. 2. If this takes place it will be [attended] with great danger to the province.¹⁰ 3. If any [punishment] of undue severity is inflicted upon him¹¹ by Caesar, no one will suppose that it was not done at¹² my desire.

¹ cf. sent. 5, preceding exercise.

² cf. 604, sent. 3.

³ cf. sent. 2, preceding exercise.

⁴ Translate: *to the Roman people with you.*

⁵ See 373, foot-note 3.

⁶ A. & G. 36, b; H. 49, 1; G. 27, Rem. 1.

⁷ Omit in translation.

⁸ Trans. by a conditional clause. Expand the abl. abs. into the ordinary form of protasis.

⁹ cf. Lesson XXVII., foot-note 11.

¹⁰ Use the genitive.

¹¹ Translate: *if anything too-severe shall have happened to him from Caesar.*

¹² Use ablative of cause.

LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.—CLAUSES OF PROVISO.

606.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quamquam premēbantur, tamen omnia fortissimō sustinēbant animō** (8, 42, 3), *although they were hard pressed, still they endured everything with the bravest spirit.*
2. **Senectūs, quamvis nōn sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditatem** (Cic. *Lael.* 3, 11), *old age, though it be not burdensome, yet takes away one's vigor.*
3. **Etsī mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen contendit** (4, 20, 1), *although the winters set in early, he hastened notwithstanding.*
4. **Nōnne impetrāre dēbeat, etiamsī vim adhibēre nōn possit** (Cic. *Cat.* 1, 8, 19), *ought she not to obtain her request, even though she should not be able to employ force?*

607. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the clauses in the foregoing examples introduced by **quamquam** (Ex. 1), **quamvis** (Ex. 2), **etsī** (Ex. 3), and **etiamsī** (Ex. 4) express something granted or conceded. For this reason they are called *Concessive Clauses*. Note that the Concessive Clause introduced by **quamquam** (Ex. 1), unlike that introduced by **quamvis** (Ex. 2), concedes an *admitted fact*, and therefore takes the *indicative mood* (see **premēbantur**). What *mood* does the Concessive Clause introduced by **quamvis** take (see **sit**, Ex. 2)? Note that **etsī** (Ex. 3) and **etiamsī** (Ex. 4) are compounds of **sī**, and that, like **sī**, they take the *indicative or subjunctive* as already explained (Lessons LXXVII.–VIII.). Frame rules for the Mood of the verb in Concessive Clauses.

608. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 313, *a, c, e*; H. 515, I., II., III.; G. 605, 1–3, 606, 607, 608.

609.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dum locus pūgnandī darētur, singulās bīnis nāvibus obiciēbant** (*Caes. B. C.* 1, 58, 4), *provided an opportunity of fighting presented itself, they matched one ship against two.*

2. **Mānent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria** (*Cic. Cat. Maj.* 7, 22), *the old retain their mental powers* (powers remain to the old), *if only industry hold out.*

3. **Māgnō mē metū liberābis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit** (*Cic. Cat.* 1, 5, 10), *you will free me from great fear, if only there be a wall between you and me.*

610. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the clauses in the foregoing examples introduced by **dum** (Ex. 1), **modo** (Ex. 2), and **dum modo** (Ex. 3) express a *proviso* or *condition*; what mood do they take (see **darētur**, Ex. 1, **permaneat**, Ex. 2, and **intersit**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in clauses like the foregoing.

611. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 314; H. 513, I.; G. 575.

612.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Sed est tantī¹ dum modo ista rēi pūblicae perīculīs sējungātūr calamitās.* 2. *Quamquam crēbrō audiēbat Labiēnum ab inimīcīs suīs sollicitārī, tamen nōn crēdīdit.* 3. *Etiamsī Catilīna perierit, in rē pūblicā sēminārium Catilīnārum erit.* 4. *Nōn igitur potestās est cōservandae rēi pūblicae, quamvīs ea premātūr perīculīs.* 5. *Neque, dum sībī rēgnūm parāret, quicquām pēnsī habēbat.²* 6. *Illa, quamquam ferenda nōn fuērunt, tamen tulī.* 7. *Homiūes, quamvīs in turbidīs rēbus sint, tamen interdūm animīs relaxantur.³*

II. 1. Even though he receives the injury, he yet seems to commit [it]. 2. You at any rate assented to⁴ my departure, provided I should be at Rome⁵ on the first⁶ of January. 3. The Romans, although they were weary of marching⁷ and fighting,⁷ yet eagerly⁸ advanced to meet [him]. 4. And yet⁹ that flattery, pernicious though¹⁰ it be, can nevertheless injure no one but¹¹ him who is pleased by it. 5. He spared neither expense nor his own honor, if only he might make them faithful to himself.

613.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Sed quamquam haec tālia sunt, tamen obviam ire inimicis meis animus mē subigit. 2. Ista vēritās etiamsi jūcunda¹² nōn est, mihi tamen grāta¹² est. 3. Nihil tam difficile est quod nōn cupidissimē factū simus, dum ea rēs civitātem aere alienō liberet. 4. Quamvis nōn fueris suāsor et impulsor profectiōnis meae, approbātor certē fuistī.

II. 1. Life is short, though it extend beyond a thousand years. 2. But Sulla, although he held the same opinion,¹³ nevertheless protected the Moor from injury. 3. They will shrink from no peril, provided the province be restored to Caesar through their efforts.¹⁴

- ¹ est tantū, *it is worth such a price:*
 A. & G. 252, a; H. 404, n. 1; G. 379.
² Neque quicquam pēnsī habēbat, *nor did he have any scruple.*
³ animis relaxantur, *unbend.*
⁴ you were approver of.
⁵ cf. foot-note 11, Lesson XXVII.
⁶ "first" = *Kalends.*
⁷ Ablative.
⁸ intentus (adj.) in agreement with subject.

- ⁹ A. & G. 313, f; H. 515, n. 2; G. 607, Rem. 2.
¹⁰ cf. 606, Ex. 2.
¹¹ "no one but" = *no one unless.*
¹² jūcundus, *agreeable, because to one's taste;* grātus, *welcome, because valuable in itself.*
¹³ *to hold the same opinion, eadem existimare.*
¹⁴ Translate: *through themselves.*



LESSON LXXX.

 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS: GENITIVE WITH VERBS
 OF CONDEMNING, ETC.—Egeō AND Indigeō.
 DATIVE WITH Ēripiō, ETC.

614.

EXAMPLES.

- Principēs cīvitātis insimulāti [sunt] prōditiōnis (7, 38, 2),
the foremost men in the state have been charged with treachery.
- Prōditiōnis damnātus est (Nep. Th. 8, 2), *he was condemned for treason.*

3. **Videō tē absolūtum esse improbitātis** (*Cic. Verr.* 2, 1, 28, 72),
I see that you were acquitted of wrong doing.

615. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that *insimulāti* sunt (Ex. 1), *damnātus est* (Ex. 2), and *absolūtum esse* (Ex. 3) are verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting* respectively. By what *case* is the *charge* expressed with these verbs (see *prōditiōnis*, Ex. 1, *prōditiōnis*, Ex. 2, *improbitātis*, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the construction to be used with these and similar verbs.

- 616. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 220; H. 409, II. and n. 2; G. 377.

617.

EXAMPLES.

1. **NIL attigit nisi arma, quōrum indigēbat** (*Nep. Thr.* 2, 6), *he touched nothing but arms, and of these he stood in need.*
2. **[Eōs], quibus rēbus indiguērunt, adjūvit** (*Nep. Att.* 9, 3), *he aided them with those things of which they stood in need.*
3. **Neque cōsili neque audāciae egūere** (*Sall. Cat.* 51, 37), *they lacked neither caution nor boldness.*
4. **Alterum alterius auxiliō eget** (*Sall. Cat.* 1, 7), *each (of these two things) needs the aid of the other.*

618. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: It has already been shown that verbs denoting *want* regularly take the *ablative* (Lesson LXVI.). With what *cases* is *indigeō* construed in the foregoing examples (see *quōrum*, Ex. 1, and *rēbus*, Ex. 2)? What *cases* may be used with *egeō* (see *cōsili* and *audāciae*, Ex. 3, and *auxiliō*, Ex. 4)? Frame a special rule for these two verbs.

- 619. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION:** A. & G. 223; H. 410, V., 1; G. 389, Rem. 2.

620.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Id mihi tū abstulisti** (*Cic. Div. in Caecil.* 5, 19), *you have robbed me of that (have taken that away to my hurt).*
2. **Haec illi dētrahenda auxilia existimābat** (6, 5, 5), *he thought that these allies ought to be detached from him (withdrawn to his injury).*

3. **Mihī timōrem ēripe** (*Cic. Cat. 1, 7, 18*), *free me from fear* (*take away fear as a favor to me*).

621. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: It has already been shown that verbs of *separation* usually take the *ablative* (Lesson LXVI.). Note, however, that, in the foregoing examples, **abstulisti** (Ex. 1), **dētrahenda** (Ex. 2), and **ēripe** (Ex. 3) are construed with the *dative* (see: **mihī**, Ex. 1, **illī**, Ex. 2, and **mihī**, Ex. 3). Note, further, that the dative in these examples designates the *person*, and that the action expressed by the verb of separation is viewed as something done *to* or *for* the person affected. Frame a rule for this use of the Dative.

622. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 229; H. 386, 2; G. 346 (end).

623.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōnnūllōs ambitūs Pompējā lēge damnātōs in integrum restituit. 2. Tuāsne injūriās persecuar ipse auxili egēns? 3. Populī Rōmānī beneficium mihi per contumēliam ab inimīcīs extorquētur. 4. Sī ille nōn fuisse¹, Agēsilāus Asiam rēgī ēripuisse¹. 5. Accūsātus capitīs absolvitur, multātūr tamen pecūniā. 6. Sī quis opis ējus indigēbat, habēbat quod statim daret.

II. 1. Unless you return,² we shall condemn you to death. 2. No one of (*ex*) the common people lacked aid against [an enemy] more powerful [than himself]. 3. You have been deprived of life before your time.³ 4. He seized a shield from a⁴ soldier in the rear.⁵ 5. And, by Hercules, Sulla, before I knew you,⁶ I needed no one.⁷ 6. What [punishment] is too severe for⁸ men convicted of so heinous a crime?

624.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Sin autem vitam mihi fors adēmerit, hi omnia tibī prō mē persolvent. 2. Summae iniqūitatis condemnārī dēbēō nisi vestram vitam mēā salūte habeō cāriōrem. 3. Ptolomaeum alienārum opum indigentem recēperat. 4. Multi praetereā capitīs damnātī exsulēsque convēnerant.

- II. 1. All are at liberty⁹ to lay down their arms¹⁰ without risk of injury except [those] condemned⁹ for capital offences.
 2. This man's army should have been taken from him.¹¹ 3. This town lacked nothing [that was] serviceable.¹²

¹ If it had not been for him.

² cf. 598, Exs. 1 and 2.

³ Translate: Life has been taken away from you before-your-time (immātūrus).

⁴ Use the proper form of unus.

⁵ ab novissimis.

⁶ Translate: before you known.

⁷ In the genitive and ablative, nūllus (not nēmō) must be used for no one.

⁸ Use in with accusative.

⁹ Translate: it is permitted to all except to [those] condemned.

¹⁰ Translate: to withdraw from arms.

¹¹ Translate: From this man [his] army was to be taken (pass. periphr.).

¹² Translate: no serviceable thing.



LESSON LXXXI.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES : Postquam, Ubi, Ut, Simul Atque; Cum (Temporal).

625.

EXAMPLES.

- Postquam cōpiās venīre vīdit, flūmen exercitū trādūcere mātūrāvit (2, 5, 4), when he saw that the forces were advancing, he hastened to convey his army across the river.
- Ubi sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida incendunt (1, 5, 2), when they thought that they were ready, they burnt the towns.
- Sed Pompējus, ut equitātum suū pulsum vīdit, sē in castra equō contulit (Caes. B. C. 3, 94, 5), but Pompey, when he had seen his cavalry routed, spurred into camp.
- Simul atque sīgna nostra vīdērunt, portās aperuērunt (Caes. B. C. 1, 18, 2), as soon as they beheld our standards, they opened their gates.

626. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *temporal clauses* in the foregoing examples refer to a *definite point of past time*, and that they are introduced by **postquam** (Ex. 1), **ubi** (Ex. 2), **ut** (Ex. 3), and **simul atque** (Ex. 4), respectively. In what *mood* and *tense* are the verbs of these temporal clauses (see: **vīdit**, Ex. 1, **arbitrātī sunt**, Ex. 2, **vīdit**, Ex. 3, and **vīdērunt**, Ex. 4)? Note, further, that the verb of the temporal clause may be trans-

lated by the *pluperfect* (see *had seen*, Ex. 3). Frame a rule for the Mood and Tense of the Verb in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

627.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Cum cīvitās armīs jūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est** (1, 4, 3), *when the state undertook to maintain its authority by force of arms, Orgetorix died.*
2. **Haec cum flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ējus dextram prēndit** (1, 20, 6), *as he in tears was urging these requests on Caesar, Caesar grasped his hand.*
3. **Diū cum esset pūgnātūm, castris nostrī potiti sunt** (1, 26, 4), *after a long struggle (when the battle had been fought a long time), our men got possession of the camp.*
4. **Cum trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs . . .** (2, 16, 1), *after marching three days, he learned from prisoners . . .*

628. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *temporal clauses* in the foregoing examples, like those of 625, refer to *past time*, but that they are introduced by **cum**. Note, further, that in the present examples the attention of the writer is fixed on the *main action*, and that the temporal clause merely marks in an *incidental* way the time of its occurrence. What *mood* and what *tenses* are used in the foregoing temporal clauses (see **cōnārētur**, Ex. 1, **peteret**, Ex. 2, **esset pūgnātūm**, Ex. 3, and **fēcisset**, Ex. 4)? Which of these tenses denotes the *same time* as the leading verb? which *time prior*? Frame a rule for the Mood and Tense to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses of Narration.

629. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION of Rules framed under 626 and 628: A. & G. 323, 324, 325; H. 518, n. 1, 521, II., 2; G. 563, 586.

630.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaerēret, sīc reperiēbat. 2. Ubi lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat¹ sē posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare. 3. Quō cum Catilīna vēnisset, quis eum senātor appellāvit? 4. Caesar, postquam in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsire cōn-

stituit. 5. Cum haesitāret, cum tenērētur, quaeſīvī quid² dubitāret proficisci. 6. Quō ut ventum est, Alexandrīnī trepidantēs in omnēs partēs castrōrum discurrere coepērunt. 7. Quō cum vēnisset,³ cōgnōscīt¹ missum in Hispāniām ā Pompējō Vibullium Rūfum. 8. Simul atque oppidānī ī spem auxiliī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō, arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt.

II. 1. When (*ubī*) the Helvetians had been informed⁴ of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 2. Having noted⁵ these [facts], he called an assembly⁶ [and] severely upbraided them. 3. Caesar on perceiving⁷ this withdrew his forces to the nearest hill. 4. When (*cum*) these [ships] were drawing near to Britain, and were in sight⁸ from the camp, a storm suddenly arose. 5. As soon as they had recovered⁴ from flight, they sent envoys for (*dē*) peace. 6. Having said⁵ these things, he swore that he would not return to camp except (*nisi*) [as] victor. 7. On returning⁹ thence, he followed the camp of Gajus Claudius Nero.

631.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Ubi sē diūtiū dūci intellēxit, convocātis eōrum principi- bus, graviter eōs accūsat.¹ 2. Cum advesperāsceret, occultē ad pontem Mulvium pervēnērunt. 3. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. 4. Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset,⁸ mātūrat¹ ab urbe proficisci.

II. 1. When he inquired what communities were in arms, he learned as follows. 2. When Caesar arrived there (*eō*), he demanded hostages, arms, [and] slaves. 3. On his departure for Italy, Caesar dispatched Servius Galba with the twelfth legion to (*in*) the Nantuates. 4. In this community two were contending with each other¹⁰ for (*dē*) supremacy; of whom one,¹¹ as soon as intelligence-was-received¹² of Caesar's arrival, came to him.

¹ See refs. Lesson LXIX., foot-note 3.

² *why* (adv. acc.).

³ See refs. Lesson LXIX., foot-note 5.

⁴ For tense, cf. 625, Ex. 3.

⁵ Use *cum* with temporal clause.

⁶ Ablative absolute.

⁷ Use *postquam*.

⁸ “were in sight” = *were seen*.

⁹ Use *ut* with temporal clause.

¹⁰ Translate: *between themselves*.

¹¹ *alter*.

¹² Use *cōgnōscō* impersonally.

LESSON LXXXII.

CUM WITH THE INDICATIVE IN TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

632.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vénit, alterius factiōnis p̄incipēs erant Aedui** (6, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were at the head of one party.*
2. **Tum cum ex urbe Catilinam Siciēbam . . . putābam . . .** (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 2, 3), *at the time when I was striving to drive Catiline out of the city . . . I supposed . . .*
3. **Tum cum r̄es māgnās permulti āmiserant, sc̄imus fidem concidisse** (Cic. *Manil.* 7, 19), *at the time when a great many had lost large fortunes, we know that there was a financial panic (credit fell prostrate).*
4. **Cum tū haec legēs, illum Rōmae esse oportēbit** (Cic. *Fam.* 12, 30, 5), *by the time this letter reaches you, he will be due in Rome.*

633. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses introduced by **cum** in the foregoing examples, unlike those of 627, mark the time of the main action *with definiteness and precision*. What mood does **cum** take under these circumstances (see *vénit*, Ex. 1, *Siciēbam*, Ex. 2, *āmiserant*, Ex. 3, *legēs*, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

634.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Factum periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum laudem exercitus meritus vidēbātur** (1, 40, 5), *a trial was made within the memory of our fathers, on which occasion (= and on that occasion) the army appeared to have merited praise.*
2. **Hōc facere apparābant, cum mātrēsfamiliae repente prōcurrērunt** (7, 26, 3), *they were getting ready to do this, when suddenly the matrons rushed forth.*
3. **Vix agmen novissimum prōcēsserat, cum Gallī flūmen trānsire nōn dubitant** (6, 8, 1), *scarcely had the rear advanced, when the Gauls without hesitation crossed the river.*

635. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses introduced by **cum** in the foregoing examples express the *main statement*; in other words, that the temporal clause, although subordinate in *form* (grammatically), is *principal in thought* (logically). What *mood* does **cum** take under these circumstances (see: **vidēbātur**, Ex. 1, **prōcurrērunt**, Ex. 2, **dubitant**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

636.**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Cum singulās bīnae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī contendēbant** (3, 15, 1), whenever (i.e., if in any case) two ships had been brought to bear on one, the soldiers would struggle with all their might.
2. **Cum sē inter turmās insinuāvērunt, dēsiliunt** (4, 33, 1), whenever (i.e., if in any case) they have worked their way into the squadrons, they leap down.

637. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **cum** in the foregoing examples means *whenever*, and that the temporal clause is equivalent to the *protasis of a general supposition*. What *mood* does **cum** take under these circumstances (see: **circumsteterant**, Ex. 1, **insinuāvērunt**, Ex. 2)? Frame a rule for the Mood to be used with **cum** in Temporal Clauses like the foregoing.

638. CAUTION: It has been shown in the preceding lesson (**627, 628, 629**) that in *temporal clauses of narration*, **cum** with the *imperfect* or *pluperfect tense* commonly takes the *subjunctive*; is this true of the temporal clauses illustrated in the present lesson (see: **ēiciēbam**, **632**, Ex. 2; **āmiserant**, **632**, Ex. 3; **vidēbātur**, **634**, Ex. 1; **circumsteterant**, **636**, Ex. 1)?

639. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION of Rules framed under **633, 635, 637**: A. & G. 325, a, b, c, 309, c; H. 521, I., II., 1; G. 582, 585.

640.**EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Sed tum cum illum exterminārī volēbam, eōs īfir-mōs sine illō fore¹ putābam. 2. Neque vērō, cum aliquid

mandārat, cōfectum putābat. 3. Dumnacus īstruit aciem, quae suīs esset² equitibus praeſidiō, cum repente legiōnēs in cōspectum veniunt. 4. Haec cum facta sunt in conciliō, māgnā spē et laetitiā omnium discēſsum est.³ 5. Ad equōs sē celeriter, cum ūſus est, recipiunt. 6. Repentīnā ruīnā pars ējus turris concidit, cum hostēs inermēs sē ūniversī prōripiunt.

II. 1. The legions were a mile distant, when Scipio, fearing that⁴ he should lose the town, led out all his forces. 2. Whenever our cavalry made-a-raid⁵ on the fields, he would let-loose⁶ his chariot men. 3. When I was-striving-to-expel⁷ him from the city, I had this in view. 4. O glorious day,⁸ when I shall depart to join⁹ that divine company of spirits! 5. But whenever the supply of this class fails,¹⁰ they have recourse to the sacrifice of the innocent. 6. And now Sulla was marking out the camp, when the horsemen announced that Jugurtha had encamped.

641.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Cum quaepiam cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. 2. Jamque ā Labiēnō nōn longē aberant, cum duās vēniſſe legiōnēs cōgnōſcunt. 3. O praeclārum diem, cum ex hāc turbā et conluiōne discēdam!

II. 1. [He] who does not ward off injury from his [friends] whenever he can, acts unjustly. 2. He had shaken the enemy at the first attack, when suddenly a new army bursts into view. 3. In other matters, loss is experienced at-the-moment (**tum**) when disaster comes.

¹ fore = futūrōs esse.

² Account for mood and tense.

³ the assembly dispersed; cf. Exs.,

522.

⁴ cf. 534, Ex. 4.

⁵ Use the pluperfect.

⁶ For tense, cf. 636, Ex. 1.

⁷ For tense, cf. 632, Ex. 2.

⁸ Use the accusative.

⁹ Express "to join" by in with accusative.

¹⁰ Use the perfect tense.

LESSON LXXXIII.

CUM IN CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

642.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Aedui, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt** (1, 11, 2), *the Aedui, since they could not defend themselves, sent envoys to Caesar.*
2. **Quae cum ita sint, vestra tecta dēfendite** (Cic. *Cat.* 2, 12, 26), *this being the case (since these things are thus), defend your dwellings.*
3. **Cum primō impudenter respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum nihil negāvit** (Cic. *Cat.* 3, 5, 12), *although at first he had begun to reply defiantly, at the end he denied nothing.*

643. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the clauses introduced by **cum** in Exs. 1 and 2 express *cause*; what *mood* do they take (see **possent**, Ex. 1, and **sint**, Ex. 2)? Note that the clause introduced by **cum** in Ex. 3 expresses *concession*; what *mood* does it take (see **coepisset**)? Frame a rule for the *Mood* to be used with **cum** in clauses denoting Cause or Concession.

644. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 326; H. 515, III., 517; G. 581, III., 1, 2.

645.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ō terram illam beātam quae hunc virum excēperit** (Cic. *Mil.* 38, 105), *O happy the land which shall receive (shall have received) this man!*
2. **Ō praeclārum diem cum in illud divīnum animōrum concilium proficiscar** (Cic. *Cat. Maj.* 23, 84), *O glorious day, when I shall depart to join that divine company of spirits!*

646. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **terram** (Ex. 1) and **diem** (Ex. 2) are used in *exclamations*; in what *case* are they? Frame a rule for the Case of Substantives used in Exclamations.

647. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 240, *d*; H. 381; G. 340.

648.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Quae cum ita sint, patres conscripti, vobis populi Rōmānī praesidia nōn dēsunt. 2. O tempora! O mōrē! senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt: hīc tamen vivit. 3. Militēs, cum frigore et adsiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt. 4. O mē miserum, o mē infēlīcem! revocāre tū mē in patriam potuīstī, ego tē in patriā retinēre nōn poterō? 5. Hīc cum per sē minus valērent, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adjūnixerant. 6. Cum pīmī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen acerrimē reliquī resistēbant.

II. 1. Notwithstanding this,¹ I shall nevertheless make peace with you if you make reparation² to the Aedui for (*ās*) injuries. 2. Verily, if this man's comrades follow him,³ [how] happy [shall] we [be], [how] fortunate the commonwealth! 3. It is a very easy matter,⁴ as (*cum*) we excel all in valor, to obtain control of all Gaul. 4. Not being able⁵ to sustain the assaults of our men, they betook themselves to their baggage and wagons. 5. O wretched lot! 6. Although the Suebi had not been able to drive out the Ubii, they nevertheless compelled them to pay tribute.⁶

649.**Supplementary Exercises.**

I. 1. Illi, cum neque vi contendere neque clam trānsire possent, reverti sē ī suās sēdēs simulāvērunt. 2. At hostēs, cum ipsi nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs⁷ habērent, celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt. 3. O praeclārum mūnus aetatis, sī quidem id aufert ā nōbis quod est in adulēscētiā vitiōsissimum!

II. 1. The Helvetians, because (*cum*) they knew that he had crossed the river in a single day, sent ambassadors to him. 2. Caesar, although there was no doubt whatever⁸ about the purpose of his adversaries, sent back the legion to Pompey. 3. O

wretched old man, in that he⁹ did not see that death ought to be disregarded!

¹ although these [things] are so.

² cf. 598, Ex. 1.

³ Trans.: if his comrades shall have followed this [man].

⁴ Translate: it is very easy.

⁵ Translate: since they were not able.

⁶ "Compelled them to pay tribute"

= made them tributary to themselves.

⁷ A. & G. 247, c; II. 417, n. 2.

⁸ Translate: it was by no means (minimē) doubtful.

⁹ qui (= cum si) with subjunctive.

LESSON LXXXIV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH Priusquam AND Antequam.

650.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Priusquam** quicquam cōnārētur, **D**ivitiacum ad sē vocāri jubet (1, 19, 3), before taking any action, he gave orders for Divitiacus to be summoned before him.
2. **Nec prius**¹ sunt vīsi quam¹ castris appropInquārent (8, 37, 2), and they were not seen until they were close upon the camp.
3. **Antequam** dē meō adventū audire potuissent, in **M**acedoniam perrōxi (Cic. *Planc.* 41, 98), before they could hear of my coming, I proceeded to Macedonia.
4. **Neque prius**¹ fugere dēstītērunt quam¹ ad flūmen pervēnērunt (1, 53, 1), nor did they cease to flee until they had reached the river.
5. **Omnia ante**¹ facta sunt quam¹ iste Ītaliām attigit (Cic. *Verr.* 2, 2, 66, 161), every thing was done before he reached Italy.

651. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses in the foregoing examples are in *narration* and that they are introduced by **priusquam** (Exs. 1, 2, 4) or **antequam** (Exs. 3, 5). Note that the verb of the temporal clause in Exs. 1-3 is in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect tense*; in what mood is it (see: **cōnārētur**, Ex. 1, **appropInquārent**, Ex. 2, **potuissent**, Ex. 3)? What other temporal particle takes the same mood with these tenses in nar-

tion (see Exs. in 627)? Note that the temporal clauses in Exs. 4 and 5 mark the time of the main action with *definiteness* and *precision*; what *mood* do they take (see **pervenērunt**, Ex. 4, and **attigit**, Ex. 5)? What other temporal particle takes the same mood under the same circumstances (see 632, Ex. 1)? Frame a rule for the Moods to be used with **priusquam** and **antequam** in Narration.

652.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ante quam prō L. Mūrēnā dīcere Instituō, prō mē ipsō pauca dīcam** (*Cic. Mur.* 1, 2), *before I undertake to speak in behalf of Lucius Murena, I shall say a few words in my own behalf.*
2. **Nunquam conquiēscam ante quam illōrum ratiōnēs percepērō** (*Cic. de Orat.* 3, 36, 145), *I shall never rest until I have learned their methods.*
3. **Is vidēlicet ante quam veniat in Pontum, litterās ad Pompējum mittet** (*Cic. Agr.* 2, 20, 53), *doubtless before going to Pontus (i.e., that he may the more effectually accomplish his purpose in going to Pontus) he will send a letter to Pompey.*

653. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the temporal clauses in the foregoing examples refer to the *future*; what *moods* and *tenses* may **priusquam** and **antequam** take under these circumstances (see: **Instituō**, Ex. 1, **percēperō**, Ex. 2, **veniat**, Ex. 3)? Frame a rule for the Moods and Tenses to be used with **priusquam** and **antequam** in Temporal Clauses referring to the Future.

654. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION of Rules framed under 651 and 653: A. & G. 327, *a*; H. 520, I., 1, 2, II.; G. 576, 579.

655.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Nec prius ille est vacuus relīctus locus quam finis est pūgnandī factus. 2. Prius ad hostium castra pervenīt quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. 3. Prius quam dē cēterīs rēbus respondeō, dē amīcitiā pauca dīcam.
4. Caesar priusquam eōdem est profectus, lūna visa est.
5. Ducentīs annīs antequam Rōmam caperent, in Ītaliā

Gallī dēscendērunt. 6. Nōn dēfatigābor ante quam illōrum ancipitēs viās percēperō.

II. 1. Nor did they cease to pursue² until they drew near to the gates. 2. He arrived before Pompey could be aware of [it]. 3. For the purpose of getting information on these points³ before making⁴ the trial, he sent forward Volusenus with a ship of war. 4. Before I come back to the main question, I will say a few [words] about myself. 5. A few [words] must be said by way of explanation⁵ before I begin.⁶ 6. Nor was there an end of butchering. 7. The Sulla had sated all his [followers] with riches.

656.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Nāvibus eorum occupatīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt. 2. Nōn prius vidit turmās Jūliānās quam suōs caedi sēnsit. 3. Ante quam dē rē pūblicā dicam ea quae dīcenda⁷ hōc tempore arbitror, expōnam vōbīs breviter cōnsilium et profectiōnis et reversiōnis meae.

II. 1. They begged Caesar to send them aid before the king should collect a force. 2. I shall make a point of coming⁸ to you before I pass quite out of your recollection. 3. The ambassadors did not depart until they had seen⁹ the soldiers embarked on [board] the ships.

¹ The parts of *priusquam* and *antequam* may be separated by the intervention of other words.

² Trans.: *make an end of pursuing.*

³ Translate: *for these [things] to be ascertained.*

⁴ cf. 650, Ex. 1.

⁵ Translate: *a few [things] must be made clear.*

⁶ i.e., in order that I may begin satisfactorily; cf. 652, Ex. 3.

⁷ sc. esse.

⁸ Translate: *I shall bestow pains that I may come.*

⁹ cf. 650, Ex. 4.

LESSON LXXXV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH Dum AND Quoad.—PRICE.

657.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dum Caesar morātur, ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt** (4, 22, 1), while Caesar was delaying, envoys came to him.
2. **Quoad vīvēs, nunquam tibi redditam grātiām putāveris** (Sall. *Jug.* 110, 4), as long as you (shall) live, never consider yourself fully requited (that requital has been rendered to you).
3. **[Ferrum] retinuit quoad renūntiātūm est vīcissem Boeōtōs** (Nep. *Epam.* 9, 3), he kept the sword in place until it was reported that the Boeotians were victorious (had conquered).
4. **Dum nāvēs eō convenīrent, exspectāvit** (4, 23, 4), he waited for (until) the ships to come (should come) up (i.e., that the ships might come up before he attempted a landing).
5. **Exercēbātur ad eum finem quoad complectī posset atque contendere** (Nep. *Epam.* 2, 4), he trained himself to the end that he might be able (until he should be able) to grapple and fight.

658. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 1-3, the temporal clauses introduced by **dum** (Ex. 1) and **quoad** (Exs. 2 and 3) express *time merely*; what *mood* do they take (see: **morātur**, Ex. 1, **vīvēs**, Ex. 2, **renūntiātūm est**, Ex. 3)? Note that, in Exs. 4 and 5, the temporal clauses introduced by these particles express *purpose* as well as time; what *mood* do they take (see: **convenīrent**, Ex. 4, and **posset**, Ex. 5)? Frame a rule for the Moods to be used with **dum** and **quoad**.

659. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 328 (to the period); II. 519, I., II., 1, 2; G. 571, 573, 574.

660. OBSERVATION: Note that, in Ex. 1, **dum** is used with the present indicative (see **morātur**) although *past time* is referred to.

661. REFERENCES: A. & G. 276, e; II. 467, 4; G. 572.

662.

EXAMPLES.

1. **V**iginti talentis ūnam ḥratiōnem Isocratēs vēndidit (Plin. N. H. 7, 31), *Isocrates sold a single oration for twenty talents.*
2. **E**māmus vel māgnō (Cic. Att. 13, 29, 3), *let us buy even [if we have to buy] at a high price.*
3. **L**is aestimātur centum talentis (Nep. Tim. 3, 5), *the fine is fixed at a hundred talents.*
4. **N**ēmō nisi vīctor pāce bellum mūtāvit¹ (Sall. Cat. 58, 15), *none but the victor exchanges war for peace.*

663. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **vēndidit** (Ex. 1) is a verb of *selling*, **emāmus** (Ex. 2), a verb of *buying*, **aestimātur** (Ex. 3), a verb of *valuing*, and **mūtāvit** (Ex. 4), a verb of *exchanging*; by what *case* is the *price* denoted (see: **talentis**, Ex. 1, **māgnō**, Ex. 2, **talentis**, Ex. 3, **pāce**, Ex. 4)? Frame a rule for the Case of words denoting Price.

664. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 252; H. 422; G. 404.

665.

EXAMPLES.

1. **E**mit tanti quanti Pythius voluit (Cic. Off. 3, 14, 59), *he bought at Pythius's own price (for as much as Pythius wished).*
2. **V**ēndō nōn plūris, fortasse etiam minōris (Cic. Off. 3, 12, 51), *I sell no dearer, perhaps even cheaper.*

666. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that **ēmit** (Ex. 1) and **vēndō** (Ex. 2) are verbs of *buying* and *selling* respectively; and that the *price* is here expressed by **tanti** (Ex. 1), **quanti** (Ex. 1), **plūris** (Ex. 2), and **minōris** (Ex. 2). In what *case* are these words? Frame a special rule for the constructions here illustrated.

667. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 252, d; H. 405; G. 380.

668.

EXERCISES.

1. Dum ea geruntur, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum ī statioñe erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem vidērī.
2. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocatās cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.
3. Dicit quanti cūjusque agrī

decumās vēndiderit. 4. Quot minīs eam ēmit? Quadrāgintā minīs. 5. Ipse, equō vulnerātō, dējectus, quoad potuit fortissimē restitit. 6. Quod nōn opus est, asse cārum. 7. Vēndō meum minōris quam ille. 8. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur dum jūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. 9. Dum haec geruntur, nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere.

II. 1. Nor did they cease to pursue² until the horsemen had utterly routed the enemy.³ 2. But to wait until the forces of the enemy should be augmented, he thought was the height of folly.⁴ 3. For how much did he buy her? Cheap.⁵ 4. Would a good man buy⁶ for a denarius⁷ what is worth a thousand denarii⁸? 5. While he was delaying a few days near (*ad*) Vesontio, great alarm suddenly took possession of the army. 6. That sufficient time might intervene for the soldiers to assemble,⁹ he answered the envoys . . . 7. We cannot buy for less. 8. This penalty was fixed at fifty talents.

669.

Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum ī Santonōs Helvētiī perveniant. 2. Quae tribuerat beneficia tam diū meminerat quoad ille grātus erat qui accēperat. 3. Hōc nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quenlibet amplissimum triumphum. 4. Eōrum salūtem civitās levī mōmentō aestimāre nō potest.

II. 1. Wait until you can know what you have to do.¹⁰ 2. While they were getting¹¹ these things together,¹¹ about six thousand men made haste to [reach] the Rhine. 3. I did my utmost¹² to dispose of¹³ the tithes at the highest possible price.

¹ The perfect is here used to express a general truth, and must be translated by the present.

² Trans.: *make an end of pursuing.*

³ Trans.: *drove the enemy headlong.*

⁴ Translate: *he thought to be of the greatest folly.*

⁵ viii (sc. pretiō), *at a low rate.*

⁶ Ematne?

⁷ See dēnārius, Latin-English vocab.

⁸ Translate: *what is of a thou. and denarii;* for form of genitive (dēnāriū), see: A. & G. 40, e; II. 52, 3; G. 29, 3; for mood of verb, see Exs. in 573.

⁹ cf. 657, Ex. 4.

¹⁰ cf. 317, Ex. 1.

¹¹ Express passively.

¹² Translate: *Efort was bestowed by me with the greatest energy.*

¹³ ut with subjunctive.

LESSON LXXXVI.

PLACE FROM WHICH.—PLACE TO WHICH.—PLACE WHERE.

670.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ab urbe proficis** (1, 7, 1), *to set out from the city.*
2. **Civitati persuāsit ut dē finibus suis exirent** (1, 2, 1), *he persuaded his countrymen to emigrate.*
3. **Ex prōvinciā convēnerant** (1, 8, 1), *they had come together from the province.*
4. **Brundisiō veniēbant** (Caes. B. C. 3, 25, 1), *they came from Brundisiūm.*
5. **AthēnIs vēnimus** (Clc. Att. 5, 12, 1), *we came from Athens.*
6. **Domō dūxerat** (1, 53, 4), *he had brought from home.*
7. **Rūre [redire]** (Ter. Eun. 3, 5, 63), *to return from the country.*

671. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 1–3, which illustrate the common usage, *place from which* is denoted by the *ablative with a preposition* (see : **ab urbe**, Ex. 1, **dē finibus**, Ex. 2, **ex prōvinciā**, Ex. 3). Note, however, that in Exs. 4 and 5, where the substantive denoting ‘place from which’ is the name of a *town*, the *ablative without a preposition* is used (see : **Brundisiō**, Ex. 4, and **AthēnIs**, Ex. 5). Note, further, that **domus** and **rūs**, like names of towns, *have no preposition* (see : **domō**, Ex. 6, and **rūre**, Ex. 7). Frame a rule for the expression of Place From Which.

672. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 258, a; H. 412, I., II., 1; G. 411, Rem. 1².

673.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad eum locum vēnit** (1, 49, 1), *he came to that place.*
2. **In Galliam contendit** (1, 7, 1), *he hastens into Gaul.*
3. **Rōmam profectus** (6, 12, 5), *having set out for Rome.*
4. **Corfinium pervenit** (Caes. B. C. 1, 15, 6), *he comes to Corfinium.*
5. **Domum revertērunt** (2, 29, 1), *they returned home.*
6. **Domōs suās invitāt** (Sall. Jug. 66, 3), *they invite to their homes.*
7. **Abī rūs** (Pl. Most. 1, 1, 63), *go into the country.*

674. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that in Exs. 1 and 2, which illustrate the common usage, *place to which* is denoted by the *accusative with a preposition* (see: **ad locum**, Ex. 1, and **in Galliam**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3 and 4, where the substantive denoting ‘place to which’ is the name of a *town*, the *accusative without a preposition* is used (see: **Rōmam**, Ex. 3, and **Corfinium**, Ex. 4). Note, further, that **domus** and **rūs**, like names of towns, *have no preposition* (see: **domum**, Ex. 5, **domōs**, Ex. 6, **rūs**, Ex. 7). Frame a rule for the expression of Place To Which.

675. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 258, *b*; H. 380, I., II., 2, 1); G. 410.

676.

EXAMPLES.

1. **In eōrum finibus** (1, 1, 4), *in their territories*.
2. **Erat in Galliā legiō ūna** (1, 7, 2), *there was in Gaul one legion*.
3. **Ut Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc Carthāgini rēgēs** (Nep. Hann. 7, 4), *as at Rome consuls, so at Carthage kings*.
4. **Remanēre Brundisiī** (Caes. B. C. 1, 25, 2), *to stay at Brundisium*.
5. **Tum māximum magistrātū Thēbīs obtinēbat** (Nep. Pel. 3, 2), *at that time he held the highest magistracy at Thebes*.
6. **Domī militiaeque, marī atque terrā** (Sall. Cat. 53, 2), *at home and abroad, on land and sea*.
7. **Belli domīque** (Sall. Jug. 41, 7), *in war and in peace*.
8. **Locus humī dēpressus** (Sall. Cat. 55, 3), *a place underground* (sunk in the ground).
9. **An rūfī cēnsēs tē esse** (Pl. Most. 1, 1, 7), *do you think you're in the country?*

677. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that, in Exs. 1 and 2, which illustrate the common usage, *place where* is denoted by the *ablative with a preposition* (see **in finibus**, Ex. 1, and **in Galliā**, Ex. 2). Note, however, that in Exs. 3–5, where the substantive denoting place is the name of a *town*, a *locative* form is used *without a preposition* (see: **Rōmae** and **Carthāgini**, Ex. 3, **Brundisiī**, Ex. 4, and **Thēbīs**, Ex. 5). Note, further, that in the first and second declensions singular, this *locative* is the same in form as the *genitive* (see **Rōmae**, Ex. 3, and **Brundisiī**, Ex. 4); and that, in the third declension and in the plural, it is the same as the *dative* or *ablative* (see **Carthāgini**, Ex. 3, and **Thēbīs**, Ex. 5). Note,

further, that the *preposition is not used* with the *ablatives* **marī** and **terrā** (Ex. 6); also with the *locatives* **domī** (Exs. 6 and 7), **militiae** (Ex. 6), **bellī** (Ex. 7), **humī** (Ex. 8), and **rūrī** (Ex. 9). Frame a rule for the expression of Place Where.

678. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 258, c, d; H. 425, I., II., 426, 2; G. 412, Rem. 1.



LESSON LXXXVII.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING CONSTRUCTIONS.

679.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Ab Allobrogibus ī Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit.
 2. Lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt. 3. Interim Diōn Syrācūsīs interfectus est. 4. In Galliā morārī cōnstituit. 5. Id nōs faciēmus, cum tū domō proficiscēns vēneris Lemnum.¹ 6. Dionysius tyrannus Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat. 7. Nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere possum. 8. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. 9. Celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt. 10. Diem quō Rōmā sīs exitūrus, cūrā ut sciām. 11. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō ī fossam jactā, pāce sunt ūsī. 12. Nunc rūs abībō. 13. Illī erat animus bellī ingēns, domī modicus. 14. Xerxēs terrā marīque bellum intulit Graeciae. 15. Vārus venientem Uticam Tūberōnem portū atque oppidō prohibet. 16. Jacet humī. 17. Rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur paucīs² īstītūta mājōrum domī militiaeque disserere. 18. Rūre hūc advenit.

- II. 1. Having gone out from the camp, they hastened to the Rhine. 2. Caesar came to Brundisium. 3. When this battle had been reported³ across the Rhine, the Suebi began

to return home. 4. He thinks he's in the country. 5. Complete control of public affairs,⁴ both civil⁵ and military,⁵ was intrusted to Alcibiades. 6. Oedipus was born at Thebes. 7. A certain Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii. 8. His services in the battle before (*apud*) Sena were highly⁶ valued. 9. There were but two routes by which they could go out from home. 10. Neither by land nor by sea had the enemy been able to prove a match⁷ [for them]. 11. The archers came from Crete¹ and Lacedaemon. 12. When (*cum*) his arms had been seized⁸ at Capua and his slaves seen at Naples, he abandoned his design. 13. The Allobroges are on their way home. 14. Eporedorix had very great influence⁹ at home.

680. Supplementary Exercises.

I. 1. Uxōrem domō sēcum dūxerat. 2. Multa populus Rōmānus domī militiaeque, marī atque terrā, paeclāra facinora rēcit. 3. Sed is nātus et omnem pueritiam Arpīni altus est. 4. Arcem Syrācūsīs quam mūnierat Dionysius ad urbem obsidēdam, ā fundāmentis disjēcit. 5. Eōrum qui domum rediērunt cēnsus habitus est. 6. Quibus rēbus Rōmani nūntiātis, tantus repente terror invāsit ut cōsul ex urbe profugeret. 7. Athēnīs profectus est.

II. 1. I am able to sleep on the ground. 2. He learns that the envoys have been sent home in advance. 3. A letter was brought from Athens for Archias,¹⁰ who held the chief magistracy in Thebes. 4. In the consulship of Marcus Claudius and Lucius Furius,⁸ envoys came from Rome to Carthage. 5. A list had been made out [showing] how many¹¹ of them had left their homes.¹² 6. The-people-of-Zama meantime sent envoys to Caesar at Utica.¹³ 7. He is very powerful at home.

¹ The names of small islands have the same construction as the names of towns.

² briefly.

³ Ablative absolute.

⁴ tōta rēs pūblica.

⁵ Translate: *at home and in war*.

⁶ A. & G. 252, *a*; H. 404; G. 379.

⁷ "to prove a match" = *to be equal*.

⁸ In what mood? cf. Exs. under 627.

⁹ Translate: *was of very great influence*.

¹⁰ See Lesson LXXII., foot-note 7.

¹¹ "how many" = *what number*.

¹² Trans.: *had gone out from home*.

¹³ Trans.: *to Caesar to Utica*.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE: DECLARATORY AND
IMPERATIVE SENTENCES.

681.

EXAMPLES.

1. *a.* Mōns tenētur, *the mountain is held.*
b. Cōnsidius dicit montem tenērī (1, 22, 2), *Considius says that the mountain is held.*
2. *a.* [Nōs] parātī sumus, *we are ready.*
b. Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt (1, 5, 2), *they thought that they were ready.*
3. *a.* Helvētiī castra mōvērunt, *the Helvetians have broken up their camp.*
b. Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse (1, 22, 4), *Caesar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
4. *a.* Ego id quod in Nerviis fēcī faciam, *I shall do what I did in the case of the Nervii.*
b. Caesar respondit sē id quod in Nerviis fēcissem factūrum (2, 32, 2), *Caesar replied that he should do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.*

682. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the examples marked *a* in the foregoing illustrations, give the *exact language* of the *original speaker* as it came from his lips (see Exs. 1 and 4), as it passed through his mind without being actually spoken (see Ex. 2), or as it was communicated through messengers or letters (see Ex. 3). Note, further, that the examples marked *b* show the *transformations* which the language of the original speaker undergoes when it is *reported*. The examples marked *a* illustrate what is called *Direct Discourse*; the examples marked *b* illustrate what is called *Indirect Discourse*. Define Direct Discourse. Define Indirect Discourse.

683. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 335; H. 522, 1; G. 651.

681.

EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Mōns tenētur**, *the mountain is held.*
 b. Cōnsidius dicit **montem tenērī** (1, 22, 2), *Considius says that the mountain is held.*
2. { a. [Nōs] **parātī sumus**, *we are ready.*
 b. **Sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt** (1, 5, 2), *they thought that they were ready.*
3. { a. **Helvētīl castra mōvērunt**, *the Helvetians have broken up their camp.*
 b. Caesar cōgnōvit **Helvētiōs castra mōvisse** (1, 22, 4), *Caesar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
4. { a. **Ego id quod in Nervīl fēcī faciam**, *I shall do what I did in the case of the Nervii.*
 b. Caesar respondit **sē id quod in Nervīl fēcisset factūrum** (2, 32, 2), *Caesar replied that he should do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.*

684. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the examples marked *a* illustrate *declaratory sentences* in which the principal verb is in the *indicative mood* (see: **tenētur**, Ex. 1, *a*; **sumus**, Ex. 2, *a*; **mōvērunt**, Ex. 3, *a*; **faciam**, Ex. 4, *a*) and its *subject* in the *nominative case* (see: **mōns**, Ex. 1, *a*; **nōs**, Ex. 2, *a*; **Helvētīl**, Ex. 3, *a*; **ego**, Ex. 4, *a*).

Note, further, that, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse marked *b*, the *indicative* has been changed to the *infinitive* (see: **tenērī**, Ex. 1, *b*; **esse**, Ex. 2, *b*; **mōvisse**, Ex. 3, *b*; **factūrum**, Ex. 4, *b*), and that the *nominative* has been changed to the *accusative* (see: **montem**, Ex. 1, *b*; **sē**, Ex. 2, *b*; **Helvētiōs**, Ex. 3, *b*; **sē**, Ex. 4, *b*).

Note, finally, in Ex. 4, that the verb of the *subordinate clause* has been changed from the *indicative* of the Direct Discourse (see **fēcī**, Ex. 4, *a*) to the *subjunctive* in the Indirect (see **fēcisset**, Ex. 4, *b*).

Frame a rule for the constructions to be used in Declaratory Sentences of Indirect Discourse.

685. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 336; H. 523, I., 524; G. 658.

686.

EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Adī civitātēs**, visit the communities.
 b. Huic imperat **adeat civitātēs** (4, 21, 8), he ordered this man
 to visit the communities.
2. { a. **Nōlī hostis populō Rōmānō fierī**, do not become an enemy
 to the Roman people.
 b. **Lēgātōs ad Bocchum mittit postulātūm nē hostis populō**
 Rōmānō fieret (Sall. Jug. 83, 1), he sent ambassadors to
 Bocchus to urge him not to become an enemy to the Roman
 people.

687. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the examples marked *a* in the foregoing illustrations contain *imperative* expressions (see: **adī**, Ex. 1, *a*, and **nōlī fierī**, Ex. 2, *a*). Note, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse marked *b*, that these imperative expressions are denoted by the *subjunctive* (see: **adeat**, Ex. 1, *b*, and **nē fieret**, Ex. 2, *b*). Frame a rule for Imperative Expressions in Indirect Discourse.

688. REFERENCES FOR VERIFICATION: A. & G. 339; H. 523, III.; G. 655.

689. NOTE: The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse follow the rules already framed for dependent infinitives (see **466** and **467**, Lesson LIX.); the Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse follow the rules already framed for dependent subjunctives (see **439–442**, Lesson LV.). But see, also: H. 525, 1; G. 657.

LESSON LXXXIX.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING PRINCIPLES.

690.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Aeduīs ego obsidēs nōn reddam. 2. Ariovistus respondit: Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse. 3. Mihi ea rēs cūrae erit. 4. Caesar pollicitus est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram. 5. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs¹ exīstīmabant. 6. Intellegimus eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse. 7. Lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātūm² convēnērunt: intellegere sēsē eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse. 8. Hōc³ est gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō⁴ quidem querī audent. 9. Divitiacus respondit: hōc esse graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī audērent. 10. Cum volēs, congregere. 11. Ariovistus respondit: cum vellet, congregatorētur. 12. Ariovistus respondit: sē nōn sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret.

II. 1. No one has [ever] contended with me without [meeting] his own destruction. 2. Ariovistus made answer that no one had [ever] contended with him without [meeting] his own destruction. 3. I shall wage war neither against⁵ the Aedui nor against their allies. 4. Ariovistus made answer that he should wage war neither against the Aedui nor against their allies. 5. Caesar observed that the Sequani were gazing on the ground. 6. What business⁶ has Caesar in my Gaul, which I conquered in war?⁷ 7. I am at a loss to understand⁸ what business Caesar has in my Gaul, which I conquered in war. 8. Ariovistus answered that he was at a loss to understand what business

Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.
 9. Restore the hostages which you have [received] from the Aedui. 10. Caesar sent ambassadors to him [who were authorized to demand] that he should restore the hostages which he had [received] from the Aedui.

691.

Supplementary Exercises.

NOTE: In the following sentences, restore to the direct form the passages in indirect discourse.

I. 1. Animadvertisit Caesar Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent. 2. Lēgātī ab Aeduis veniēbant questum²: sēsē nē obsidibus⁴ quidem datis pācem redimere potuisse. 3. Caesar honōris Divitiaci causā sēsē eōs in fidēm receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit. 4. Ad haec Q. Mārcius respondit: ab armis discēdant,⁹ Rōmam supplicēs proficiuntur.⁹ 5. Aduātuci lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūti: nē sē armis dēspoliāret; sibī omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs; à quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armis nōn possent.

II. 1. Ariovistus answered that the Aedui, inasmuch as they had been defeated, had become subject to him. 2. Caesar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus [who were commissioned to demand] that he should bring no more men¹⁰ across the Rhine into Gaul. 3. Nor did they think that men of hostile disposition would refrain from injury.

¹ sc. esse.

² cf. 381.

³ Ablative of cause.

⁴ See Lesson LXVIII., foot-note 8.

⁵ bellum Inferre with dative.

⁶ cf. Lesson LIII., foot-note 7.

⁷ "in war" = by means of war.

⁸ Translate: *it seems strange to me.*

⁹ The subjunctive is here in a primary tense, although the leading verb *respon-*
dit is in a secondary tense; this frequently happens in indirect discourse.

¹⁰ Trans.: *not any (nē quam) multi-*
tude of men more (amplius).

LESSON XC.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

692.

EXAMPLES.

1. { a. **Si quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet**, if that man wants anything of me, he ought to come to me.
 b. Ariovistus respondit: **si quid ille sē velit**,¹ **illum ad sē venire oportēre** (1, 34, 2), Ariovistus replied that, if that man wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him.
2. { a. **Si quid petere vultis, ab armis discēdite**, if you wish to ask for anything, lay down your arms.
 b. Mārcius respondit: **si quid petere velint**,¹ **ab armis discēdant**¹ (Sall. Cat. 34, 1), Marcius replied that, if they wished to ask for anything, they must lay down their arms.
3. { a. **Si quid mihi opus esset, ego vēnissem**, if I were in need of anything, I should have come myself.
 b. Ariovistus respondit: **si quid ipsī opus esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse** (1, 34, 2), Ariovistus replied that, if he were in need of anything, he should have come himself.
4. { a. **Id si fiet, māgnō cum perīculō erit**, if this happens (shall happen), it will be attended with great danger.
 b. **Id si fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō futūrum** (1, 10, 2), he saw clearly that, if this should happen, it would be attended with great danger.
5. { a. **Si id ita fēceris, populō Rōmānō amīctia tēcum erit**, if you do (shall have done) this, you will have the friendship of the Roman people.
 b. Ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: **si id ita fēcisset, populō Rōmānō amīctiam cum eō futūram** (1, 35, 1 and 4), Caesar sent ambassadors to him, who were commissioned to say that, if he should do this, he would have the friendship of the Roman people.

6. { a. **Voluptās quidem, si ipsa prō sē loquātur, concēdat dignitātī, indeed, if Pleasure herself were to speak in her own behalf, she would yield precedence to Worth.**
 b. **Voluptātem quidem, si ipsa prō sē loquātur, concēssūram arbitror dignitātī (Cic. Fin. 8, 1, 1), indeed, I think that, if Pleasure herself were to speak in her own behalf, she would yield precedence to Worth.**

693. Note: The foregoing examples involve no new principles; they merely illustrate the application of the principles of Indirect Discourse to Conditional Sentences.

694.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Sī iterum experīrī vultis, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre.** 2. **Ariovistus respondit: sī iterum experīrī velint,¹ sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre.** 3. **Nōlī proelium committere. nisi meae cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae erunt.** 4. **Labiēnō erat praeceptum ā Caesare: nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent.²** 5. **Caesar profectus est in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōsilium cēpissent, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contempiōne nostrī ad castra venīrent.** 6. **Titūrius clāmitābat: Caesarem profectum in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contempiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse.** 7. **Aeduīs ego bellum nōn īferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit.** 8. **Ariovistus respondit: Aeduīs sē bellum inlātūrum nōn esse, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset.** 9. **Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē agere cum eō; utī aut conloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.**

II. 1. **If Hamilcar had lived longer, the Carthaginians would have carried their arms into³ Italy.** 2. **It was evident that, if Hamilcar had lived longer, the Carthaginians would have carried⁴ their arms into Italy.** 3. **Unless you**

withdraw⁵ your army from these regions, I shall regard you as (prō) an enemy. 4. Arioistus answered that, unless Caesar should withdraw his army from these regions, he should regard him as an enemy. 5. If you wish to enjoy peace, it is unreasonable to object to the tribute. 6. Arioistus answered that, if they wished to enjoy peace, it was unreasonable to object to the tribute. 7. If you want anything, return on the thirteenth of April.⁶ 8. He told the ambassadors in reply,⁷ to return on the thirteenth of April if they wanted anything.

695.

Supplementary Exercises.

NOTE: In the following sentences, restore to the direct form the passages in indirect discourse.

I. 1. Caesar respondit: sī jūdicium senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam. 2. Arioistus respondit: sī discessisset⁸ Caesar, māgnō sē illum praemīo remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ējus labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum. 3. Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victoriā essent adlāti, existimābant plēriquē futūrum fuisse ut⁹ oppidum āmitterētur.

II. 1. If the flight of the Gauls disquiets any, these can learn, if they take the trouble to inquire,¹⁰ that Arioistus conquered more by craft than by valor. 2. Caesar took them severely to task [saying that] if the flight of the Gauls disquieted any, these could learn, if they should take the trouble to inquire, that Arioistus had conquered more by craft than by valor. 3. Most people think that Hamilcar, if he had lived longer, would have carried⁴ his arms into Italy.

¹ cf. foot-note 9, preceding lesson.

² Note that, in accordance with the law of sequence of tenses, the future perfect *vīsae erunt* (sent. 3) has become the pluperfect subjunctive *vīsae essent* after the secondary tense *erat praeceptum*: II. 525, 2.

³ *arma Inferre* with dative.

⁴ cf. *fuisse captūrōs*, sent. 6, preceding exercise.

⁵ cf. 692, Ex. 4.

⁶ ad *Idūs Aprīllīs* or ad *Id. Aprīll.*

See *Idūs* in the general vocab. Note that *Aprīllīs* is here an adjective in the accusative plural agreeing with *Idūs*.

⁷ *Lēgātīs respondit.*

⁸ cf. foot-note 2.

⁹ *futūrum fuisse ut āmitterētur* is a periphrastic expression for the fut. pass. infin. of *āmittō*; translate: *a great many thought that the town would have been lost.*

¹⁰ Translate: *if they shall inquire.*

LESSON XCI.

NOTE: In this and the following lessons on formation, attention is confined to such modes of formation as are easily understood, and are copiously illustrated in the vocabulary of this book.

FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES.

I. NAMES OF AGENTS.

696.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
Roots or Verb Stems.	Suffix.	Stems.	Names of Agents.
1. \sqrt{duc} -, lead,	+ -tōr-	= ductōr-, st. of	ductor, leader.
2. \sqrt{vict} -, conquer,	+ -tōr-	= vīctōr-, st. of	victor, conqueror.
3. $\bar{o}rā$ - (st. of $\bar{o}rō$), speak,	+ -tōr-	= $\bar{o}rātōr$ -, st. of	$\bar{o}rātor$, speaker.
4. imperā- (st. of imperō), com-	+ -tōr-	= imperātōr-, st. of	{ imperātor, com- mander.

697. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. denote the *agent* (doer) of the *action* expressed by the corresponding *root* or *verb stem* in column I. Thus *ductor* from \sqrt{duc} -, *lead*, means 'he who leads' or 'leader.' Hence these substantives are called *Names of Agents*. Note that these names of agents are formed by adding to *roots* (see Exs. 1 and 2) or to *verb stems* (see Exs. 3 and 4) the *suffix* -tōr-, nom. -tor. Frame a rule for the formation of Names of Agents.

698. Form, as in the foregoing examples, Names of Agents from the following—

1. ROOTS: \sqrt{duc} -, TEACH; \sqrt{leg} -,² read; \sqrt{pig} -,² paint; \sqrt{sta} -, STAY (= make STAND); \sqrt{suad} -,³ (make SWEET, and so) advise, urge.

2. VERB STEMS: *approbā-, approve*; *dēprecā-, intercede*; *dictā-, dictate*; *explorā-, explore*; *mercā-, trade*.
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: *dē-vser-, desert*; *im-vpol-,⁴ impel*; *in-vven-, come upon, discover*; *prae-vi,⁵ go before*; *prō-vda,⁶ give away, betray*.

II. ABSTRACTS DENOTING STATE.

699.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS OR BASES TREATED AS ROOTS.	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	ABSTRACTS DENOTING STATE.
1. <i>v<u>dol</u>-, TEAR, rend,</i>	+ -ōr-	= <i>dolōr-</i> , st. of	<i>dolor, pain.</i>
2. <i>v<u>fur</u>-, rage,</i>	+ -ōr-	= <i>furōr-</i> , st. of	<i>furor, fury.</i>
3. Base <i>am-</i> (in <i>amō</i>), <i>love,</i>	+ -ōr-	= <i>amōr-</i> , st. of	<i>amor, love.</i>
4. Base <i>pud-</i> (in <i>pu-</i> <i>det</i>), <i>shame,</i>	+ -ōr-	= <i>pudōr-</i> , st. of	<i>pudor, modesty.</i>

700. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. are *abstracts* denoting the *state* suggested by the corresponding roots or bases in column I. Thus *furor* from *vfur-, rage*, means 'a state of rage' or 'fury.' Note that these abstracts are formed by adding to *roots* or to *bases treated as roots* the suffix -ōr-, nom. -or. Frame a rule for the formation of Abstracts denoting State.

701. Form Abstracts denoting State from the following—

1. ROOTS: *vang-, squeeze*; *vlab-, lay hold of*; *vters-,⁷ tremble*; *vtim-, choke, be breathless.*
2. BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: *rūm-, sound*; *clām-, call, call out.*

¹ Roots are denoted by the sign √.
Thus √*duc-* is to be read 'root *duc*-.'

² -g- and -gu- become -e- before -t-.

³ -dt- becomes -s-.

⁴ -o- of the root is here weakened to -u-, and -t- of the suffix becomes -s-.

⁵ *prae*-i- is contracted to *prae*-.

⁶ -a- of the root is here weakened to -i-.

⁷ -s- of the root becomes -r-.

LESSON XCII.

FORMATION : SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

III. ABSTRACTS DENOTING ACTION.

702.

EXAMPLES.

I. ROOTS OR VERB STEMS.	II. SUFFIXES.	III. STEMS.	IV. ABSTRACTS DENOT- ING ACTION.
1. <i>sta-</i> , STAnd,	+ -tiōn-	<i>statiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>statiō</i> , STANDING ; a post or station.
2. <i>gnā-</i> , be born,	+ -tiōn- = ^{1(g)} <i>nātiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>nātiō</i> , being born ; a race or nation.	
3. <i>ōrā-</i> (st. of <i>ōrō</i>), speak,	+ -tiōn- = <i>ōratiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>ōratiō</i> , speaking ; an address.	
4. <i>lēgā-</i> (st. of <i>lēgō</i>), de- pute,	+ -tiōn- = <i>lēgatiōn-</i> , st. of	{ <i>lēgatiō</i> , deputing ; a deputation or embassy.	
5. <i>ict-</i> , hit,	+ -tu-	<i>ictu-</i> , st. of	<i>ictus</i> , hitting ; a blow.
6. <i>or-</i> , rise,	+ -tu-	<i>ortu-</i> , st. of	<i>ortus</i> , rising ; origin.
7. <i>cōnā-</i> (st. of <i>cōnor</i>), en-	+ -tu-	<i>cōnātu-</i> , st. of	{ <i>cōnātus</i> , endeavor- ing ; an effort or undertaking.
8. <i>equitā-</i> (st. of <i>equitō</i>),	+ -tu-	<i>equitātu-</i> , st. of	{ <i>equitātus</i> , riding ; cavalry.

703. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE : Note that the substantives in column IV. are *abstracts* denoting the *action* suggested by the corresponding roots or verb stems in column I. Note further, however, that these abstracts may become *concrete* and assume other than their literal meanings. Thus *ōratiō*, from the verb-stem *ōrā*, speak, means not only 'speaking,' but 'that which is spoken' or 'an address.'

Note that these abstracts are formed by adding to *roots* or to *verb stems* the *suffixes* -tiōn-, nom. -tiō (Exs. 1-4), and -tu-, nom. -tus (Exs. 5-8). Frame a rule for the formation of Abstracts denoting Action.

704. Form Abstracts in -tiō from the following —

1. ROOT: *fac-*, DO, *make*.
2. BASE TREATED AS ROOT: *quaes-*, *inquire*.
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: *cō-vgnā-*, *be born with*; *con-vten-*, *stretch vigorously, struggle*; *con-vjug-*,² *YOKE together*; *oc-vcād-*,³ *fall towards*; *re-vvert-*,⁴ *turn back*; *ē-vrup-*, *break forth*; *pro-vfac-*,⁵ *make FORTH or off*; *dē-vfend-*,⁶ *thrust off*.
4. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: *dis-sent-*, *think differently*; *in-curr-*,⁶ *rush against*.
5. VERB STEMS: *mūni-* (st. of *mūniō*), *fortify*; *aestimā-* (st. of *aestimō*), *value*; *perturbā-* (st. of *perturbō*), *throw into confusion*; *cunctā-* (st. of *cunctor*), *delay*; *conjūrā-* (st. of *conjūrō*), *swear together*; *supplicā-* (st. of *supplicō*), *kneel*; *cohortā-* (st. of *cohortor*), *exhort*; *exercitā-*, (st. of *exercitō*), *exercise repeatedly*; *vēnā-* (st. of *vēnor*), *hunt*; *commūtā-* (st. of *commūtō*), *change completely*; *māchinā-* (st. of *māchinor*), *devise*.

705. Form Abstracts in -tus from the following —

1. ROOTS: *vīgu-*,⁷ *live*; *frūgu-*,⁷ *enjoy*; *si-*, *put*; *v cād-*,⁸ *fall*; *por-*, *FARE, go through*; *flūgu-*,⁷ *flow*; *col-*,⁸ *till*; *pat-*,⁹ *spread*.
2. BASES TREATED AS ROOTS: *quaes-*, *seek*; *sent-*,⁴ *become aware*; *ūt-*,⁴ *enjoy, use*.
3. COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: *ad-vi-*, *go to, approach*; *ad-vēn-*, *COME to*; *cōn-vspec-*, *SPY at a glance*; *amb-vi-*, *go about*; *con-vven-*, *COME together*; *sūm-*¹⁰ (for *sub-vem-*), *spend*; *circu-vi-*, *go round*; *oc-vcād-*,⁸ *fall towards or down*.

4. VERB STEMS: **cruciā-** (st. of **cruciō**), *torture*; **magistrā-** (st. of **magistrō**), *direct, be master*; **commeā-** (st. of **commeō**), *go to and fro*; **vesti-** (st. of **vestiō**), *clothe*.

¹ Initial g- is lost before -n-.

² The abstract formed from **con-**
jung- has -n- before -g- after the analogy of **conjungō**; see also foot-note 2, Lesson XCI.

³ See foot-note 3, Lesson XCI.

⁴ -tt- becomes -s-.

⁵ -a- of the root is here weakened to

-e-.

⁶ One -r- disappears and -t- becomes -s-.

⁷ See foot-note 2, Lesson XCI.

⁸ -o- is weakened to -u-.

⁹ -tt- becomes -ss-.

¹⁰ -p- sometimes (as here) grows up between -m- and -t-.

LESSON XCIII.

FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

IV. SUBSTANTIVES DENOTING SUBJECT, MEANS, RESULT.

706.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS OR VERB STEMS.	SUFFIXES.	STEMS.	SUBSTANTIVES DENOTING SUBJECT, MEANS, RESULT.
1. <i>¶crī-, sift,</i> + -min-	= crimin- , st. of		{ crimen , <i>that which sifts; a judicial decision.</i>
2. <i>¶ag-, lead,</i> + -min-	= agmin- , st. of		{ agmen , <i>that which is led; army (on the march).</i>
3. impedi- (st. of im- pediō), <i>hinder,</i>	+ -mento- = impedimento- , st. of		{ impedimentum , <i>means of hindering; impediment.</i>
4. <i>¶frag-,</i> BREAK,	{ + -mento- = fragmento- , st. of		{ fragmentum , <i>result of breaking; fragment.</i>

707. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. denote: (1) the *subject* of the action, viewed actively (see Ex. 1) or passively (see Ex. 2); (2) the *means* or *instrument* (see Ex. 3); (3) the *result* (see Ex. 4). Note that these substantives are formed by adding to *roots* or *verb stems* the *suffixes* **-min-**, nom. **-men**, and **-mento-**, nom. **-mentum**. Frame a rule for the formation of substantives denoting Subject, Means, Result.

708. Form substantives in **-men** from the following —

1. ROOTS: $\sqrt{sē}$ -, sow; $\sqrt{vī}$ -, *plait*; $\sqrt{nū}$ -, nod; $\sqrt{lūc}$ -,¹ *shine*; $\sqrt{flūgu}$ -,¹ *flow*.
2. VERB STEMS: **certā-**, *struggle*; **ōrnā-**, *embellish*.

709. Form substantives in **-mentum** from the following —

1. ROOTS: \sqrt{torqu} -,¹ *twist, hurl*; \sqrt{sarp} -,² *lop, prune*; \sqrt{mov} -,³ *push*; $\sqrt{jūg}$ -,¹ *yoke*; $\sqrt{frūgu}$ -,¹ *enjoy*.
2. COMPOUND ENDING IN A ROOT: **dē- $\sqrt{trī}$** , *rub away*.
3. VERB STEMS: **mūnī-**, *fortify*; **fundā-**, *bottom, make secure*; **testā-**, *bear witness*.

V. NEUTER ABSTRACTS: PRIMITIVE AND DENOMINATIVE.

710.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ROOTS, OR COMPOUNDS	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	NEUTER ABSTRACTS: PRIMITIVES.
ENDING IN A ROOT.			
1. vod- , <i>hate</i> ,	+ -io- = odio- , st. of		{ odium , <i>hatred</i> ; <i>a grudge</i> .
2. con-\sqrt{loqu}- , <i>talk with,</i>	{ + -io- = conloquio- , st. of		{ conloquium , <i>talking together</i> ; <i>a conference</i> .
3. in-\sqrt{cand}- , ⁴ <i>set fire to,</i>	{ + -io- = incendio- , st. of		{ incendium , <i>setting fire to; a conflagration</i> .

NOUN STEMS.	NEUTER ABSTRACTS: DENOMINATIVES.	
4. arbitro-, ⁵ (st. of arbiter), <i>umpire</i> , }	+ -io- = arbitrio-, st. of {	arbitrium, <i>being</i> <i>umpire; a decision</i> (of the umpire).
5. artific- (st. of artifex), <i>artificer</i> , }	+ -io- = artificio-, st. of {	artificium, <i>artisan-</i> <i>ship; a trade.</i>
6. exsul- (st. of ex- sul), <i>exile</i> , }	+ -io- = exsilio-, ⁶ st. of {	exsilium, <i>being an</i> <i>exile; banishment.</i>

711. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. are *neuter abstracts* which may become *concrete* in meaning. Note that the neuter abstracts in Exs. 1-3 are from *roots* and are therefore called *Primitives*; whereas those in Exs. 4-6 are from *noun stems* and are therefore called *Denominatives*. Note, further, that the denominatives denote *office* (see Ex. 4), *employment* (see Ex. 5), *condition* (see Ex. 6). Note, finally, that both primitives and denominatives are formed by the *suffix -io-*, nom. *-ium*. Frame a rule for the formation of Primitive and Denominative Neuter Abstracts.

712. Form Primitive Abstracts in **-ium** from the following—

COMPOUNDS ENDING IN A ROOT: *prae- \sqrt{sed} -*, sit before; *sub- \sqrt{sed} -*, sit in support; *in- \sqrt{gen}* , beget in.

713. Form Denominative Abstracts in **-ium** from the following—

NOUN⁸ STEMS: *convivā*⁻⁵ (st. of *convīva*), *table companion*;
indic- (st. of *index*), *informer*; *jūdic-* (st. of *jūdex*),
judge; *supplic-* (st. of *supplex*), *suppliant*; *benefico*⁻⁵ (st.
of *beneficus*), *kind, obliging*; *malefico*⁻⁵ (st. of *maleficus*),
mischievous; *sacrifico*⁻⁵ (st. of *sacrificus*), *sacrificial*; *rē-
mig-* (st. of *rēmex*), *rower*; *aedific-* (st. of **aedifex*⁹),
builder.

¹ Medial -e- (or -qu-) and -g- (or -gu-) are dropped before many consonants (here before -m-).

² -p- here disappears before -m-.

³ -v- becomes -u-, and the resulting diphthong -ou- becomes -ö-.

⁴ See foot-note 5, Lesson XCII.

⁵ The final vowel of the stem disappears before the initial vowel of the suffix.

⁶ -u- of the stem is weakened to -i-.

⁷ -e- of the root is here weakened to -i-.

⁸ The term 'noun' includes both 'substantive' and 'adjective.'

⁹ The asterisk * is used to mark a form which is not found in any classical writer, but which is assumed as affording a rational explanation of existing forms. In the present case, as **artifex** gave rise to **artificium** (see 710, Ex. 5), so it is assumed that ***aedifex** gave rise to **aedificium**.

LESSON XCIV.

FORMATION: SUBSTANTIVES (*continued*).

VI. FEMININE ABSTRACTS DENOTING QUALITY.

714.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
ADJECTIVE STEMS.	SUFFIXES.	STEMS.	FEMININE ABSTRACTS DENOTING QUALITY.
1. audāci- ¹ (st. of audāx), <i>bold</i> ,	+ -iā-	= audāciā-, st. of	{ audācia, boldness.
2. Ignāvo- ¹ (st. of Ignāvus), <i>idle</i> ,	+ -iā-	= Ignāviā-, st. of	{ Ignāvia, idle- ness.
3. tristī- (st. of tristis), <i>sad</i> ,	+ -tiā-	= tristitiā-, st. of	{ tristitia, sad- ness.
4. jūsto- ² (st. of jūstus), <i>just</i> ,	+ -tiā-	= jūstitiā-, st. of	{ jūstitia, jus- tice.
5. brevi- (st. of brevis), <i>short</i> ,	+ -tāt-	= brevitāt-, st. of	{ brevitās, shortness.
6. digno- ² (st. of dignus), <i>worthy</i> ,	+ -tāt-	= dignitāt-, st. of	{ dignitās, worth.
7. fortī- (st. of fortis), <i>brave</i> ,	+ -tūdin-	= fortitūdin-, st. of	{ fortitūdō, bravery.
8. lāto- ² (st. of lā- tus), <i>broad</i> ,	+ -tūdin-	= lātitūdin-, st. of	{ lātitūdō, breadth.

715. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the substantives in column IV. are *feminine abstracts* denoting *quality*, and that they are formed from *adjective stems* by the addition of the *suffixes*: -iā, nom. -ia; -tiā, nom. -tia; -tāt, nom. -tās; -tūdin-, nom. -tūdō. Note that vowel stems *lose* their *final vowel* before the initial vowel of the suffix -iā- (see Exs. 1 and 2); and that the *final vowel* of -o-stems is weakened into -i- before the suffixes -tiā-, -tāt-, and -tūdin- (see Exs. 4, 6, 8). Frame a rule for the formation of Feminine Abstracts denoting Quality.

716. Form Feminine Abstracts in -ia from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: adulēscēnt- (st. of *adulēscēns*), *young*; dīlēgent- (st. of *dīligēns*), *attentive*; grāto- (st. of *grātus*), *pleasing*; Infāmī- (st. of *infāmis*), *disreputable*; inopī- (st. of *inops*), *without resources*; invido- (st. of *invidus*), *envious*; Inscient- (st. of *insciēns*), *inexperienced*; Irācundo- (st. of *irācundus*), *passionate*; misericordi- (st. of *misericors*), *tender-HEARTED*; potent- (st. of *potēns*), *powerful*; prūdent- (st. of *prūdēns*), *sagacious*; scient- (st. of *sciēns*), *knowing*; superbo- (st. of *superbus*), *proud*.

717. Form, in like manner, Feminine Abstracts in -ia from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEMS: custōd- (st. of *custōs*), *guard*; milit- (st. of *miles*), *soldier*; vīctōr- (st. of *vīctor*), *victor*.

718. Form Feminine Abstracts in -tia from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: amīco- (st. of *amicus*), *friendly*; dūro- (st. of *dūrus*), *hard*; inimīco- (st. of *inimīcus*), *UNfriendly*; laeto- (st. of *laetus*), *joyful*; pudico- (st. of *pudīcus*), *modest*.

719. Form, in like manner, a Feminine Abstract in -tia from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEM: puerō- (st. of *puer*), *child*.

720. Form Feminine Abstracts in *-tās* from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: *aequo-* (st. of *aequus*), *even*; *alaci-* (st. of *alacer*), *eager*; *atrōci-* (st. of *atrōx*), *savage*; *celeri-* (st. of *celer*), *swift*; *crūdēli-* (st. of *crūdēlis*), *cruel*; *cupido-* (st. of *cupidus*), *desirous*; *familiāri-* (st. of *familiāris*), *intimate*; *hūmāno-* (st. of *hūmānus*), *refined*; *iniquo-* (st. of *iniquus*), *UNjust*, *nōbili-* (st. of *nōbilis*), *noble*; *obscūro-* (st. of *obscūrus*), *obscure*; *opportūno-* (st. of *opportūnus*), *convenient*; *probo-* (st. of *probus*), *upright*; *vāno-* (st. of *vānus*), *empty*; *vēro-* (st. of *vērus*), *true*.

721. Form, in like manner, Feminine Abstracts in *-tās* from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEMS: *cīvi-* (st. of *cīvis*), *citizen*; *auctōr³* (st. of *auctor*), *author*; *hērēd³* (st. of *hērēs*), *heir*.

722. Form Feminine Abstracts in *-tūdō* from the following —

ADJECTIVE STEMS: *alto-* (st. of *altus*), *high*; *longo-* (st. of *longus*), *LONG*; *māgno-* (st. of *māgnus*), *great*; *multo-* (st. of *multus*), *much*; *sōlo-* (st. of *sōlus*), *alone*; *cōnsuēto⁴* (st. of *cōnsuētus*), *accustomed*.

¹ See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

² Final *-o-* of the stem is here weakened to *-i-* before the suffix.

³ The suffix here assumes *-i-* after the analogy of vowel stems, and becomes *-itāt-*, nom. *-itās*.

⁴ The syllable *-ti-* in **cōnsuētitūdō* produced a stuttering sound; it therefore disappeared, and the form became *cōnsuētūdō*.

LESSON XCV.

FORMATION: ADJECTIVES.

I. ADJECTIVES DENOTING BELONGING OR PERTAINING TO.

723.

EXAMPLES.

I. SUBSTANTIVE STEMS.	II. SUFFIXES.	III. STEMS.	IV. ADJECTIVES DENOTING BE- LONGING OR PERTAINING TO.
1. rēg- (st. of rēx), <i>king</i> ,	{ + -āli-	= rēgāli-, st. of	{ rēgālis, <i>belonging or pertaining to kings, regal, royal.</i>
2. nāvi- ¹ (st. of nāvis), <i>ship</i> ,	{ + -āli-	= nāvāli-, st. of	{ nāvālis, <i>belonging or pertaining to ships, naval.</i>
3. milit- (st. of miles), <i>soldier</i> ,	{ + -āri- ²	= militāri-, st. of	{ militāris, <i>belonging or pertaining to soldiers, military.</i>
4. auxilio- ¹ (st. of auxili-), <i>help</i> ,	{ + -āri- ²	= auxiliāri-, st. of	{ auxiliāris, <i>belonging or pertaining to help, auxiliary.</i>
5. cīvī- ¹ (st. of cīvis), <i>citizen</i> ,	{ + -lli-	= cīvilli-, st. of	{ cīvillis, <i>belonging or pertaining to citizens, civil.</i>
6. viro- ¹ (st. of vir), <i>man</i> ,	{ + -lli-	= virilli-, st. of	{ virilis, <i>belonging or pertaining to men, manly.</i>
7. legiōn- (st. of legiō), <i>legion</i> ,	{ + -ārio-	= legiōnārio-, st. of	{ legiōnārius, <i>belonging or pertaining to legions, legionary.</i>
8. alā- ¹ (st. of alā), <i>wing</i> ,	{ + -ārio-	= alārio-, st. of	{ alārius, <i>belonging or pertaining to the wing.</i>

724. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Adjectives in column IV. denote *belonging or pertaining to*, and that they are

formed from *substantive stems* by the addition of the *suffixes*: -*ali-*, nom. -*alis*; -*ari*, nom. -*aris*; -*ili*, nom. -*ilis*; -*rio-*, nom. -*rius*. Note that vowel stems (see Exs. 2, 4, 5, 6, 8) lose their *final vowel* before the initial vowel of these suffixes. Frame a rule for the formation of Adjectives denoting Belonging or Pertaining to.

725. Form —

1. Adjectives in -*alis* from the following Substantive Stems: morti- (st. of *mors*), *death*; nātūrā- (st. of *nātūra*), *nature*; anno- (st. of *annus*), *year*; capit- (st. of *caput*), *HEAD*; liberō- (st. of *līber*), *freeman*; quo- (st. of some forms of *qui*), *WHAT*; to- (st. of *tum*), *THAT*.
2. Adjectives in -*aris*² from the following Substantive Stems: cōnsul- (st. of *cōsul*), *consul*; salūt- (st. of *salūs*), *safety*, populo-, (st. of *populus*), *people*; familiā- (st. of *familia*), *household*.
3. Adjectives in -*ilis* from the following Substantive Stems: puerō- (st. of *puer*), *child*; servō- (st. of *servus*), *slave*, sen- (st. of *senex*, gen. *senis*), *old person*; aedi³ (st. of *aedis* or *aedēs*), *building*.
4. Adjectives in -*rius* from the following Substantive Stems: frūmento- (st. of *frūmentum*), *grain*; agro- (st. of *ager*), *land*; sagittā⁴ (st. of *sagitta*), *arrow*; aes⁵ (st. of *aes*), *money*; sēmin⁶ (st. of *sēmen*), *SEED*.

II. ADJECTIVES DENOTING FULL OF.

726.

EXAMPLES.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
SUBSTANTIVE STEMS.	SUFFIX.	STEMS.	ADJECTIVES DENOTING FULL OF.
1. anno ¹ (st. of annus), year,	+ -ōsō- = annōsō-, st. of		{ annōsūs, full of years.
2. crīmin- (st. of crīmen), re-	{ + -ōsō- = crīminōsō-, st. of		{ crīminōsūs, full of reproaches, re- proachful.
3. sūmptu- (st. of sūmptus), expense,	{ + -ōsō- = sūmptuōsō-, st. of		{ sūmptuōsūs, full of expense, ex- pensive.

727. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the Adjectives in column IV. denote *full of*, and that they are formed from *substantive stems* by the addition of the suffix **-ōsō-**, nom. **-ōsus**. Note that the vowel stems regularly *lose* their *final vowel* before the initial vowel of the suffix (see Ex. 1), but that **-u-** stems *retain u* (see Ex. 3). Frame a rule for the formation of Adjectives denoting Full of.

728. Form Adjectives in -ōsus from the following —

SUBSTANTIVE STEMS: **aestu-** (st. of **aestus**), *heat*; **animo-** (st. of **animus**), *courage*; **cōpiā-** (st. of **cōpiae**), *wealth*; **frūctu-** (st. of **frūctus**), *fruit*; **perīculo-** (st. of **perīculum**), *peril*; **studio-** (st. of **studium**), *zeal*; **vitio-** (st. of **vitium**), *fault*.

¹ See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

² Note that the suffix **-ali-** becomes

-ari- when the stem contains the letter **I**.

³ The masc. form of the adj. obtained from this stem is used subst., and means 'aedile' (superintendent of public works, etc.).

⁴ The masc. form of the adj. obtained

from this stem is used subst., and means 'archer.'

⁵ Medial **-s-** between two vowels often (as here) becomes **-r-**; the neuter form of the adj. obtained from **aes-** is used subst., and means 'treasury.'

⁶ The neuter form of the adj. is used subst., and means 'nursery.'



LESSON XCVI.

FORMATION: VERBS: DENOMINATIVES.

729.

EXAMPLES.

I.

II.

III.

IV.

NOUN ¹ STEMS.	CHARACTERISTIC FORMATIVE VOWELS.	VERB STEMS.	DENOMINATIVE VERBS.
1. fugā ² (st. of fuga , <i>flight</i> ,	{	+ -ā- = fugā- , st. of	fugō , <i>put to flight</i> .
2. firmo ² (st. of firmus , <i>firm</i> ,	{	+ -ā- = firmā- , st. of	{ firmō , <i>make firm</i> , <i>strengthen</i> .
3. levi ² (st. of levis , <i>light</i> { (not heavy), } + -ā- = levā- , st. of			{ levō , <i>make light</i> , <i>LIGHTen</i> .

I.	II.	III.	IV.
NOUN ¹ STEMS.	CHARACTERISTIC FORMATIVE VOWELS.	VERB STEMS.	DENOMINATIVE VERBS.
4. nōmin- (st. of { nōmen), NAME,	+ -ā =	nōminā-, st. of {	nōminō, call by NAME,
5. clāro ² (st. of { clārus), bright,	+ -ē =	clārē-, st. of	clāreō, be bright.
6. flōs ³ (st. of { flōs), flower,	+ -ē =	flōrē-, st. of	flōreō, be in flower.
7. fini ² (st. of { finis), end,	+ -ī =	finī-, st. of	finiō, put an end to.
8. molli ² (st. of { mollis), soft,	+ -ī =	molliī-, st. of	{ molliō, make soft, soften.
9. Insāno ² (st. of { insānus), in-	+ -ī =	insānī-, st. of	Insāniō, be insane.

730. OBSERVATION AND INFERENCE: Note that the *stems* of the *verbs* in column IV. are formed from the corresponding *noun stems* in column I. by the addition of the *characteristic vowels* of the *first* (see Exs. 1-4), *second* (see Exs. 5 and 6), and *fourth* (see Exs. 7-9) *conjugations*. Because these verbs are formed from *noun stems*, they are called *Denominatives*. Note that the noun stems which end in a *vowel* (see Exs. 1-3, 5, 7-9) *lose* this vowel before the characteristic vowels -ā-, -ē-, -ī-. Frame a rule for the formation of Denominative Verbs.

731. Form Denominative Verbs of the First Conjugation from the following —

NOUN¹ STEMS: loco- (st. of *locus*), *place*; cūrā- (st. of *cūra*), *care*; nūntio- (st. of *nūntius*), *messenger*; pūgnā- (st. of *pūgna*), *fight*; honesto- (st. of *honestus*), *honorable*; interpret⁴ (st. of *interp̄es*), *interpreter*; labōs³ (st. of *labor*), *labor*; laud- (st. of *laus*), *praise*; memori- (st. of *memor*), *mindful*; proelio⁴ (st. of *proelium*), *battle*; rēgno- (st. of *rēgnum*), *sovereignty*; salūt- (st. of *salūs*), *safety*; celebri- (st. of *celeber*), *frequented*; sacro- (st. of *sacer*), *sacred*; damno- (st. of *damnum*), *loss*; equit- (st. of *eques*), *horseman*.

man; **glōriā**⁴ (st. of **glōria**), *glory*; **hiem-** (st. of **hiems**), *winter*; **jūdic-** (st. of **jūdex**), *judge*; **laeto-**⁴ (st. of **laetus**), *joyful*; **lībero-** (st. of **līber**), *free*; **nūdo-** (st. of **nūdus**), *bare*; **novo-** (st. of **nōvus**), *NEW*; **integro-** (st. of **integer**), *whole*; **vulnes**³ (st. of **vulnus**), *wound*.

732. Form Denominative Verbs of the Second Conjugation from the following —

NOUN¹ STEMS: **albo-** (st. of **albus**), *white*; **flāvo-** (st. of **flāvus**), *yellow*; **lūc-** (st. of **lūx**), *LIGHT*.

733. Form Denominative Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation from the following —

NOUN¹ STEMS: **lēni-** (st. of **lēnis**), *soft*; **saevo-** (st. of **saevus**), *fierce*; **siti-** (st. of **sitis**), *thirst*; **custōd-** (st. of **custōs**), *guard*.

¹ See foot-note 8, Lesson XCIII.

⁴ Make the verb deponent, i.e., give

² See foot-note 5, Lesson XCIII.

it a passive form with active or reflexive meaning.

³ See foot-note 5, Lesson XCV.

ANECDOTES FROM CICERO.

NOTE: The following anecdotes are to be translated by the pupil and afterwards committed to memory. The point at which the several anecdotes may be taken up is indicated in a bracketed note prefixed to each; and the amount and kind of help afforded in the foot-notes is adapted to the needs of the pupil at the stage thus indicated.

734.

Discourtesy Rebuked.

[To follow Lesson XXXI.]

Memoriae prōditum est, cum¹ Athēnīs² lūdīs³ quīdam in theātrum grandis nātū vēniſſet,⁴ māgnō cōnsēſſū locum nusquam ēr⁵ datum⁶ ā suīs cīvibus. Cum autem ad Lace-daemoniōs accēſſisset,⁸ quī,⁹ lēgātī cum essent,¹⁰ cōrtō in locō cōnsēderant, cōnsurrēxisse¹¹ omnēs illī¹² dīcuntur et senem sēſſum¹³ recēpiſſe.¹⁴ Quibus¹⁵ cum ā cūnctō cōnsēſſū plausus esſet¹⁶ multiplex datus,¹⁶ dīxiſſe ex iīs quendam¹⁷ Athēniēnsīs scīre quae¹⁸ rēcta esſent,¹⁹ sed facere²⁰ nōlle.²¹

—[Cic. Cat. Maj. XVIII].

¹ when.

² A. & G. 258, c; H. 425, II.; G. 412.

³ The reference is to the great Pan-athenaic festival celebrated once in four years at Athens in honor of Athena as protectress of the city, and participated in by the combined population of Attica.

⁴ had come.

⁵ Abl. of place where without prep.

⁶ for him.

⁷ sc. esse; datum esse is the perf. pass. infin. of dō, give; the subj. of the infin. (here locum) is in the accusative. Translate: that room was made (lit., room to have been made).

⁸ he had come near.

⁹ who, nom. pl. masc.

¹⁰ they were.

¹¹ to have risen in a body.

¹² those (i.e., the Lacedaemonians), nom. pl. masc.

¹³ to be seated.

¹⁴ to have invited.

¹⁵ to them (lit., to whom).

¹⁶ had been given.

¹⁷ [prōditum est] dīxiſſe ex iīs quendam, [the story adds] that one of the Lacedaemonians said (lit., one from them to have said).

¹⁸ what, nom. neut. pl.

¹⁹ was.

²⁰ Pres. infin. of faciō, do.

²¹ Pres. infin. of nōlō, be unwilling. Translate: lacked the inclination.

735. Remarkable Instances of Mental Vigor in Extreme Old Age.

[To follow Lesson XXXV.]

1. Platō¹ ūnō et octōgēsimō annō scribēns est mortuus.²
2. Isocratēs³ eum⁴ librum quī⁵ Panathēnāicus⁶ īscrībitur quartō et nōnāgēsimō annō scripsisse sē⁷ dicit, vīxitque quīnquennium posteā.
3. Leontīnus⁸ Gorgiās⁹ centum et septem complēvit annōs, neque umquam ī suō studiō atque opere cēssāvit. Quī,¹⁰ cum ex eō quaererētur¹¹ cūr tam diū vellet esse¹² in vītā: “Nihil habeō,”¹³ inquit,¹⁴ “quod accūsem¹³ senectūtem.” Praeclārum respōnum, et doctō homine¹⁵ dīgnum!

—[Cic. Cat. Maj. V.].

¹ Platō, -ōnis, m., *Plato*, the celebrated Athenian philosopher; died 347 B.C.

² est mortuus, died.

³ Isocratēs, -is, m., *Isocrates*, a celebrated Athenian rhetorician and orator; died 338 B.C. On the composition and elaboration of the most celebrated of his orations, the “Panegyric,” he is said by some to have spent ten years, by others, fifteen.

⁴ that, acc. sing. masc.

⁵ which, nom. sing. masc.

⁶ Panathēnāicus, -i, m., the *Panathenaic*, an oration pronounced by Isocrates at one of the Panathenaic festivals; see 734, foot-note 3.

⁷ scripsisse sē, that he wrote (lit., himself to have written).

⁸ Leontīnus, -a, -um, adj., of Leontini (a town in Sicily).

⁹ Gorgiās, -ae, m., *Gorgias*, a celebrated rhetorician and orator of Leontini in Sicily; born about 480 B.C.

¹⁰ Hē (lit., who).

¹¹ cum ex eō quaererētur, when he was asked (lit., when it was inquired from him).

¹² vellet esse, he wished to be.

¹³ Nihil habeō quod accūsem, I have no fault to find with (lit., I have nothing which I may lay to the charge of).

¹⁴ See Lesson LIII., foot-note 12.

¹⁵ See Lesson XXXII., foot-note 3.

736. A Tree Known by Its Fruits.

[To follow Lesson XXXIX.]

Sophōclēs¹ ad summam senectūtem tragoeidiās fēcit.² Quod³ propter studium cum⁴ rem neglegere familiārem vidērētur,⁴ ā filiis in jūdiciū vocātus est, ut⁵ eum⁶ quasi dēsipientem ā rē familiārī removērent⁶ jūdieēs. Tum senex dīcitur eam⁷ fābulam quam⁸ in manibus habēbat et proxi-

mē scrīpserat, Oedipum⁹ Colōnēum,⁹ recitāsse¹⁰ jūdicibus,
quaesisseque¹¹ num illud¹² carmen dēsipientis vidērētur.¹³
Quō¹⁴ recitātō, sententiās jūdicum est līberātus.

— [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* VII.]

¹ Sophoclēs, -is, m., *Sophocles*, the famous Attic tragic poet, born at the village of Colonus, near Athens, 495 B.C.; died 406 B.C.

² Perfect indicative of *faciō*, *make, compose*.

³ *this* (lit., which), acc. neut. sing.

⁴ *cum vidērētur, as he was thought.*

⁵ *to the end that.*

⁶ *eum removērent, might remove him.*

⁷ *eam, acc. sing. fem., that.*

⁸ *quam, acc. sing. fem., which.*

⁹ Oedipūs, -odis and -I, m., *Oedipus; Colōnēus, -a, -um, adj., of Colonus.*

The “Oedipus of Colonus,” which was the last and finest play of Sophocles, recalls the scenery and the religious associations of the poet’s native village (cf. footnote 1). The passage said to have been recited on the occasion here referred to, contains a chorus descriptive of the beauties of Athens.

¹⁰ *to have recited.*

¹¹ *to have asked.*

¹² *illud, nom. neut. sing., that.*

¹³ *seemed [to them].*

¹⁴ Quōd, abl. neut. sing., *this* (lit., which).

737.

Tit for Tat.

[To follow Lesson XLII.]

Nāsīca¹ cum ad² poētam Enniūm³ vēnisset,² ēīque⁴ ab ḍōstiō quaerentī Enniūm ancilla dīxisset⁴ domī nōn esse,⁵ Nāsīca sēnsit illam⁶ dominī jūssū dīxisse⁶ et illum⁷ intus esse.⁷ Paucīs post diēbus, cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Enniūs et eum⁸ ā jānuā quaereret,⁸ exclāmat Nāsīca sē⁹ domī nōn esse. Tum Enniūs: “Quid?¹⁰ ego nōn cōgnōscō,” inquit, “vōcem tuam?” Hīc Nāsīca: “Homo es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaererem,¹¹ ancillae tuae crēdidi tē⁹ domī nōn esse; tū mihi¹² nōn crēdis ipsī¹²? ”

— [Cic. *de Orat.* 2, LXVIII.]

¹ Nāsīca, -ae, m., *Nasica* (Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica), a celebrated Roman jurist.

² *ad vēnisset, had come to [call on].*

³ Enniūs, -ii, m., *Ennius* (Quintus), the father of Roman epic poetry; lived 239-169 B.C.

⁴ ēī (dat.) dīxisset, *had told him.*

⁵ *domī esse, was* (lit., to be) *at home.*

⁶ *illam dīxisse, that she had said [so].*

⁷ *illum esse, that his friend was* (lit., him to be).

⁸ *eum quaereret, inquired for him.*

⁹ The subject of an infn. (here *esse*) is in the acc.

¹⁰ *What?*

¹¹ *I inquired for.*

¹² *ipsī, dat. sing., self.*

738.

The Soul Immortal.

[To follow Lesson XLVI.]

Apud Xenophontem¹ moriēns Cȳrus² mājor haec dīcit: “Nōlite arbitrārī,³ ō meī cārissimī filiī, mē,⁴ cum ā vōbīs discēsserō, nusquam aut nūllum fore.⁵ Nec enim, dum eram vōbīscum, animū meū vidēbātis, sed eū esse in hōc corpore ex iīs rēbus quās⁶ gerēbam intellegēbātis. Eundem⁴ igitur esse crēditōte, etiam sī nūllum vidēbitis.

— [Cic. Cat. Maj. XXII.]

¹ The reference is to a passage in Xenophon's *Cyropaedia*, an historical romance founded on the career of Cyrus the elder.

² Cyrus the elder founded the Persian empire 559 B.C.; after a long and prosperous reign, he was killed in battle 529 B.C. Xenophon, however, in the passage here referred to, represents him as dying

quietly in bed with his children and friends about him.

³ Nōlite arbitrārī, do not suppose (lit., be unwilling to suppose).

⁴ cf. 737, foot-note 9.

⁵ fore, used as fut. infin. of sum; mē fore, that I shall be.

⁶ quās, acc. pl. fem., which.

739.

Dead Muscle.

[To follow Lesson L.]

Quae¹ vōx potest esse² contemptior quam Milōnis Crotōniātae?³ quī, cum jam senex esset⁴ āthlētāsque sē exercentīs in curriculō vidēret,⁵ adspexisse⁶ lacertōs suōs dīcitur inlacrimānsque dīxisse:⁷ “At hī quidem mortuī jam sunt.” Nōn vērō tam istī quam tū ipse, nūgātor! Neque enim ex tē umquam es nōbilitātus, sed ex lateribus et lacertīs tuīs.

— [Cic. Cat. Maj. IX.]

¹ Quae, interrog. pron., nom. sing. fem., what.

² See Lesson LIII., foot-note 5.

³ Milō, -ōnis, Milo; Crotōniātēs, -ae, m., inhabitant of Crotona. Milo was a famous athlete of Crotona, in

Italy; many stories of his extraordinary feats are told by the ancient writers.

⁴ he was.

⁵ saw.

⁶ to have looked at.

⁷ to have said.

740.

Tertia's Pet Dog.

[To follow Lesson LIV.]

L. Paullus, cōsul iterum, cum ēī bellum ut¹ cum rēge Persē² gereret¹ obtigisset, ut eā ipsā diē domum³ ad vesperū rediit,⁴ filiolam suam Tertiām,⁵ quae tum erat admodum parva, ūsculāns⁶ animum advertit tristiculam. “Quid est,” inquit,⁷ “mea Tertia? quid⁸ tristis es?” “Mī⁹ pater,” inquit, “Persa¹⁰ periit.”¹¹ Tum ille artius¹² puellam complexus:¹³ “Accipiō,” inquit, “mea filia, ūmen.” Erat autem mortuus catellus eō nōmine.¹⁴ — [Cic. de Div. 1, XLVI.]

¹ ut gereret, *to conduct* (lit., that he should conduct).

² See Persēs in general vocabulary; for abl. Persē, cf. A. & G. 37 (comētēs); H. 50 (pyritēs).

³ Acc. of place to which without prep.

⁴ See redeō in general vocabulary.

⁵ The English form is the same as the Latin nom.

⁶ See ūsculor in general vocab.; ūsculor has a pass. form with act. meaning.

⁷ See Lesson LIII., foot-note 12.

⁸ Adverbial accusative, *why*.

⁹ See Lesson XX., foot-note 6.

¹⁰ Name of a pet dog; also a possible form of the name Persēs.

¹¹ See pereō in general vocabulary.

¹² artius, adv., *more closely, closer*.

¹³ See complector in general vocabulary; complector has a pass. form with active meaning.

¹⁴ cf. Exs. in 322.

741. Roman Character in the Earlier Days of the Republic.

[To follow Lesson LIX.]

Curiō¹ ad focum² sedentī māgnū aurī pondus Samnītēs³ cum attulissent,⁴ repudiātī sunt. Nōn enim aurum habēre praeclārum sibi vidērī dīxit, sed eīs quī habērent aurum imperāre.

— [Cic. Cat. Maj. XVI.]

¹ Manius Curius Dentātus, consul three times; he is often referred to in Cicero's writings as a noble example of the early Roman simplicity.

² focus, -ī, m., *fire-place, hearth*. The focus was a small platform of brick or stone raised a few inches above the ground; it stood in the atrium, which in primitive times served as sitting room, dining room, and kitchen.

³ Samnītēs, -iūm, m., *the Samnites*. The incident here narrated belongs to the period (about 273 B.C.) which followed the great wars of the Romans with the Samnites and Pyrrhus. Curius then retired to his farm in the Sabine country, and is said to have been found here by the Samnite ambassadors, sitting at his hearth and roasting turnips.

⁴ See adferō in general vocabulary.

742.

Brain Better than Brawn.

[To follow Lesson LXI.]

Olympiae¹ per stadium² ingressus esse³ Milō⁴ dicitur cum umeris sustinēret bovem. Utrum⁵ igitur hās corporis an⁶ Pȳthagorae⁶ tibi mālis⁷ vīris⁸ ingenii dārī? — [Cic. *Cat. Maj.* X.]

¹ Olympia, -ae, f., *Olympia*, a small plain in Elis, celebrated as the scene of the Olympic games; these games were held at intervals of four years and attracted spectators and participants from all parts of the world inhabited or colonized by Greeks.

² stadium, -it, n., *race-course*. The stadium was an oblong area having one end straight and the other semi-circular, and having its sides parallel. Around this area rose the seats of the spectators. The stadium was especially designed for the foot-race. The course extended from the straight end (see A, Fig. 1) to a point near the centre of the semicircle at the opposite end (see B, Fig. 1), and was 606½ feet long.

³ See *ingredior* in general vocab.; *ingredior* has a pass. form with act. meaning.

⁴ See 739, foot-note 3.

⁵ See references in foot-note 1, Lesson XLI.

⁶ Pythagoras, -ae, m., *Pythagoras*, a celebrated Greek philosopher who taught at Crotona in Italy. Three hundred of his disciples were formed into a brotherhood, partly philosophical, partly religious, and partly political, for the purpose of studying the doctrines of their master, and cultivating the observances which he enjoined. The contrast drawn in the text between Pythagoras and Milo is suggested by the fact that Milo was a member of this brotherhood.

⁷ mālis, second sing. pres. subj. of mālō, prefer; translate: *should you prefer?*

⁸ See refs. in foot-note 10, Lesson XXXVI.

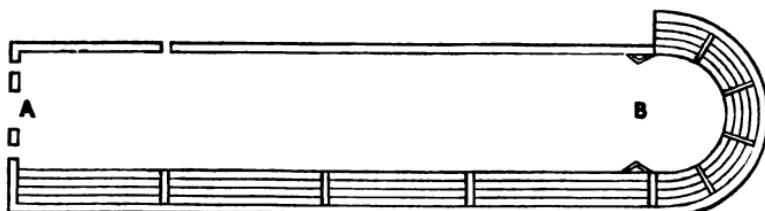


Fig. 1. — Ground-plan of a stadium at Cibyra in Lycia.

READING LESSONS.

I.

743. Division into Parties a Characteristic Feature of Gallic Society.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque,¹ sed paene etiam ī singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī² summa auctōritātem eōrum jūdiciō³ habēre exīstīmantur, quōrum ad arbitriū⁴ jūdiciūmque⁴ summa⁵ omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.⁶ Idque ējus rēi causā⁷ antīquitus īstitūtūm⁸ vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī⁹ egēret:¹⁰ suōs enim¹¹ quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat,¹² ullam inter suōs habet¹³ auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est ī summā¹⁴ tōtius Galliae;¹⁵ namque omnēs cīvitātēs in partēs dīvīsae sunt duās.

744. Classification of the Inhabitants of Gaul.

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominū quī aliquō sunt numerō¹ atque honōre,¹ genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs² paene servōrum habētur locō,³ quae⁴ nihil audet per sē, nūllō adhibētur cōnsiliō.⁵ Plēriōque, cum aut aere alienō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut injūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē ī servitūtem dicant nōbilis: in⁶ hōs eadem omnia sunt jūra quae dominis⁷ ī⁸ servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus⁸ alterum est Druidum,⁹ alterum equitum.

745. The Druids the Supreme Authority in Religious and Social Matters.

Illi¹ rēbus dīvīnis intersunt, sacrificia pūblica āc pīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad hōs māgnus adūlēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hī² sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrō-

versiis pūblicis prīvātīisque cōstituunt; et sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, sī dē fīnibus contrōversia est, idem³ dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōstituunt. Sī quī aut prīvātūs aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,⁴ sacrificiis interdīcunt.⁵ Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum,⁶ hī numerō⁶ impiōrum āc sceleratōrum habentur; hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnēmque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiāt; neque hīs petentib⁹ jūs redditur neque honōs ullus commūnicātur.

746. The Government of the Druids; their Annual Meeting; the Origin of their System.

Hīs autem omnibus Druidibus p̄aeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātē. Hōc mortuō,¹ aut, sī quī² ex reliquiis³ excellit dignitātē, succēdit; aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō⁴ Druidum, nōnnunquam etiam armis, dē principatū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore ī fīnibus Carnūtum,⁵ quae regiō tōtūs Galliae⁶ media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt, eōrumque dēcrētīs jūdicūsque pārent. Disciplīna⁷ in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstīmāt;⁸ et nunc quī⁹ diligētiūs¹⁰ eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

747. Immunities Enjoyed by the Druids; their Doctrines Orally Transmitted.

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt,¹ neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquiis pendunt; militiae vacātiōnēm omniumque rērum habent immūnitātē. Tantī excitatī praemiis, et² suā sponte multū in disciplīnam conveniunt³ et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.⁴ Māgnum ibī numerum versuum ēdiscere⁵ dīcuntur:⁶ itaque annōs nōnnūlli vīcēnōs⁷ in disciplīna⁸ permanent. Neque fās⁹ esse exīstīmant ea litterīs

mandāre,¹⁰ cum¹¹ in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs lītterīs ūtantur.¹² Id¹³ mihī duābus dē causīs īstituisse videntur,¹⁴ quod neque in vulgum disciplīnam efferrī velint,¹⁵ neque eōs quī discunt lītterīs¹⁶ cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque accidit¹⁵ ut praesidiō¹⁷ lītterārum dīlignantiam in perdiscendō¹⁸ āc memoriam remittant.¹⁹

748.

Teachings of the Druids.

In prīmīs¹ hōc volunt persuādēre,² nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs³ post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs,³ atque hōc⁴ māxi-mē ad virtūtem excitārī⁵ putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa practereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī āc terrārum⁶ māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī āc potestāte disputant et juventūtī trādunt.

749.

The Knights or Warrior Class.

Alterum genus est equitū.¹ Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod² bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī injūriās īferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent³), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque⁴ est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita⁴ plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.⁵

750. **Human Sacrifices Prevalent among the Gauls.**

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus,¹ atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus² morbiis quīque in proeliis periculīsque versantur,³ aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolatūrōs voent, administrīsque⁴ ad ea sacrificia Druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur,⁵ nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque ējusdem generis ha-bent īstitūta⁶ sacrificia. Aliī immānī māgnitūdine simulācrā habent, quōrum contexta vīniibus membra vīvīs hominibus

complent; quibus succēnsīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī ī fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxā sint comprehēnsi⁷ grātiōra diīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ējus generis cōpia dēfēcit,⁸ etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

751. The Gods Worshiped by the Gauls.

Deūm māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūjus sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc¹ omnium inventōrem¹ artium ferunt, hunc viārum² atque itinerum² ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem³ et Mārtem et Jovem⁴ et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum⁵ initia trādere, Jovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō⁶ dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō⁶ cēperint⁷ plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs⁸ cōnscrātīs cōspicārī licet, neque saepe accidit⁹ ut neglēcta quispiam religiōne¹⁰ aut capta apud sē¹¹ occultāre aut posita tollere audēret;¹² gravissimum ēī rēi supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitūtum est.

752. Traditional Origin of the Gauls; their Mode of Designating Intervals of Time; the Relation of Children to Parents.

Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte¹ prōgnātōs praedicant, idque² ab Druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam³ spatia omnis temporis⁴ nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium⁵ finiunt⁶; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.⁷ In reliquīs vītae īstitūtīs hōc ferē⁸ ab reliquīs differunt,⁹ quod suōs līberōs,¹⁰ nisi cum¹¹adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre¹² nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerilī aetātē¹³ in pūblicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

753. Marriage Settlements among the Gauls; Subjection of Wives.

Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēperunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimatiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant.¹ Hūjus omnis pecūniae conjunctim² ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur: uter eōrum vītā³ superārit,⁴ ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlustriōre locō nātus dēcessit,⁵ ējus propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspicīōnem vēnit,⁶ dē uxōribus in servīlem modum⁶ quaestīōnem habent et, sī compertum est,⁷ ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt.

754. Funeral Rites and Usages.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū¹ Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs² cordī² fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īferunt, etiam animālia: āc paulō³ suprā hanc memoriam⁴ servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dīlēctōs esse cōstābat, jūstūs fūneribus⁵ cōflectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

755. Free Discussion of Public Questions Forbidden by Law.

Quae cīvitātēs commodius¹ suam rem pūblicam administrare existimantur,² habent lēgibus sāncutum,³ sī quis⁴ quid⁴ dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit,⁵ utī ad magistrātūm dēferat⁶ nēve⁷ cum quō⁴ aliō commūnicet: quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōsiliū capere⁸ cōgnitum est.⁹ Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt¹⁰ occulant; quaeque esse ex ūsū jūdicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium¹¹ loquī nōn concēditur.

II.

756. The Worship of the Germans; their Out-of-Door Life.

Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque Druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus juvantur, Sōlem et² Volcānum³ et² Lūnam: reliquōs nē fāmā⁴ quidem accēpērunt. Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus⁵ atque ī studiīs rēi mīlitāris⁶ cōsistit; ab parvulīs⁷ labōrī āc dūritiae student.

757. Means of Subsistence; Annual Change of Abode.

Agricultūrae nōn student; mājorque pars eorum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō,¹ carne¹ cōsistit. Neque quisquam² agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs, sed magistrātūs āc pīncipēs in annōs singulōs³ gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum quī ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī⁴ attribuunt, atque annō⁵ post aliō trānsīre cōgunt.

758. The Reasons Assigned for this Annual Change of Abode.

Ējus rēi multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā¹ commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possēssiōni- bus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs² aedifcent; nē qua³ oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitātē plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.⁴

759. Deserted Frontiers Deemed an Evidence of Military Greatness.

Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vastatūs finibus¹ sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc² propriūm³ virtū-

tis⁴ existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere neque quemquam⁵ prope audere cōsistere: simul hoc⁶ se fore⁷ tūtiōres arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timore sublātō.⁸

**760. Methods of Government in War and in Peace;
Predatory Warfare Deemed Honorable.**

Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātūm dēfendit aut īfert, magistrātūs quī ēī bellō praeſint¹ ut vītae necisque habeant² potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis³ magistrātus, sed prīcipēs regiōnum⁴ atque pāgōrum⁴ inter suōs jūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent⁵ īfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cūjusque cīvitātis flunt; atque ea juventūtis exercendae āc dēſidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant.

761. Loyalty of the Germans to their Chiefs; Hospitality to Strangers.

Atque ubiⁱ quis¹ ex prīcipib⁹ in conciliō dīxit se ducem fore, quī³ sequī velint⁴ profiteantur,⁵ cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine conlaudantur; quī³ ex hīs⁶ secūtī nōn sunt, in dēſertōrum āc prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs⁷ rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.⁸ Hospitem violare fās nōn putant; quī³ quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt, ab injūriā prohibent, sāctōs⁹ habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

EXPLANATORY NOTES ON THE PRECEDING READING LESSONS.

743. ¹ pāgis refers to the districts; partibus to the parts or subdivisions of the districts. — ² qui, those who; cf. 393 and 394. — ³ eōrum jūdicīō, in their (*i.e.*, the Gauls') judgment. — ⁴ arbitrium, decision (of the arbitrator); jūdicium, sentence (of the judge). — ⁵ summa redeat, the final appeal is to be made. — ⁶ redeat: for mood, cf. 573, Ex. 1. — ⁷ Note the position of causā. — ⁸ institūtum: sc. esse. — ⁹ auxiliī: A. & G. 223; H. 410, V., 1; G. 389, Rem.2. — ¹⁰ egēret: for mood, cf. 528, Ex. 2; note that egēret takes its tense from institūtum (esse), not from vīdētur: A. & G. 287, a; H. 495, IV.; G. 518, Exc. — ¹¹ Note that enim is postpositive. — ¹² faciat: for mood and tense, cf. 601, Ex. 1. — ¹³ habet: H. 511, 1, (1). — ¹⁴ in summā, in general. — ¹⁵ Galliae: predicate possessive genitive limiting ratiō and separated from it by est: A. & G. 214, c; H. 401; G. 365.

744. ¹ numerō and honōre: cf. 322, Ex. 6. — ² plēbēs: archaic form of nominative = plēbs. — ³ locō: for absence of preposition, see A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2; G. 385, Rem. — ⁴ quae: and they (referring to the common people). — ⁵ cōnsiliō: dat., they are admitted to no council. — ⁶ in: over. — ⁷ sc. sunt; for case of dominīs, cf. Exs. in 449. — ⁸ Might the partitive genitive have been used in place of dē . . . generib⁹? See A. & G. 216, c; H. 307, n. 3; G. 371, Rem. 5. Why is it not used? — ⁹ Druidum: A. & G. 214, c; H. 401; G. 365.

745. ¹ Illi: refers to Druidum at the end of 744. — ² hi: refers to the Druids. — ³ idem: nom. pl. — ⁴ dēcrētō nōn stetit: does not acquiesce in the decision; note that stetit is construed with the ablative (dēcrētō); for tense of stetit (translated present), see A. & G. 279, b; H. 471, 5. — ⁵ sacrificiis interdicunt and Quib⁹ est interdictum: with interdicō, the thing from which the person is excluded is expressed by the abl. of separation (see sacrificiis); the person on whom the prohibition is laid is expressed by the dat. (see Quib⁹). For the impersonal use of interdicō in the pass., cf. Exs. in 522. — ⁶ numerō: abl. of place where, without prep.

746. ¹ mortuō: perf. part. of morior; hōc mortuō, at his death. — ² qui: used subst. = quis. — ³ ex reliquis: see refs. in 744, note 8. — ⁴ suffrāgiō: in the same construction as armis. — ⁵ Carnūtum:

southwest of Paris, between the Seine and Loire. — ⁶**Galliae**: gen. after **media**: A. & G. 218, *a*; H. 399, 3; G. 373. — ⁷**Disciplina**: *the Druidical system*. — ⁸ Note that Caesar says here: **disciplina trānslāta esse existimātur**, *the system is thought to have been transferred*; might he have said: **disciplinam trānslātam esse existimātur**, *it is thought that the system was transferred?* See A. & G. 330, *b*; H. 534, n. 1, (2); G. 528. — ⁹**qui**: cf. 743, note 2. — ¹⁰**diligentius cōgnōscere**: *to gain a more thorough acquaintance with, or a more accurate knowledge of*.

747. ¹**cōnsuērunt**: cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 2. — ²**et**: *both*. — ³**in disciplinam convenient**: *place themselves under instruction*; hence, *enter the order*. — ⁴**mittuntur**: sc. **multi**. — ⁵**ēdiscere**: *to learn by heart*; note the intensive force of the prep. — ⁶ Note that Caesar says: **ēdiscere dicuntur**; might he have said: **eōs ēdiscere dicitur?** cf. 746, note 8. — ⁷**vicēnōs**: *why not vigintī?* — ⁸**in disciplinā**: *under training*. — ⁹**fās**, def. neut., *divine law*; hence, translated adjectively, *right, lawful, proper*. — ¹⁰**litteris mandāre**: *to commit to writing*. — ¹¹**cum**: *although*. — ¹²**ūtantur**: *for mood*, cf. 642, Ex. 3. — ¹³**Id**: *this practice*. — ¹⁴**videntur**: cf. note 6. — ¹⁵ Note that in **quod . . . velint** the writer is reporting the reason of the Druids; whereas, below, in **quod . . . accidit** he is assigning a reason of his own. For the difference of mood, see A. & G. 321 and *a*; H. 516, I. and II.; G. 540 and 541. — ¹⁶**litteris**: abl. with **cōnfisōs**, *depending on*. — ¹⁷**praeidiō**: *through dependence on*. — ¹⁸**perdiscendō**: note the intensive force of the prep., and cf. note 5. — ¹⁹**remittant**: *translate relax with diligentiam, enfeeble with memoriam*; *for mood*, cf. 556, Ex. 5.

748. ¹**In prīmis**: *among their foremost [doctrines]*; hence, *especially, particularly*. — ²**persuādēre**: *to inculcate*. — ³**ab aliis ad aliōs**: *from one body to another*. — ⁴**hōc**: *by this belief*. — ⁵**excitāri**: sc. **hominēs**. — ⁶**terrārum**: *the earth (as made up of various lands)*.

749. ¹**equitum**: cf. 744, note 9. — ²**aliquid**: *why not aliquid?* See A. & G. 105, *d*, *n*; H. 190, *n*. 1; G. 105, *1*. — ³**utī . . . inferrent** and **utī . . . prōpulsārent** are subst. clauses of result in apposition with **quod**; for the subjunctives, cf. Exs. in 556. — ⁴**ut quisque amplissimus . . . ita plūrimōs**: *the more distinguished . . . the more numerous*. — ⁵**nōvērunt**: *acknowledge, recognize*.

750. ¹**religiōnibus**: *superstition*. — ²**graviōribus**: *of unusual severity*; cf. Lesson XXX., foot-note 4. — ³**versantur**: *are in the midst*

of, are encompassed by. — ⁴ **administris**: predicate abl. agreeing in case with **Druīdibus**; translate: *they employ the Druids as agents*. — ⁵ **reddētur**: A. & G. 336 (last sentence); H. 524; G. 653. The person making the sacrifice thinks (direct discourse): **nisi vita reddētur, nōn potest nūmen plācārī**. — ⁶ **institūta**: predicate participle; translate: *they have sacrifices established* (not *they have established sacrifices*). See A. & G. 292, c; H. 388, 1, n.; G. 230. — ⁷ **sint comprehēnsī**: for mood, see refs. under note 5. — ⁸ **dēfēcit**: *fails*; for tense, see refs. on **stetit**, 745, note 4.

751. ¹ **hunc and inventōrem**: for the two accs., cf. Exs. in 397. — ² **iter** is simply a *road* leading to a place; **via** is *the usual road*, often a *paved street or highway*. **Viārum atque itinerum ducem**: *their guide in journeys*. — ³ **Apollinem**, etc.: sc. colunt. — ⁴ **Jovem**: see **Jūppi-ter** in general vocabulary. — ⁵ **operum atque artificiōrum**: *manufactures and industrial arts*. — ⁶ **proeliō** and **bellō**: cf. Lesson XXXIV., foot-note 11. — ⁷ **cēperint**: fut. perf. indic. — ⁸ **locis**: A. & G. 258, f; H. 425, 2. — ⁹ **accidit**: is it in the present tense or the perfect? To determine this, observe the tense of the dependent subjunctive **audēret**: A. & G. 287, a; H. 495, 1; G. 511, Rem. 2. — ¹⁰ **religiōne**: *sacredness* (of the offering). — ¹¹ **apud sē**: *at his own house*. — ¹² **audēret**: what is the construction of the clause **ut . . . audēret?** cf. 556, Ex. 5, and 561.

752. ¹ **Dite**: i.e., the god of the under world; in other words, the Gauls believed that their ancestors sprang from the soil. — ² **id**: *this tradition*. — ³ **Ob eam causam**: i.e., on account of their descent from the god of the realms of darkness. — ⁴ **spatia omnis temporis**: *all their periods of time*; grammatically, however, *omnis* agrees with *temporis*. — ⁵ **noctūm**: cf. the English expressions *fortnight* (fourteen nights) and *sennight* (seven nights). — ⁶ **finiunt**: *compute, reckon*. — ⁷ **ut noctem diēs subsequātur**: according to the reckoning of the Gauls, therefore, the day began at sunset, and the celebration of all anniversaries was entered upon in the evening. Compare our Christmas Eve. — ⁸ **hōc ferē**: *chiefly in this*. — ⁹ **differunt**: *differ*; this meaning appears to be confined to the present system. — ¹⁰ **liberōs**: why not *puerōs*? See Lesson XVIII., foot-note 2. — ¹¹ **nisi cum**: *until*. — ¹² **ad sē adire**: *to appear before them*. — ¹³ **filium puerili aetāte**: *a son who is a minor*.

753. ¹ **quantās pecūniās . . . accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis cum dōtibus communīcant**: *they add to the dowries out of their own*

resources as much money as they have received. — ² **conjunctim ratiō habētur:** *a joint account is kept.* — ³ **vitā:** cf. Exs. in 228. — ⁴ **super-rārit:** fut. perf. indic. — ⁵ **dēcēssit** and **vēnit:** for force of tense, cf. 750, note 8. — ⁶ **in servilem modum:** *as in the case of slaves (i.e., by torture).* — ⁷ **sī compertum est:** *if guilt is proved;* cf. also note 5.

754. ¹ **prō cultū:** *considering the [imperfect] civilization.* — ² **vīvis cordī:** *cordi esse alicui = to lie near one's heart, to be dear to one;* for the two datives, cf. Exs. in 452. — ³ **paulō:** cf. Exs. in 545. — ⁴ **suprā hanc memoriam:** *before our time.* — ⁵ **jūstis fūneribus:** *the funeral rites proper, i.e., the regular or established funeral rites.*

755. ¹ **commodius:** *more judiciously (than the rest).* — ² **existimantur:** cf. 746, note 8. — ³ **sānctum** is here a predicate participle belonging to the clause *uti . . . commūnicet*; cf. 750, note 6. — ⁴ **quis** and **qui** are indefinite after **sī** and **nē.** — ⁵ **accēperit:** perf. subj., not fut. perf. indic.; why? — ⁶ **dēferat:** cf. Exs. in 686. — ⁷ **nēve:** *and not;* **nēve** (not **neque**) is the regular continuative particle in negative imperative clauses. — ⁸ **capere:** *rashly enter upon.* — ⁹ **cōgnitum est:** *experience has shown;* what is the subject? — ¹⁰ **quae visa sunt:** *what they deem proper.* — ¹¹ **per concilium:** *in public council.*

756. ¹ **hāc:** *i.e., of the Gauls.* — ² **et:** for the repetition of the conjunction, see A. & G. 208, b (last part); H. 554, 6 (last part); G. 483, 2. — ³ **Volcānum:** *Vulcan, the fire god;* hence, here, *fire.* — ⁴ **fā-mā:** note the position. — ⁵ **vēnātiōnib⁹:** plural used because of the repeated instances; translate by the singular. — ⁶ **in studiis rēi mili-tāris:** *in military pursuits.* — ⁷ **ab parvulis:** *from childhood.*

757. ¹ For the omission of the conjunction **et** with **cāseō** and **carne,** see A. & G. 208, b (first sentence); H. 554, 6; G. 483, 2; cf. **Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam** in 756. — ² Note that the clause in which **quisquam** appears is negative; see refs. in foot-note 5, Lesson LVII. — ³ **in annōs singulōs:** *every year.* — ⁴ **agri:** construe with **quantum:** A. & G. 216, a, 3; H. 397, 3; G. 371; **quantum . . . agri,** *as much land and in such a place as they think fit.* — ⁵ **annō post:** *the year after;* cf. 545, Ex. 3.

758. ¹ **agricultūrā:** cf. 662, Ex. 4. — ² **vitandōs:** *for the purpose of avoiding, etc.;* note that **vitandōs** belongs to **frigora** as well as to **aestūs,** but that it agrees with the latter: A. & G. 187; H. 439, 1; G. 286. — ³ **nē qua:** see 755, note 4; for **qua** instead of **quae,** see A. & G. 105, d; H. 190, 1; G. 105, 1. — ⁴ **videat:** cf. 642, Ex. 2.

759. ¹ *vastatis finibus*: abl. abs., by laying waste their frontiers. — ² **Hoc**: explained by *expulsos . . . cōsistere*. — ³ *proprium*: a special proof (something peculiarly belonging to). — ⁴ *virtutis*: for the gen. after *proprius* (where the dat. might be looked for), see: A. & G. 218, d; H. 391, II., 4, (2); G. 356, Rem. 1. — ⁵ *quemquam*: see 757, note 2. — ⁶ *hōc*: abl. of cause. — ⁷ *fore*: used as fut. infin. of sum. — ⁸ *sublatō*: see *tollō* in general vocabulary.

760. ¹ *praesint*: subj. of purpose. — ² *habeant*: subj. of result. — ³ *commūnis*: common to all, having general jurisdiction. — ⁴ *regiōnum atque pāgōrum*: provinces and districts; *regiō*, a portion of country of indefinite extent; *pāgus*, a district having fixed boundaries. — ⁵ *habent*: involve, are attended with.

761. ¹ *quis*: *ubī* (whenever) has here the force of *sī*; hence *quis* is indefinite, anyone. — ² *ex principibus*: cf. 744, note 8. — ³ *qui*: those who, cf. 743, note 2. — ⁴ *velint*: for the mood, cf. 750, note 7. — ⁵ *profiteantur*: cf. Exs. in 686; translate: and that those who wish to follow are to give in their names. Restore to the direct form: *sē ducem . . . profiteantur*. — ⁶ *his*: refers to those who have expressed a willingness to follow the chief; on *ex his*, cf. note 2. — ⁷ *hīs*: dat. (not abl.); cf. Exs. in 620. — ⁸ *omnium . . . dērogātur*: all confidence is thereafter withdrawn from them. — ⁹ *sāctus*, sacred in the sense of inviolable; *sacer*, sacred in the sense of consecrated to some divinity. Could *sacrōs*, then, be substituted for *sāctōs* in the present passage?

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G.,	Allen and Greenough's Gram.	interj.,	interjection.
abbr.,	abbreviation, abbreviated.	interrog., inter.,	interrogative.
abl.,	ablative.	intr.,	intransitive.
abl. pers.,	ablative of the person.	irreg.,	irregular.
abs.,	absolute, absolutely.	lit.,	literal, literally.
acc.,	accusative.	loc.,	locative.
acc. pers.,	accusative of the person.	M.,	masc., masculine.
acc. th.,	accusative of the thing.	mod.,	modern.
act.,	active.	N.,	neuter.
adj.,	adjective, adjectively.	n.,	note.
adv.,	adverb, adverbially.	neg.,	negative.
ant.,	antecedent.	num.,	numeral.
app.,	apposition, appositive.	opp.,	opposed to.
C.,	common (masculine or feminine).	opt.,	optative.
cf. (cōfēr),	compare.	ord.,	ordinal.
cogn.,	cognate with.	orig.,	original, originally.
comp.,	comparative.	p.,	page.
conj.,	conjunction.	p. a.,	participial adjective.
conn.,	connected.	par.,	paragraph.
dat.,	dative.	part.,	participle.
dat. pers.,	dative of the person.	part. gen.,	partitive genitive.
dat. ref.,	dative of reference.	pass.,	passive.
dat. th.,	dative of the thing.	perf.,	perfect.
def.,	defective.	periphr.,	periphrastic.
demonstr.,	demonstrative.	pers.,	person, personal.
denom.,	denominative.	pl.,	plural.
dim.,	diminutive.	poss.,	possessive.
disc.,	discourse.	pp.,	pages.
distr.,	distributive.	prep.,	preposition.
e. g. (exempli grātiā),	for example.	pres.,	present.
Ex.,	example.	pron.,	pronoun, pronominal.
exclam.,	exclamation.	q. v. (quod vidē),	which see.
F.,	fem., feminine.	ref.,	reference.
fm.,	form.	reflex.,	reflexive, reflexively.
fr.,	from.	rel.,	relative.
fut.,	future.	Rem.,	remark.
G.,	Gildersleeve's Grammar.	sc. (scilicet),	supply, understand.
gen.,	genitive.	sent.,	sentence.
gen. pers.,	genitive of the person.	sing.,	singular.
gen. th.,	genitive of the thing.	st.,	stem.
ger.,	gerundive.	subj.,	subjunctive.
H.,	Harkness's Grammar.	subst.,	substantive, substantively.
hist.,	historical.	suff.,	suffix.
i. e. (id est),	that is.	sup.,	supine.
imper.,	imperative.	superl.,	superlative.
impers.,	impersonal.	fr., trans.,	transitive.
indecl.,	indeclinable.	Trans.,	translate.
indef.,	indefinite.	usu.,	usually.
indic.,	indicative.	vb.,	verb.
indir.,	indirect.	vocab.,	vocabulary.
infin.,	infinitive.	w.,	with.

VOCABULARIES.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

NOTE: The sign '✓' signifies 'root'; thus ✓gen- is to be read 'root gen-'.

For the use of the asterisk (*), see Lesson XCIII., foot-note 9.

The term 'base' is applied to stems or parts of stems treated as roots; see **clāmor**.

English words or parts of words that have been *borrowed* (directly or indirectly) from the Latin forms under which they appear, are printed in *this type*; for examples, see: **causa, aeternus**. English words or parts of words that are *cognate* with the Latin forms under which they appear, are printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**; for examples, see: **frāter, pedes**.

Roots, stems, or complete words that enter into the formation of the words in this vocabulary, are given, together with their meanings, in brackets; the nominative or indicative form of each stem cited is given in parenthesis; the suffix is not given. For examples, see: **aditus, agmen, adjungō, amicitia**.

In the resolution of compounds given in brackets, the hyphen is appended to inseparable prefixes to distinguish them from the prepositions, which may stand alone. Thus **in-** is the inseparable negative prefix, cognate with English **UN-**; but **in** is the preposition, cognate with English **IN**. For examples, see: **impendeō, imperitus, redeō**.

In the principal parts of verbs, the perfect participle usually appears in the masculine form; but in verbs that are *invariably* intransitive the neuter form is given. For examples, see: **dūcō, veniō**.

The abbreviations used are explained on the preceding page.

ā, ab, abs

ā, ab, abs (**ab** before vowels and some consonants, **ā** before consonants only, **abs** sometimes in the expression **abs tē**), prep. w. abl., *away from, from; by; in, on, at*: **ab sinistrā parte**, *on the left side*; OF: **ab aliquō quaerere**, *to inquire of someone*; **to:** **āversus ā**, *hostile to, opposed to, averse to*.

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [**ab, away**; **dūcō, lead**], *lead away, carry OFF*.

ab-eō, -ere, -īvī or -īi, -itum [**ab, away**; **eō, go**], *go away*.

ab-solvō, -ere, -vī, -ūtus [**ab, from**; **solvō, loose**], *absolve, acquit*.

ac-cendō

abstinentia, -ae, F. [abstinent- (st. of **abstinēns**), **abstaining**], *self-restraint, abstinence*.

abs-tineō, -ēre, -ūi [**abs, OFF**; **teneō, hold**], *hold OFF, abstain*.

ab-sum, **abesse**, **āfui** [**ab, away**; **sum, be**], *be away, be absent, be distant; be wanting; ā bellō abesse, to take no part in war*.

āc, see **atque**.

ac-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [**ad, to**; **cēdō, go or come**], *go or come to, approach; be added; ac-cēdere ad, to come up to*.

ac-cendō, -ere, -cēndī, -cēnsus [**ad, to**; **ācēnd-, set fire**], *kindle; inflame, fire*.

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidi [ad, to ; cadō, fall], happen, occur; (w. dat. pers.) happen to, befall.

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, to (one's self); capiō, take], accept, receive; receive (as by transmission from ancestors); experience; hear of, hear.

ac-commodō, -äre, -āvī, -ātūs [ad, to ; commodō, make suitable], adjust.

accūrātē, adv. [abl. form of accūrātūs, careful], carefully, elaborately.

ac-currō, -ere, -cucurri or -currī, -cursum [ad, to ; currō, run], run to, hasten to.

ac-cūsō, -äre, -āvī, -ātūs [ad, to, against; causa, charge (through denom. vb. *causō; cf. causor)], bring a charge against, call to account, take to task, accuse.

Achillās, -ae, m., **Achillas** (commander of the forces of Ptolemy Dionysus, king of Egypt).

aciēs, -ē and -ēi, f. [vac., sharp], EDGE; line of battle, line, army (drawn up in battle array).

āriter, adv. [ācri (st. of ācer), sharp], sharply, with energy, vigorously, resolutely, valiantly.

ad, prep. w. acc. (opp. ab), (of motion towards) to, against; (of nearness) AT, close by; (w. num.) about; according to; (expressing purpose, especially with gerunds or gerundives) for; **ad hunc modum**, as follows; **ad Id. April.** = ad Idūs Aprilis, on the Ides (thirteenth) of April.

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ad, to ; dūcō, lead], lead to, lead, bring to, bring; lead, prompt, move, incite, influence.

ad-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivī), -itus [ad, to ; eō, go], go to, get AT, approach, come into the presence of, appear before; incur.

ad-ferō, adferre, attulī, adlātūs (allātūs) [ad, to ; ferō, BEAR, bring], bring to, BRING, Bring forward, advance.

ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad, to ; faciō, do], DO (something) to, visit with; hence, (in good sense) bestow upon; (in bad sense) inflict upon; **adfectus morbis**, hating diseases, laboring under diseases.

ad-finis, -e, adj. [ad, near to ; finis, boundary], having adjacent boundaries, neighboring; related to; privy to, implicated in.

ad-hibeō, -äre, -ui, -itus [ad, to, towards; habeō, hold], hold towards, bring to; summon, invite, admit; apply; exercise.

ad-hūc (accent the final syllable), adv. [ad, to; hūc, hither], hitherto, up to this time.

ad-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus [ad, to (one's self); emō, take], (take to one's self from another, and so) take away from, deprive of (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

aditus, -ūs, m. [ad-vi-, go to], a going to, approach, access; presence.

ad-jungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -junctus [ad, to ; jungo, join], join to, join, unite, add to.

ad-juvō, -äre, -jūvī, -jūtus [ad, to ; juvō, give aid], give aid to, aid.

ad-minister, -tri, m. [ad, near to ; minister, servant], (one who is at hand to serve, and so) assistant, minister, agent.

ad-ministrō, -äre, -āvī, -ātūs [ad, near to ; ministrō, serve], (be at hand to serve, and so) assist; manage, execute, administer, conduct.

ad-miror, -ārī, -ātūs [ad, AT; miror, wonder], wonder AT, admire.

ad-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [ad, to ; mittō, let go], let go to, admit; allow, permit; commit, perpetrate, perform.

admodum, adv. [ad, up to ; modus, measure, limit], (to a [great] measure, and so) excessively, extremely, quite.

ad-olēsco, -ere, -ēvī, -ultus [ad, to (maturity); olēscō, grow], grow or come to maturity, grow up.

adrogantia, -ae, f. [adrogant (st. of adrogāns), *arrogant*], *arrogance, presumption.*

ad-scendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsus [ad, to; scandō, *climb*], *climb to, climb, ascend.*

ad-sequor, -i, -cūtus [ad, up to; sequor, *follow*], *attain to, accomplish.*

adsiduus, -a, -um, adj. [ad-*v*sed, sit by], (sitting or staying by, and so) *constant, long-continued, incessant.*

ad-sistō, -ere, -stiti [ad, AT, by; sistō, *place*], *place one's self AT or by, place one's self, stand.*

ad-speciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectus [ad, to, AT; speciō, *look*], *look AT or upon, look.*

adsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factus [adsuē- (st. in adsuēscō), be *accustomed*; faciō, *make*], *accustom, habituate, train.*

ad-sum, *adesse*, adfuī [ad, AT, near; sum, be], *be AT hand, be there; be by to assist, stand by.*

Aduātuci, -ōrum, m., the *Aduatuci* (a German tribe in Belgic Gaul between the Meuse and the Scheldt).

adulēscēns, -entis, c. [p. a., used subst., of adulēscō (with change of o to u), *grow up*], *one not yet grown to maturity; young man or woman, youth.*

adulēscēntia, -ae, f. [adulēscēnt (st. of adulēscēns), *young*], *youth, the time of youth.*

ad-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus [ad, to; veniō, *COME*], *COME to, COME.*

adventus, -ūs, m. [ad-*v*en-, *COME to*], *coming to, arrival.*

adversus, -a, -um [p. a. of ad-vertō, *turn towards*], 1. *turned towards, facing, opposite; unsuccessful, adverse.* 2. **adversus**, prep. w. acc., *towards.*

ad-vertō, -ere, -ti, -sus [ad, to; vertō, *turn*], *turn to; animum adverte, to perceive.*

ad-vesperāscit, -ere, -āvit, im-

pers. [ad, on, near; vesperāscit, *evening is coming*], *evening is coming on, it is getting to be evening.*

aedificium, -ii, n. [aedific- (st. of *aedifex), *builder*; cf. artifcium, fr. artific-, st. of artifex], *building.*

aedificō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [aedific- (st. of *aedifex), *builder*], (act as a builder, and so) *construct a building; build.*

aedilis, -is, m. [aedi- (st. of aedis or aedēs), *building*], (adj. used subst., and so) *officer having to do with (public) buildings, superintendent of public works, aedile.*

Aeduī, -ōrum, m., the *Aeduī* (a tribe in Celtic Gaul between the Loire and the Saône); in sing., **Aeduus**, -i, m., an *Aeduān.*

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, ill, diseased, feeble.*

aegrē, adv. [abl. fm. of aeger, q.v.], *with difficulty.*

aemulus, -a, -um, adj., *envious, jealous.*

aequitās, -ātis, f. [aequo- (st. of aequus), *even*], *evenness; animi aequitās, contented state of mind, content.*

aequō, -are, -āvi, -ātus [aequo- (st. of aequus), *level, equal*], *place on a level, put on equality, make equal, equalize.*

aequor, -oris, n. [base aequo- (in aequō and aequus), *level*], (evenness, and so) *surface; sea (as presenting a level surface).*

aerārium, -ii, n. [aes- (st. of aes; -s- becomes -r-), *money*], (adj. used subst., and so) *place for depositing money, treasury.*

aes, aeris, n. [cogn. w. Eng. ORE], *copper, bronze; money; aes allēnum, another's money, i.e., debt.*

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer season.* **aestimātiō**, -ōnis, f. [aestimā- (st. of aestimō), *value*], *valuation, appraisement, estimate.*

aestimō, -are, -āvi, -ātus, *value, estimate, fix; consider, deem.*

aestuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [aestu- (st. of aestus), heat], full of heat, burning hot.

aestus, -ūs, m., boiling, tossing, and so (of fire, etc.) heat; (of the sea) swell; maritimi aestūs, tides.

aetās, -ātis, f. [= aevitās, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum), age], time of life, life, age.

aeternus, -a, -um, adj. [= aeviternus, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum), eternity, age], eternal.

Africānus, -ī, m. [Āfricā- (st. of Africa), Africa], (adj. used subst.) conqueror of Africa, Africanus (surname of Scipio the elder as conqueror of Hannibal at Zama 202 B.C.; also of Scipio the younger as destroyer of Carthage 146 B.C.).

ager, -grī, m. [cogn. w. Eng. ACRE], land, soil; field; district; in pl., fields, country districts.

Agēsi-lāus, -ī, m., Agesilaus (king of the Spartans B.C. 398-361).

* ag-ger, -eris, m. [ad, to; v̄ges- (-s- becomes -r-), carry], (what is carried to, and so) materials for constructing a mound (as earth, stone, brushwood, etc.); mound, embankment; rampart.

agmen, -inis, n. [v̄ag-, put in motion, lead], (that which is led, and so) train, army (on the march); novissimum agmen, rear.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [v̄ag-, put in motion], lead, drive; do; (of courts, assizes, etc.) hold; agere dē, to discuss, to talk over; agere cum, to treat or confer with; (imper.) agite, on!

agrārius, -a, -um, adj. [agro- (st. of ager), land], pertaining to land.

agri cultūra or agricultūra, -ae, f. [ager, soil; cultūra, cultivation], cultivation of the soil, agriculture.

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., eager.

alacritās, -ātis, f. [alaci- (st. of alacer), eager], eagerness.

ālārius, -a, -um, adj. [ālā- (st. of āla), wing], belonging to the wing; subst., ālārlī, -ōrum, m., auxiliaries (posted on the wings of the army).

albeō, -ēre [albo- (st. of albus), white], be white.

Alexandrēa (or -ia), -ae, f., Alexandria (capital of Egypt; founded by Alexander B.C. 331).

Alexandrini, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of Alexandria; see Alexandria.

algor, -ōris, m., cold.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alio- (st. of alius), other], belonging to another, another's, foreign; unfavorable.

aliō, adv. [old case form of alius, other, used adv.], to another place, elsewhere.

aliquandō, adv. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, some; quandō, WHEN], at some time; at any time.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, some; quantus, how much, what], somewhat.

aliqui, -qua, -quod, indef. adj. pron. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, some, any; qui, which], some; any.

aliquis, -quid, indef. pron. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, some, any; quis, who], some one, something; any one, anything; occasionally adj., some; any.

aliquot, indecl. adj. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), giving an indefinite meaning, some; quot, how many], several.

aliter, adv. [ali- (st. of old forms of alius), other], otherwise.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. and subst. [cogn. with English ELSE], other, another; aliis . . . aliis [one . . . one], another . . . another; one

another ; ab aliis ad aliōs, from one [body] to another.

Allobrogēs, -um, M., *the Allobrogēs* (a tribe of Celtic Gauls between the Rhone and the Isère).

alō, -ere, alūi, altus[*val*-, *nourish*], *nurture, rear, bring up, support, maintain.*

alter, -tera, -terum, adj. [comparative form of base al- seen in alias; hence alter refers to two objects, or groups of objects], **OTHER (of two) ; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the OTHER, each OTHER.**

altitūdō, -inis, F. [*alto*- (st. of altus), *high, deep*, *height ; depth.*

altus, -a, -um [p. a. of alō, *nurture*; cogn. w. English OLD], (*made great by nurturing, and so high, tall ; deep.*

amāns, -antis [p. a. of amō, *love*], *loving, fond, friendly.*

ambactus, -i, M., *vassal.*

Ambiāni, -ōrum, M., *the Ambiani* (a tribe in Belgic Gaul).

ambitus, -üs, M. [*amb*-vi-, *go about*], *going about ; corrupt canvassing for votes, and so bribery.*

amicē, adv. [abl. form of amīcus, *friendly, kind*], *kindly, favorably.*

amicitia, -ae, F. [*amico*- (st. of amīcus), *friendly*], *friendship, anxiety.*

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. amō, *love*], *friendly, favorably disposed ; subst., friend.*

ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [ab, from ; mittō, *let go*, *lose.*

amor, -ōris, M. [*base am-* (in amō), *love*], *love.*

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ampliflico*- (st. of *amplificus), *making large*], *enlarge, increase, extend.*

amplus, -a, -um, adj., *large, ample ; illustrious, glorious, distinguished, magnificent*; n. comp. used adv., *amplius, more.*

Amūlius, -ii, M., *Amulius* (legendary king of Alba).

an, conj., *or.*

an-ceps, -cipitis, adj. [*amb*-, *on*

*both sides, double ; capit- (st. of caput), HEAD], (with head on both sides, double headed, and so) *double ; doubtful ; treacherous.**

ancilla, -ae, F., *maid-servant, girl.*

ancora, -ae, F., *anchor.*

angor, -ōris, M. [*\v{a}ang-*, *squeeze*], *strangling ; anguish.*

angulus, -i, M., *angle, corner.*

angustiae, -ārum, F. [*angusto*- (st. of angustus), *strait, narrow*], *straits, difficulties, perplexities.*

anima, -ae, F., *air ; breath ; life ; soul, spirit, mind.*

animadvertisō, -ere, -tī, -versus [*animum, mind* ; *advertisō, turn to*], *turn the mind to, perceive, observe, notice, note ; (w. in and acc.) inflict punishment ON.*

animal, -ālis, N. [= animāle, n. adj. used subst., fr. animā- (st. of anima), *breath, life*], (that which has breath or life, and so) *living creature, animal.*

animōsus, -a, -um, adj. [*animō*- (st. of animus), *courage*], *full of courage, spirited.*

animus, -i, M., *soul, spirit ; disembodied or departed spirit ; mind ; heart, feelings ; disposition ; courage.*

annālis, -e, adj. [*anno-* (st. of annus), *year*], *pertaining to the year.*

annōsus, -a, -um, adj. [*anno*- (st. of annus), *year*], *full of years.*

annus, -i, M., *year ; in annōs singulōs, each year, every year.*

annuus, -a, -um, adj. [*anno*- (st. of annus), *year*], *yearly, annual ; translated adv., annually.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before, in advance of*; adv., *before, earlier.*

anteā, adv. [*ante, before* ; acc. pl. n. eat (orig. eā), *these things*], *before.*

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātūs [*ante, before* ; *ferō, BEAR*], *BEAR before ; prefer.*

† This is sometimes explained as an abl.; but see Cors. Ausspr. I. 769, II. 455.

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [ante, before; pōnō, place], place before, prefer.

ante quam orantequam [ante, sooner; quam, than], before; until.

antiquitus, adv. [antiquo- (st. of antiquus), ancient], anciently, in former times, in early times.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [=anticus, fr. anti- (st. of ante), before], ancient, of early date, early.

aperiō, -ire, -erui, -ertus, open.

aperte, adv. [abl. fm. of apertus, open], openly, manifestly, obviously.

apertus, -a, -um [p. a. of aperiō, open], open, exposed; free from trees.

Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo* (son of Jupiter and Latona, and brother of Diana; god of the sun, and of divination, healing, archery, poetry, music, etc.).

ap-pāreō, -ēre, -pāruī [ad, to, before; pāreō, be ready], appear; apparet, it is evident.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, accost, address, greet; entile, call.

appetēns, -entis [p. a. of appetō, seek after], desirous; covetous.

ap-petō, -ere, -ivī or -ī, -itus [ad, to, towards, after; petō, seek], seek after, strive to secure.

approbātor, -ōris, m. [approbā- (st. of approbō), approve], prover; probatōr esse, to approve.

ap-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad, to; propinquō, draw near], draw near to, approach.

Aprilis, -is, m. [= *Aperīlis, adj. used subst., fr. aperi- (st. of aperiō), open], (the month which opens the ground, i.e.) April.

Apsus, -ī, m., *Apsus* (a river in southern Illyria).

apud, prep. w. acc., (in designations of place) with, at, near, about, before; (w. subst. referring to persons) at the headquarters of, at the house of, in the works of, according to; in the estimation of, in the case of; among.

Āpūlia, -ae, f., *Apulia* (province in southern Italy).

aqua, -ae, F., water.

aquilō, -ōnis, m. [aquilo- (st. of aquilus), dark], (the bringer of storms and darkness, and so) north wind; (used adj. w. ventus) north.

Aquitāni, -ōrum, m., the *Aquitani*; see Aquitānia.

Aquitānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania* (one of the three chief divisions of Transalpine Gaul, between the Garonne river and the Pyrenees mountains).

āra, -ae, F., altar; see Fig. 2.

arbitrium, -ī, N. [arbitro- (st. of arbitrio, witness, umpire)], being umpire; decision (of the umpire).

arbitror, -āri, -ātus [arbitro- (st. of arbitrio, witness), (be a witness or observer, Altar, from a and so) be of the Pompeian opinion, think].

arbor, -oris, F., tree. **arceō**, -ēre, -ūi [conn. w. arx, stronghold], ward off.

arcēssō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus [intens. fm. of accēdō, come to, but with causative meaning; ar = ad], (cause to come to, and so) invite, summon.

Arethūsa, -ae, f., *Arethusa* (celebrated fountain near Syracuse, Sicily).

Arlovistus, -ī, m., *Arlovistus* (king of a German tribe in the time of Caesar).

arma, -ōrum, N. [var., fit; cf. ars], (what is fitted to the body, and so) arms.

armātūra, -ae, f. [armā- (st. of armō), equip, arm, equipment, armor].

Arpinūm, -ī, N., *Arpinum* (town in Latium; birthplace of Cicero and Marius).

arrogantia, see adrogantia.

ars, *artis*, f. [var., fit; cf.



Fig. 2.

arma], (fitting, skill in fitting, and so) *skill, art; handicraft, occupation, profession.*

artificium, -ī, N. [artific- (st. of artifex), *artificer*], *artisanship; handicraft, trade*; in pl., *industrial arts.*

Arvernī, -ōrum, M., the *Arverni* (a powerful tribe of Celtic Gaul, south of the Aedui).

arx, arcis, F. [*Varc-*, hold fast], *stronghold, fortress, citadel.*

ās, assis, M., *as* (copper coin worth about four-fifths of a cent).

a-scendō, see *ascendō*.

Āsia, -ae, F., *Asia* (the continent).

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, rugged; harsh, rude, fierce.*

a-spicīō, see *adspicīō*.

as-sequor, see *adsequor*.

assiduus, see *adsiduus*.

as-sistō, see *adsistō*.

assuēfaciō, see *adsuēfaciō*.

at, conj., *but, on the other hand.*

Athēnae, -ārum, F., *Athens* (capital of Attica).

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj. [*Athēnā* (st. of *Athēnae*), *Athens*], *Athenian*; used subst., *an Athenian*.

āthlēta, -ae, M. [borrowed fr. the Greek], *wrestler, athlete.*

atque (before vowels and consonants) or **āc** (before consonants only), conj. [ad, in addition; que, and], and also, and.

Atrebates, -um, M., the *Atrebates* (a tribe in Belgic Gaul).

atrōcītās, -ātis, F. [*atrōci-* (st. of *atrōx*), *fierce*], *ferocity, cruelty, severity.*

atrōx, -ōcis, adj. [apparently fr. *ātro-* (st. of *āter*), *dark*, but w. change of quantity], *dark, hideous, atrocious.*

at-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus [ad, towards; *tendo*, stretch], *stretch or direct towards; direct the attention to, consider.*

attentē, adv. [abl. fm. of *attentus*, *intent, attentive*], *attentively, earnestly.*

Atticus, -ī, M., *Atticus* (surname of Titus Pomponius, friend of Cicero; given to him on account of his long residence in Athens and his familiarity with Greek literature).

at-tingō, -ere, -tigī [ad, to; *tangō*, touch], *touch, come in contact with; reach, arrive AT.*

at-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [ad, to; *tribuō*, allot], *allot to, assign.*

auctor, -ōris, M. [*vaug-*, be strong, grow], (he who makes strong or makes grow, and so) *author; adviser.*

auctōritās, -ātis, F. [*auctōr-* (st. of *auctor*), *author*], *authority, influence.*

audācla, -ae, F. [*audāci-* (st. of *audāx*), *bold*], *boldness, recklessness, audacity.*

audāctēr, adv. [*audāci-* (st. of *audāx*), *bold*], *boldly, with boldness.* Comp. **audāctius**, *more boldly.*

audāx, -ācis, adj. [conn. w. *audeō*, *dare*], *daring, bold.*

audeō, -ēre, *ausus*. [= **avideō*, fr. *avido* (st. of *avidus*), *eager*], (be eager, and so) *dare, venture.*

audiō, -ire, -īvī or -īlī, -ītus [conn. w. *auris*, EAR], *hear; listen.*

au-ferō, *auferre, abstulī, ablātūs* [ab, from; *ferō*, BEAR], *BEAR or carry away, remove.*

augeō, -ēre, *auxī, auctus* [*vaug-*, be strong, grow; cogn. w. Eng. WAX], (make grow, and so) *augment, increase.*

augur, -uris, C. [*au-* = *avi-* (st. of *avis*), *bird*], (one whose predictions are founded [in part] on the observation of birds, i.e.) *an augur.*

aurum, -ī, N. [*vaus-* (-s becomes -r), *shine*], (the shining metal, and so) *gold.*

aut, conj., *either, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*

autem, conj. [conn. w. *aut*], *but, however; moreover, further.*

Autrōnius, -ī, M., *Publius Autrōnius Paetus* (one of Catiline's con-

federates in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.).

auxiliāris, -e, adj. [auxilio- (st. of auxilium), help], belonging or pertaining to help, *auxiliary*; subst., **auxiliārēs**, -ium, M., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries*.

auxilium, -ii, N. [conn. w. augeō, increase], *help, aid, assistance*.

āversus, -a, -um [p. a. of āvertō, turn from], (turned from, and so) *averse, hostile*; **āversus ā**, *hostile to*.

ā-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versūs [ā, from; vertō, turn], *turn from, turn aside*.

Aviēnus, -ī, M., *Gajus Avienus* (a military tribune under Caesar in the African war).

ā-vocō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [ab, from, OFF; vocō, call], *call OFF, withdraw*.

avus, -ī, M., *grandfather*.

B.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *rude, savage*; subst., *barbarian*.

beātus, -a, -um [perf. part. of beō, make happy, bless], *happy, blessed*.

Belgae, -ārum, M., *the Belgae* (inhabited northern Gaul between the rivers Seine and Marne and the Rhine).

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [bellico- (st. of bellicosus), pertaining to war], *warlike*.

bellum, -ī, N. [conn. w. duo, two], *war*; **belli**, *in war*.

bene, adv. [for bone, abl. fm. of bonus, good], *well*.

beneficium, -ii, N. [beneficio- (st. of beneficus), kind, obliging], *kindness, benefit, service, favor, generosity*.

Bibrax, -actis, F., *Bibrax* (a town of the Remi in Belgic Gaul).

biduum, -ī, N. [bi- (= dvi-), conn. w. duo, two; -duum, conn. w. diēs, day], *space of two days, two days*.

bini, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [= *dvinī, fr. st. of duo, two], *two and two, in groups of two, two from each*; (w. subst. pl. in fm., but sing. in meaning) *two*.

bipartitō, adv. [n. abl. of bipartitus, divided into two parts], *in two parts or divisions*.

Biturigēs, -um, M., *the Bituriges* (a tribe in Celtic Gaul, south of the Loire).

Boī or Boji, -ōrum, M., *the Boī or Boji* (a Celtic tribe in alliance with the Helvetians).

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good, honorable*; n. pl. subst., **bona**, -ōrum, *goods, property, resources*. Comp., *mellior*, -ius, better. Superl., *optimus*, -a, -um, *best; excellent*.

bōs, bovis, C., *ox*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

brevitās, -ātis, F. [brevi- (st. of brevis), short], *shortness; diminutive stature*.

breviter, adv. [brevi- (st. of brevis), short], *briefly*.

Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain* (including England and Scotland).

Brundisium, -ii, N., *Brundisium* (a town of Calabria on the Adriatic, and the usual port of departure for Greece).

C.

C. 1. abbr. of **Gājus**, **Gāi**, M., *Gajus* (a Roman praenōmen or first name). 2. abbr. for centum, *HUNDRED*.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum [*cad*, fall], *fall*.

caedēs, -is, F. [*caed*-, cut, *hew*], *cutting down, slaughter, massacre; assassination, murder*.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus [*caed*-, cut, *hew*], *cut down, cut to pieces; slay, slaughter*.

caelestis, -e, adj. [conn. w. caelum, heaven], *pertaining to the heavens, celestial*; n. pl. subst., **caelestia**, -ium, *heavenly bodies, celestial phenomena*.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven*; pl. caeli, m., in verse only.

Caepiō, -ōnis, m., *Quintus Servilius Caepio* (as proconsul, fought unsuccessfully with the Cimbri 105 B.C.).

Caesar, -aris, m., *Gaius Julius Caesar* (the famous Roman general and statesman; lived 100–44 B.C.).

calamitās, -ātis, f., *disaster, calamity*.

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania* (district on the south-west coast of Italy).

capāx, -ācis, adj. [*cap-*, *take*], (able to take or hold much, and so) *capacious; capable*.

capillus, -ī, m. [dim. form fr. *capit-* (st. of *caput*), *HEAD*; lit., adj. (sc. *crinis, hair*)], *hair of the HEAD, hair*.

caplō, -ere, cēpī, *captus* [*cap-*, *take*], *take, lay hold of; capture; win, allure, charm, enchain; (w. cōsilium) form, adopt*.

captivus, -ī, m. [adj. used subst. fr. *cap-*, *take*], *captive*.

Capua, -ae, f., *Capua* (chief city of Campania).

caput, -itis, n., *HEAD*; (w. numerals) *person, soul; capital crime, capital punishment, death; chief city*.

capitālis, -e, adj. [*capit-* (st. of *caput*), *HEAD*], *pertaining to the HEAD or life, capital*.

carcer, -eris, m., *prison*.

careō, -ere, -ūī, *be without*.

carina, -ae, f., *keel*.

carmen, -inis, n., *song, verse, strain*.

Carnūtēs, -um, m., *the Carnutes* (a tribe of Celtic Gaul on both sides of the Loire).

carō, *carnis*, f., *flesh, meat*.

carpō, -ere, -psi, -ptus, *pluck; pluck at, carp at, revile*.

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage* (city on the northern coast of Africa; destroyed by Scipio the younger 146 B.C.).

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [Carthāgin- (st. of Carthāgō), *Carthage*], *Carthaginian*; see Carthāgō.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*.

cāseus, -ī, m., *cheese*.

Cassius, -īī, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus* (defeated and killed by the Tigurini 107 B.C.).

castellum, -ī, n. dim. [castro- (st. of *castrum*), *fortified place*], *stronghold*.

Casticus, -ī, m., *Casticus* (a Sequanian, son of Catamantaloedes).

castra, -ōrum, N., *camp*.

cāsus, -ūī, m. [*cid-*, *fall*], *falling; chance; misfortune; unfortunate condition*.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, m., *Catamantaloedes* (ruler of the Sequani).

catellus, -ī, m. [dim. fr. *catulus* (st. of *catulus*), *young dog*], *puppy*.

Catillina, -ae, m., *Catiline* (notorious Roman conspirator; lived 108–62 B.C.).

Catō, -ōnis, m., *Marcus Porcius Catō* (called the elder, or the censor; lived 234–149 B.C.).

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; excuse, pretext; enterprise; causā* (following its genitive), *for the sake, for the purpose*.

caveō, -ere, cāvī, *cautus, be on one's guard*.

cēdō, -ere, cēssi, cēssus, *go; withdraw, retire, depart; grant, concede*.

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*celebro- (presumed original st. of celebre) *frequented*], (make frequented, and so) *throng, frequent; celebrate*.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift*.

celeritās, -ātis, f. [*celeri-* (st. of *celer*), *swift*], *swiftness, speed, celerity*.

celeriter, adv. [*celeri-* (st. of *celer*), *swift*], *swiftly, quickly, speedily*.

Celtae, -ārum, m., *Celts or Kelts* (name applied by Caesar to the

Gauls who dwelt between the Seine and the Garonne).

cēnseō, -ēre, -suī, -sus, *rate*; (of proceedings in the senate) *vote*, *decree*; *think*.

cēnsor, -ōris, m. [base cēns- (in cēnseō), *rate*], (the rating officer, i.e.) *censor* (one of two Roman magistrates whose duty it was: 1. to superintend the registration of the citizens and their property; 2. to exercise control over the conduct and morals of the citizens; 3. to superintend the administration of the finances of the state).

cēnsus, -ūs, m. [base cēns- (in cēnseō), *rate*], *rating*, *registration*, *enumeration*, *census*.

centum, indecl. num. adj., *a hundred*.

centuria, -ae, f. [cofn. w. centum, *HUNDRED*], *century* (the century was one-sixtieth of a legion, and contained, in Caesar's time, about 100 men; see legiō).

centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centuriā (st. of centuria), *century*], *centurion* (the commanding officer of a century; there were sixty centurions in a legion).

Ceraunus (*Ptolemaeus*), -ī, m., *Ptolemy Ceraunus* (murdered Seleucus and obtained possession of Macedonia 280 B.C.).

cernō, -ere, crēvī, certūs [*veer*, *separate*], *separate*; *distinguish* (by the senses), *perceive*, *see*; *decide*.

certāmen, -inis, n. [certā- (st. of certō), *struggle*], (result of struggling, and so) *contest*.

certē, adv. [abl. fm. of certus, *certain*], *certainly*, *assuredly*, *at any rate*.

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of cernō, *decide*, fr. certo- (st. of perf. part. certus)], *decide by contest*, *struggle*, *vie*.

certus, -a, -um [p. a. of cernō, *decide*], *decided*, *fixed*, *particular*; *certain*, *assured*, *undoubted*; *cer-*

tiōrem facere, *to inform*; certior fieri, *to be informed*.

cervus, -ī, m. [conn. w. cornū, *HORN*], (horned animal, and so) *stag*.

cēssō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of cēdō, *go, retire*], *loiter*, *abate*, *cease*.

*cēterus, -a, -um, adj., usu. pl., *the OTHER*, *the remaining*, *the rest of*; subst., cēterī, -ōrum, *the rest*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero* (the celebrated Roman orator; lived 106-43 B.C.).

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [circō- (st. of circus), *circle*], *round about*, *about*.

circultus, -ūs, m. [circu(m)-vi, *go around*], *going around*, *circuit*.

circum, adv. and prep. w. acc. [acc. of circus, *circle*], *around*, *about*.

circum-dō, -are, -dedī, -datus [circum, *around*; dō, *put*], *put around*, *surround*, *build around*, *enclose*.

circum-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [circum, *around*; dūcō, *lead*], *lead around*.

circum-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [circum, *around*; ferō, *BEAR*], *carry round*, *pass round*.

circum-mūniō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus [circum, *around*; mūniō, *wall*], *wall around*, *fortify*, *protect*.

circum-stō, -āre, -steti [circum, *around*; stō, *STAND*], *stand around*, *surround*.

circum-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus [circum, *around*; veniō, *COME*], *surround*, *envelop*; *surround in a hostile manner*, *oppress*, *defraud*.

citerior, -ius, adj. [comp. of citer, *belonging to this side*], *HITHER*, *on this side*.

citrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fm. of citer, *belonging to this side*], *on this side of*.

cīviliſ, -e, adj. [cīvi- (st. of cīvis), *citizen*], *pertaining to citizens*, *civil*.

cīvis, -is, c., *citizen*, *fellow-citizen*.

civitās, -ātis, f. [civi- (st. of cīvis), citizen], citizenship; citizens; community, state.

clam, adv., secretly, stealthily; prep. w. abl., without the knowledge of.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of clāmō, call], cry out, call out.

clāmor, -ōris, m. [base clām- (in clāmō), call], calling, shout.

clāreō, -ēre [clāro- (st. of clārus), bright], be bright.

clārus, -a, -um, adj. [clā- , call, sound, conn. w. clāmō, call out], clear-sounding; bright; illustrious, renowned, held in honor.

clāssis, -is, f., fleet.

claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, shut, close; agmen claudere, to bring up the rear.

clēmēns, -entis, adj., mild, gentle, forbearing, merciful, clement.

cliēns, -entis, m. [= cluēns, pres. part. of clueō, hear, obey, used subst.], (one who hears or obeys, and so) dependent, retainer, client.

Clōdius, -ī, m., *Publius Clodius Pulcher* (opponent of Cicero, whose banishment he procured; killed by Milo 52 B.C.).

Cn. abbr. of **Gnaeus**, -ī, m., *Gnaeus* (a Roman praenōmen or first name).

co-emō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [co(m)-, together; emō, buy], buy up.

co-eō, -ire, -īvī or -īī, -itus [co(m)-, together; eō, go], go together to form a whole, unite, combine.

coepi, coepitus, def., began.

co-erceō, -ēre, -cūī, -citus [co(m)-, completely; arceō, shut up], enclose, encompass; restrain, confine.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [co(m)-, together; agitō, drive], (drive a matter to and fro in the mind, and so) weigh carefully, ponder, think, reflect.

cōgnātiō, -ōnis, f. [co(m)-vgnā-,

be born with], being born with; blood-relationship; kindred, family.

cōgnōmen, -inis, n. [co(m)-, with, i.e. in addition to; (g)nōmen, NAME], family NAME, surname (the third in order of the names of a Roman citizen, being preceded by the praenōmen, or name of the individual, and the nōmen, or name of the gens to which the individual belonged; e.g., Mārcus (praenōmen) Tullius (nōmen) Cicerō (cōgnōmen)).

cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [co(m)-, completely, thoroughly; (g)nōscō, become acquainted with], become thoroughly acquainted with, ascertain, learn; recognize; in perf., KNOW; diligentius cōgnōscere, to gain a more thorough acquaintance with, or a more accurate KNOWLEDGE of.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus [co(m)-, together; agō, drive], drive together, collect; compel, force, constrain.

cohors, -rtis, f., enclosure; (body of men enclosed, and so) cohort (the tenth part of a legion; it was divided into three maniples and —as each maniple contained two centuries—into six centuries; the number of men in a cohort varied at different periods from 300 to 600, but in Caesar's time the cohort contained about 600 men).

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f. [cohortā- (st. of cohortor), exhort], exhortation, encouragement.

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus [co(m)-, intens.; hortor, exhort], exhort, encourage, admonish; cohortāri inter sē, to exhort one another.

col-laudō, see conlaudō.

collēga, see conlēga.

col-ligō, see conligō.

collis, -is, m. HILL.

col-locō, see conlocō.

colloquium, see conloquium.

col-loquor, see conloquor.

colluviō, see conluviō.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus [vcol-

till], till, cultivate; honor, reverence, worship.

colōnus, -ī, M. [conn. w. colō, till], *tiller of the soil; colonist.*

color, -ōris, M., color.

com-būrō, -ere, -ūssi, -ūstus [com-, completely; *būrō, burn], *burn up, consume.*

comes, -itis, C. [com-vi, go with], *(one who goes with, and so) comrade, companion.*

commeātus, -ūs, M. [commeā- (st. of commeō), go to and fro], *passing to and fro; train, convoy; supplies.*

com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely; memorō, call to mind], *call to mind in detail, call to mind, mention, recount.*

com-mendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely; mandō, commit], *commit without reservation, commit, intrust.*

com-meō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, habitually; meō, go, pass], *go to and fro, go.*

com-minus, adv. [com-, together; manus, hand], *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

com-mittō, -ere, misī, -missus [com-, together; mittō, send, make go], *combine into a whole; (w. proelium) join, give, begin, engage in; commit, intrust.*

commodē, adv. [abl. fm. of commodus, convenient], *conveniently, easily; judiciously, skillfully.*

commodum, -ī, N. [n. of adj. commodus, convenient, used subst.] *convenience, advantage.*

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [com-, completely, thoroughly; moveō, move], *set in violent motion, disturb, disquiet, alarm.*

commūnlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. commūnis, common], *share, bestow: commūnlārecum, share with, impart to; join, unite, add: cum dōtibus commūnlāre, to add to the dowries.*

com-mūnis, -e, adj. [com-, mu-

tually; mūnis, under obligation. cf. immūnis], common, general.

commūtlō, -ōnis, M. [commūtā- (st. of commūtō), change], *change, alteration.*

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely; mūtō, change], *change completely, alter entirely, change, transform; exchange.*

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, completely, and so carefully; parō, prepare], *prepare carefully, gather, collect.*

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; parō, make equal, exchange], *compare.*

com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [com-, together; pellō, drive], *drive in a body.*

com-perīō, -īre, -perī, -pertus [com-vper, penetrate completely. cf. experior], *ascertain with certainty, ascertain, establish by proof, find out.*

com-plexor, -ī, -plexus [com-, together; plectō, braid], *(braid together, and so) enFOLD, embrace, clasp; grapple.*

com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [com-, completely; *pleō, FILL], *FILL completely, FILL, complete.*

com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), gen., -ium, adj. [com-, together; plūrēs, several], *several.*

com-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [com-, together; pōnō, put], *put together, adjust; compose, pacify, settle.*

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; portō, bring], *bring together, collect.*

com-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus [com-, completely; prehendō, grasp], *grasp completely or firmly; take, seize; arrest.*

cōnāta, -ōrum, N. [n. pl. perf. part. of cōnor, endeavor, used subst.], *endeavors, undertaking.*

cōnātus, -ūs, M. [cōnā- (st. of cōnor), endeavor], *endeavoring; effort, undertaking.*

con-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [com-, intens.; cēdō, go, give way], yield, submit to, comply with one's request; grant, concede, permit.

con-cidō, -ere, -cidī [com-, together, in a heap; caddō, fall], fall to the ground, fall.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [concilio- (st. of concilium), assembly], assemble, bring together; reconcile; win, procure.

concilium, -ii, N. [com-vcall, call together], (calling together, and so) assembly, company; council: per concilium, in public council.

con-currō, -ere, -currī (-currī), -cursum [com-, together; currō, run], run together, rush together, hasten in a body, flock.

con-demnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; damnō, condemn], condemn.

condicīō, -ōnis, F. [com-vdic-, say with, and so agree together], agreement, stipulation, condition, terms; condition, lot.

con-dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; dōnō, give], give up; overlook.

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [com-, together; dūcō, lead], lead or bring together; collect.

cōn-ferō, cōfēre, contulī, conlātus [com-, together; ferō, BEAR, Bring], Bring together, collect; compare; Bring to BEAR, apply, bestow upon; sē cōfēre, to betake one's self.

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com-, completely; faciō, do], bring to completion, complete, finish, bring to an end, accomplish, carry out; (of a list or register) make out.

cōn-fidō, -ere, -fīsus [com-, completely; fidō, trust], trust fully, confide in, rely on, depend on.

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; firmō, make firm], make firm, establish; assure, reassure; assert.

cōn-fligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus [com-, together; fligō, strike], (strike together, and so) 1. tr., contrast, oppose; 2. intr., contend, fight.

con-gredior, -gredī, -gressus [com-, with; gradior, step, walk], meet with; engage, fight.

con-ictō (pronounced: conjicīō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [com-, together; jaciō, throw], throw together; throw, cast, hurl; drive; in fugam conicere, to put to flight.

conjūctim, adv. [acc. used adv., fr. com-vjug-, YOKE together, join], jointly, together.

conjūctiō, -ōnis, F. [com-vjug-, YOKE together], (YOKING together, and so) union, intimacy.

con-jungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -junctus [com-, together; jungō, join], join, unite.

con-junx, -jugis, C. [com-, together; vjug-, YOKE], (YOKE-fellow, and so) spouse; wife.

conjūratiō, -ōnis, F. [conjūrā-, swear together], (swearing together, and so) conspiracy.

con-jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; jūrō, swear], swear together, conspire.

con-laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; laudō, commend], commend highly, applaud.

con-lēga, -ae, M. [com-vlēg-, depute with], (fellow-deputy, and so) colleague, official associate.

con-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; ligō, fasten], fasten together.

con-ligī, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [com-, together; legō, gather], gather together, gather, collect.

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together; locō, place], place together, place, station, establish, settle; give in marriage.

conloquium, -ii, N. [com-vloqu-, talk with], conversation, conference.

con-loquor, -ī, -cūtus [com-, with; loquor, talk], converse, confer, have a conference with.

conluviō, -ōnis, F. [com-*v*luv, *wash together*], (collected washings, and so) *dregs, offscourings; turba et conluviō, vile rabble.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *endeavor, attempt, undertake.*

cōn-sanguinei, -ōrum, M., adj. used subst. [com-, denoting *connection*; *sanguineus, pertaining to blood*], (those connected by blood, and so) *blood-relations, kinsmen.*

cōn-sciscō, -ere, -scīvī or -scīl, -scītus [com-, *together, in a body*; *sciscō, decree*], *decree in a body or in common; adjudge; inflict; sibi mortem cōnsiscere, to commit suicide.*

cōnsclus, -a, -um, adj. [com-*v*sci, *know with*], *knowing in conjunction with others; conscious.*

cōscriptus, -a, -um [perf. part. of *cōscrībō, enroll*], *enrolled: patrēs cōscripti, conscript FATHERS* (a title used in formal addresses before the Roman senate. The term *cōscripti* was at first applied to the new senators enrolled from the ranks of the equites in the early days of the republic, and the original form of address was *patrēs et cōscripti*.

cōn-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, *wholly; sacrō, make sacred*], *consecrate, dedicate.*

cōsensus, -ūs, M. [com- *sent* (base in *sentiō*), *perceive or feel with or in common*], (feeling in common, and so) *consent.*

cōn-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus [com-, *together, in common*; *sentiō, feel*], *agree; conspire.*

cōn-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [com-, *close upon; sequor, follow*], *follow close upon, follow after, follow, ensue.*

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intens.; *servō, keep*], *Maintain, preserve, save.*

cōnsessus, -ūs, M. [com-, *together; v*sēd-, *sit*], (sitting together, and so) *assembly.*

cōn-sidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sēssum

[com-, *together; sīdō, sit*], *sit down together, settle, establish one's self; post one's self; encamp.*

cōnsilium, -ii, N. [conn. w. *cōnsulō, deliberate*], *deliberation, counsel; plan, design, purpose, intention, scheme; measure, line of conduct, course, policy; advice; sagacity; council.*

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stītū [com-, intens.; *sistō, stand*], *Come to a halt, stop, take a position; stand, maintain one's footing or position, make a stand; settle; (w. in and abl.) consist in or of.*

cōspectus, -ūs, M. [com-*v*spec, *spy* (all parts together, and so) *at a glance*], *sight at a glance, sight; presence.*

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [com-, *together* (all parts being taken in at a glance); *speciō, look at*], *catch sight of, descry, see.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus [com-*v*spec (through presumed noun stem), *spy* (all parts together, and so) *at a glance*], *catch sight of, descry, see.*

cōnstantia, -ae, F. [*cōnstant* (st. of p. a. *cōstāns*), *standing firm*], *firmness, constancy.*

cōn-stituō, -ere, -ūl, -ūtus [com-, *together, and so firmly; statuō, set up*], (set up firmly, and so) *station, post; establish, appoint; arrange, fix, settle upon, decide upon; decide, resolve; dē contrōversiis cōstituere, to settle or decide disputes.*

cōn-stō, -āre, -stītū [com-, *with; stō, stand*], *stand with; be in agreement with; impers., be settled, undisputed, generally understood, well known.*

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus [com-, intens.; *suēscō, become accustomed*], *become accustomed, accustom one's self; in perf., be accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, -iinis, F. [*cōn-suē*(to)- (st. of *cōnsuētūs*), *accustomed*], *habit, manner, custom, usage, practice.*

cōnsul, -is, m., *consul* (one of the two highest Roman magistrates chosen annually under the republic).

cōnsulārīs, -e, adj. [cōnsul- (st. of cōnsul), *consul*], *belonging or pertaining to a consul, consular.*

cōnsulātūs, -ūs, m. [cōnsul- (st. of cōnsul), *consul*], *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -ūi, -tus, *reflect, deliberate, take counsel;* (w. dat.) *take thought for, have regard for, have an eye to;* (w. acc.) *consult (for advice).*

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus [com-, completely; sūmō, *take*], *take up completely; consume.*

cōn-surgō, -ere, -surrexī, -surrēctum [com-, together; surgō, *rise*], *rise in a body, stand.*

contāgīo, -ōnis, f. [com-vtāg-, touch together], *contact.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, f. [com-vtem-, cut up (com is intens.)], (cutting treatment, and so) *contempt, scorn, defiance.*

contemptus, -a, -um (p. a. of *contemnō, despise*), *contemptible.*

contemptus, -ūs, m. [com-vtem-, cut up (com- is intens.)], (cutting treatment, and so) *contempt.*

con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus [com-, intens.; tendō, *stretch*], *stretch vigorously, strive; hasten; contend, struggle; vie; contend successfully, prevail.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f. [com-vten-, stretch vigorously, struggle], *struggling, contention, dispute.*

con-texō, -ere, -xūi, -xtus [com-, together; texō, *weave*], *weave, join, or put together, frame, construct.*

continēns, -entis [p. a. of *continēō, hold together*], *uninterrupted.*

continenter, adv. [continent- (st. of continēns), uninterrupted], *uninterruptedly, continuously.*

contineō, -ēre, -tinūi, -tentus [com-, together; teneō, *hold*], *hold together, hold, keep; bound, confine; hem in, hold in check, restrain.*

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactus [com-, completely, closely; tangō, *touch*], *touch, be contiguous to.*

continuus, -a, -um, adj. [com-vten-, stretch together], (stretching or hanging together, and so) *successive, continuous.*

contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *against.*

contrōversia, -ae, f. [contrōverso- (st. of contrōversus), opposite], (opposition, and so) *dispute, controversy.*

contumēlia, -ae, f., *abuse, insult, indignity, reproach:* per contumēliam, by injurious reports, through slanderous accusations; buffeting, violence.

con-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus [com-, together; veniō, *COME*], *COME together, assemble; convenit, it is agreed upon.*

conventus, -ūs, m. [com-vven-, *COME together*], *meeting; court.*

con-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [com-, intens.; vertō, *turn*], *turn about, change the direction of, reverse: conversa signa inferre, to face about and advance against.*

convivium, -ii, n. [convivā- (st. of conviva), *table companion*], *eating together; banquet.*

con-vocō, -are, -avī, -ātus [com-, together; vocō, *call*], *call together, call, convoke, assemble.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, supply;* in pl., *supplies, stores, wealth, resources, numbers; troops, forces.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpiā- (st. of cōpiae), *wealth*], *abounding in wealth, well supplied, rich.*

cōpula, -ae, f., *grapnel hook (by which vessels were fastened together in battle).*

cor, *cordis, N., HEART.*

Corinthus, -i, f., *Corinth* (commercial city of Peloponnesus on the isthmus of Corinth).

cornū, -ūs, n., *HORN;* (of an army) *wing.*

corpus, -oris, n., *body.*

cor-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [com-, completely; rumpō, break], *destroy*; (of an opportunity) *sacrifice*.

cor-ruō, -ere, -uī [com-, together; ruō, fall], *fall together, fall with a crash, tumble down, fall*.

cottidiānus or cōtidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [st. cottidi- (in cottidiē), *every day*], *belonging to every day, daily*.

cottidiē or cōtidiē, adv. [loc. fm. of quot, *HOW many*, loc. or abl. fm. of diēs, *day*], (on as many days as there are, and so) *daily*.

Cotus, -ī, M., *Cotus* (a prominent Aeduan).

Crassus, -ī, M., *Publius Licinius Crassus* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous*.

crēbrō, adv. [n. abl. of crēber, *frequent*], *often, frequently, many times*.

crēdibilis, -e, adj. [base crēd- (in crēdō), *believe*], *worthy of belief, credible*.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (w. acc. and dat.) *intrust*; (w. dat. pers.) *trust, believe, put confidence in, take the advice of*; (w. acc. and inf., or abs.) *believe, suppose*.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *consume by fire, burn*.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make, choose, elect*.

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus [*crē*, make; conn. w. creō], (begin to make itself, and so) *come forth, grow, increase, become great*.

Crēta, -ae, F., *Crete* (island in the Mediterranean).

crimen, -inis, N. [*verī, sift*], (that which sifts, and so) *judicial decision, accusation, charge, reproach*.

criminōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cri-min- (st. of crīmen), *reproach*], *reproachful*.

cruciātus, -ūs, M. [cruciā- (st. of cruciō), *torture*], *torture, torment*.

crūdēlis, -e, adj., *cruel*.

crūdēlitās, -ātis, F. [crūdēli- (st. of crūdēlis), *cruel*], *cruelty*.

crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēli- (st. of crūdēlis), *cruel*], *cruelly*.

culpa, -ac, F., *fault, blame*.

cultus, -ūs, M. [*col., till*], *tilling, cultivation, labor; mode of life, condition as to civilization; civilization, culture*.

cum, prep. w. abl., *with*; cum is appended enclitically to the abl. of pers. and rel. prouns.; as, *vōbiscum, with you*.

cum, conj. [for quom, acc. fm. of pron. st. quo-, *which*], *at which time, WHEN, WHENEVER; since, inasmuch as, as; though, although*.

cumulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cumulo- (st. of cumulus), *heap*], *gather into a heap, augment (by piling up)*.

cunctātiō, -ōnis, F. [cunctā- (st. of cunctor), *delay*], *delaying, delay*.

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj. [contracted fr. conjunctus, perf. part. of conjungō, *YOKÉ together*], (all united into one body, and so) *whole, entire, all; n. pl. used subst., all things, everything*.

cupidē, adv. [abl. fm. of cupidus, *desirous, eager*], *eagerly, ardently*.

cupiditās, -ātis, F. [cupido- (st. of cupidus), *desirous*], *desire, longing; passionate or covetous desire*.

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. cupiō, *desire*], *desirous*.

cupiō, -ere, -īvī (-ī), -ītus, *desire; wish well to*.

cūr, adv. [= old fm. quōr (for *quār), fr. quā rē, *because of which or what thing*], *WHY, WHEREFORE*.

cūra, -ae, F., *anxiety, solicitude, care, concern*.

cūrā, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūrā- (st. of cūra), *care*], *take care*.

curriculum, -ī, N. [base curr- (in currō), *run*], *running; course*.

currus, -ūs, M. [base curr- (in currō), *run*], (that which runs, and so) *chariot, triumphal car*.

custōdia, -ae, f. [custōd- (st. of custōs), *guard*], *guardianship, protection*; in pl., *guards*.

custōdiō, -ire, -ivī or -ii, -ītus [custōd- (st. of custōs), *guard*], *guard, watch over*.

custōs, -ōdis, c., *guard, guardian*.

D.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [damno- (st. of *damnūm*), *loss*], *inflict loss upon, harm, damage; condemn*.

dē, prep. w. abl., (of place) *down from, from*; (of time) *in, during, about*: **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *in the THIRD WATCH*; (of the cause from which a thing proceeds) *for*: **quā dē causā**, *for which reason, so*; (of the subject of thought, discussion, etc.) *of, about, concerning, upon, over*; **merēri dē**, *to deserve at the hands of*; **contendere dē**, *to strive or contend for*.

dēbeō, -ēre, -buī, -bitus [dē, from; habeo, *have*], *(have from another, and so) owe, be under obligation, ought*.

dē-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [dē, from; cēdō, *go*], *withdraw, depart from, depart; die, decease*.

decem, indecl. num. adj., TEN.

decem et novem or **decem non-** **vem**, indecl. num. adj., NINE-TEEN.

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētūs [dē, from, *out*; cernō, *separate, sift*], *(sift or separate, as the true from the false, the important from the unimportant, etc., and so) decide; (give official expression to one's decision, and so) vote, decree; appoint*.

dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens., and so *to the end, out*; certō, *flight*], *fight it out, fight, contend*.

deceit, -ēre, -cuit, impers. [vdec-, esteem; conn. w. decus, *comeliness, and dignus, worthy*], *it is becoming, it is proper*.

decima for **decuma**, -ae, f. (usu. in pl.) [fem. of decimus, TENTH]

(sc. pars, *part*), *tithe* (tax levied on landholders in the Roman provinces).

decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, TEN], TENTH.

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [dē, giving a bad sense to the verb; capio, *take* (cf. the English 'take in')], *deceive*.

dē-clinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, from; *clinō, *bend*], *turn aside from, and so have recourse to*.

dēclivis, -e, adj. [dē-clívō- (st. of clívus, *hill*), *down hill*], *sloping*.

dēcrētūm, -i, n. [n. perf. part. of dēcernō, *decide, decree*, used subst.], *(what has been decided or decreed, and so) official decision, decree, ordinance*.

decus, -oris, n. [vdec-, esteem; coun. w. decet, *it is becoming, and dignus, worthy*], *comeliness; ornament; honor; DIGNITY of behavior*.

dē-decus, -oris, n. [dē, w. neg. force; decus, *honor*], *dishonor, disgrace, infamy; act of baseness, deed of infamy*.

dē-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus [dē, from, *away, up*; dō, *give*], *give up, surrender, devote*.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [dē, from, *away*; dūcō, *lead*], *lead out, withdraw, carry off, bring down, bring away, recall*.

dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens., *utterly, out*; fatigō, *weary*], *tire out, exhaust*.

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus [dē, from, *off*; *fendō, *strike, thrust*], *ward off, repel; defend, protect*.

dēfensiō, -ōnis, f. [dē-fend-, *thrust off*], *(thrusting off assailants, and so) defence*.

dēfensor, -ōris, m. [dē-fend-, *thrust off*], *(thruster off of assailants, and so) defender*.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [dē, from; ferō, *bring*], *BRING from, and so report*.

dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus [dē, from, off; faciō, make], (make off, break loose from, and so) *forsake, desert, abandon; fail, cease, be wanting.*

dē-fugiō, -ere, -fūgi [dē, from; fugiō, flee], *flee from, avoid, shun.*

dē-icīō (pronounced: déjicitō), -ere, -jēci, -jectus [dē, down; jaciō, throw], *throw down, cast down; unhorse; disappoint.*

dēln-ceps, adv. [dein (abridged fm. of deinde), *thereafter, next; vcap., take*], (taking place next, and so) *in succession.*

dē-leō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus [dē, from, out; *leō, for which, linō, smear, blot], *blot out, obliterate; destroy.*

dē-liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens., well, thoroughly; *liberō (cf. librō, balance)], *weigh well, weigh, deliberate.*

dēlictum, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of dēlinquō, *transgress, used subst.*], *transgression, offence.*

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē, from, out; legō, gather, pick], *pick out, select, choose.*

dēmentia, -ae, r. [dēmenti- (st. of dēmēns), *out of one's senses, mad*], *madness, folly.*

dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [dē, from, away; minuō, *make less, lessen*], *lessen by taking away, diminish, take away.*

dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dē, down; mittō, cast], *cast down.*

dēnum, adv. [superl. fm. of dē, down, from], (downmost, farthest from, and so) *at last, at length.*

dēnārius, -īi, m. [masc. of adj. dēnārius, containing TEN (sc. nummus, coin)], (coin containing [originally] ten asses) *denarius* (a Roman silver coin equivalent in value to about 16 cents).

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense.*

dē-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus [dē, from, away; pellō, drive], *drive away, avert.*

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus

[dē, away, aside; pōnō, place, put], *put or lay aside, drop.*

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus [dē, intens., utterly; populor, lay waste], *lay waste utterly, lay waste, ravage.*

dēprecātor, -ōris, m. [dēprecā- (st. of dēprecōr), *pray away, avert by prayer*], (one who averts a threatened evil by entreaty, and so) *intercessor.*

dēprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [dē, down; premō, press], *press down, depress, sink.*

dē-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; rogō, (of a law) *propose for enactment*], (withdraw a proposal for enactment, and so) *repeal* (applied to part of a law); *take away, withdraw, withhold.*

dē-scendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsus [dē, down; scandō, climb], *climb down, descend; have recourse, resort.*

dē-sciscō, -ere, -scivī (-īi), -scitum [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; sciscō, *approve, assent*], (withdraw assent, and so) *withdraw, revolt.*

dē-serō, -ere, -rūi, -rtus [dē, denoting withdrawal or reversal of action; serō, join], *desert, abandon.*

dēsertor, -ōris, m. [dē-ser-, *desert*], *deserter.*

dēsiderium, -īi, n., *longing, regret* (for the absence of something needed).

dēsidia, -ae, f. [dēsid- (st. of *dēses, gen. -idis), *idle*], *idleness, inactivity.*

dēsignātus, -a, -um [perf. part. of dēsignō, *designate, elect*], *elect-ed, elect* (term applied to a person already elected to an office, but not yet inaugurated).

dē-siliō, -ire, -luī [dē, down; saliō, leap], *leap down.*

dēsipiēns, -entis [p. a. of dēsipiō, *be childish*], *childish, in one's dotage.*

dē-sistō, -ere, -stītī [dē, from, off; sistō, STAND], desist; (w. abl.) desist (from), abandon.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, w. neg. force; spērō, hope], despair.

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [dē, down; speciō, look], look down upon, despise.

dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intens.; spoliō, strip, rob], strip, rob, despoil.

dē-stinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make fast.

dē-sum, deesse, dēfui [dē, from; sum, be], BE wanting, fail, desert, abandon.

dēsuper, adv. [dē, from; super, above], from above.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -ūī, -itus [dē, from, off; terreō, frighten], frighten off, deter.

dē-trahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractus [dē, from, off; trahō, draw], withdraw, take away, seize, snatch.

dētrimentum, -ī, N. [dē-vtrī, rub away], (result of rubbing away, and so) loss, damage, detriment.

deus, -ī, M. [conn. w. diēs], god, deity.

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vovī, -vōtūs [dē, intens.; voveō, promise solemnly, vow], solemnly promise to sacrifice, devote, vow.

dexter, (-tera) -tra, (-terum) -trum, adj., right.

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [as if fr. st. dico-, found only in compounds, as vēridicus, truth-telling; conn. w. dīcō], (orig.) proclaim; (usu.) give up, devote, dedicate.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus [vēdicō, point out, show], say, express, give expression to, tell, talk of, mention; call, name; jūs dicere, to administer justice; pauca dicere, to speak briefly.

dictātor, -ōris, M. [dictā- (st. of dīcō), prescribe, dictate], dictator.

dictum, -ī, N. [perf. part. of dīcō, say, used subst.], what is said, saying; word of command, order.

diēs, -ēī (-ēī, -ē), M. (sometimes r. in sing.) [conn. w. deus], day; time.

dif-ferō, differre, distulī, dilātūs [dis, in different directions; ferō, BEAR], carry in different directions; differ (this meaning appears to be confined to the pres. system).

dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis, w. neg. force; facilis, easy], hard, difficult.

dif-ficultās, -ātis, F. [difficili- (st. of difficul, old form of difficilis), difficult], difficulty.

dignitās, -ātis, F. [dīgno- (st. of dignus), worthy], worth, dignity; standing, position.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.

diligēns, -ēntis, adj. [p. a. of diligō, esteem], (esteeming, and so) devoted (to), attentive, diligent.

diligenter, adv. [diligent- (st. of diligēns), attentive], attentively; thoroughly; diligentius cōgnōscere, to gain a more accurate knowledge of.

diligentia, -ae, F. [diligent- (st. of diligēns), attentive], carefulness, attentiveness, diligence.

di-ligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [dis, apart; legō, choose], (show one's esteem for an object by choosing it in preference to others, and so) esteem highly, love.

di-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dis, implying two contestants, and so against; micō, dart to and fro], (dart to and fro against, and so) contend.

di-midium, -īi, N. [n. of adj. dīmidius, half, used subst.; fr. dis, in two and medius, MIDDLE], half.

di-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dis, in different directions; mittō, send], (send in different directions, and so) dismiss, disband, break up, dissolve; forego, lose.

Diō or Diōn, -ōnis, m., *Dion* (eminent Syracusan, brother-in-law of Dionysius I., and friend of Plato; assassinated B.C. 353).

Dionýstus, -īi, m., *Dionysius* (1. the elder, tyrant of Syracuse B.C. 405-367; 2. the younger, tyrant of Syracuse B.C. 367-343).

Dis, -itis, m. [conn. w. *deus* and *diēs*], *Dis* (the god of the underworld), *Pluto*.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [dis-, apart; cēdō, go], *go apart, withdraw, depart, disperse*: **discēdere ab**, *desert, abandon*: **discēdere ab armis**, *to lay down one's arms*.

disciplina, -ae, f. [discipulo- (st. of *discipulus*), *learner*], *instruction, tuition, system* (e.g., the Druidical system), *doctrines, discipline*.

discipulus, -ī, m. [conn. w. *discō, learn*], *learner, pupil*.

discō, -ere, didicī [inceptive fr. *dic-*, *point out, show*], (*begin to point out, and so*) *learn, study, receive instruction*.

dis-currō, -ere, -currī or -cu-
currī, -cursum [*dis-, in different directions*; *currō, run*], *run in different directions, scatter, disperse*.

dis-iclō (pronounced: *disjicō*), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [*dis-, asunder, in pieces*; *jaciō, throw*], *lay in ruins, raze, destroy*.

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posūi, -positus [*dis-, apart, at intervals*; *pōnō, place*], *station at intervals*.

dis-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*dis-, separately, in detail*; *putō, reckon*], *reckon in detail or by items, examine, discuss*.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [*dis-, apart, at variance*; *base sent- (in sentiō)*, *perceive, feel*], *disagreement, dissension, discord*.

dis-serō, -ere, -uī, *disertus* (adj.) [*dis-, at intervals*; *serō, join, bind together*], (*arrange words in connected discourse, and so*) 1. tr., *discuss*; 2. intr., *discourse, talk*.

dis-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [*dis-, asunder; teneō, keep*], *keep asunder, keep apart*.

diū, adv. [conn. w. *diēs, day, time*], *for a long time, long*. Comp., **diūtius**, *for a longer time, longer; for too long a time, too long*.

diversus, -a, -um [*perf. part. of divertō, turn in different directions*], *opposed*.

Divicō, -ōnis, m., *Divico* (a prominent Helvetian; defeated Lucius Cassius Longinus B.C. 107; was ambassador to Caesar B.C. 58).

dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide, separate*.

divinus, -a, -um, adj. [*divo- (st. of divus), god*], *pertaining to the gods, divine, sacred*.

divisus, -a, -um [*perf. part. of dividō, divide*], *divided*.

Divitacus, -ī, m., *Divitacus* (1. chief of the Aeduans and brother of Dumnorix; 2. chief of the Suessiones).

divitiae, -ārum, f. [*divit- (st. of dives), rich*], *riches, wealth*.

dō, dare, dedī, datus [*da, give*], *give, award, assign, afford, allow, grant*.

doceō, -ēre, -cūi, -ctus [*doc-, show, TEACH*; conn. w. *discō* and *dīcō*], *TEACH, instruct, show, declare, tell, point out*.

doctor, -ōris, m. [*doc-, TEACH*], *TEACHER*.

doctus, -a, -um [*p. a. of doceō, TEACH*], *learned*.

doleō, -ēre, -uī [*conn. w. dolor, q. v.*], *feel pain; grieve for, be afflicted at*.

dolor, -ōris, m. [*dol-, TEAR, split*; conn. w. *doleō, feel pain*], *pain; mortification*.

dolus, -ī, m., *deceit, treachery*.

domesticus, -a, -um [*conn. w. domus, house, home*], *domestic, native, private*.

dominus, -ī, m., *master, lord*.

domus, -ūs, f. [*vdom-, build*], (*that which is built, and so*) *house*,

home; family, household; domi (loc.), *at home, in peace; domō* (abl.), *from home.*

dōs, dōtis, f. [v̄dō-, give], *dowry, marriage portion.*

Druīdēs, -um, m., *Druīds* (priests of the Gauls).

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. dubius, doubtful], *doubt; hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. duo, two], *doubtful.*

ducenti, -ae, -a [st. of duo, two; st. of centum, HUNDRED], *TWO HUNDRED.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, *ductus, lead, bring, take, escort; ērđinēm dūcere, to command a century, to be a centurion; put off, delay; consider, hold, account, reckon, deem.*

ductor, -ōris, m. [v̄duc-, lead], *leader, commanding officer.*

dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet; aqua dulcis, fresh water.*

dum, conj., *while, as long as; provided, if only; until.*

dummodo, conj. [dum, as long as, provided; modo, only], *provided only, if only.*

Dumanacus, -i, m., *Dumanacus* (leader of the Andes, a tribe in Celtic Gaul, north of the Loire).

Dumnorix, -igis, m., *Dumnorix* (prominent Aeduan, brother of Divitiacus).

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *TWO.*

duodecim, indecl. num. adj. [duo, two; decem, TEN], *TWELVE.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, TWELVE], *TWELFTH.*

duodēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [duo, two; dēni, TEN apiece], *TWELVE apiece.*

dūritia, -ae, f. [dūro- (st. of dūrus), *hard*], *hardness; rigorous mode of life; hardship.*

dux, ducis, c. [v̄duc-, lead], *leader, guide, conductor.*

E.

ē, see ex.

Eburōnēs, -um, m., *the Eburones* (tribe in Belgic Gaul).

ē-discō, -ere, -didicī [ex, thoroughly; discō, learn], *learn by heart.*

ē-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus [ex, forth; dō, give, put], *put forth, bring forth, produce; publish; (of punishment) execute, inflict.*

ē-doceō, -ere, -cū, -ctus [ex, thoroughly; doceō, TEACH], *TEACH thoroughly, inform in detail, train thoroughly in, set forth in detail.*

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ex, forth, out; dūcō, lead], *lead out or forth; (of swords) draw.*

ef-ferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātus [ex, forth, out; ferō, bring], *BRING forth; BRING out, publish.*

ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex, out, completely; faciō, make], *work out, accomplish, bring to pass, cause, produce, make, render, form.*

ef-flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, intens.; flāgitō, demand urgently], *demand with earnestness, importune for.*

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī [ex, forth, away; fugiō, flee], *escape.*

effugium, -iī, n. [ex-v̄fug-, flee from, escape], *flight; means of escape.*

egeō, -ēre, egū, *lack, need, require.*

ego, gen. meī, pers. pron. I; mihi (dat. of ref.) *in MY eyes.*

ē-gredior, -i,-gressus [ex, forth; gradior, step, walk], *go or come forth or out, withdraw.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [ē-greg(e)], (abl. of grex, herd), *out of the herd*, (out of the common herd, and so) *eminent, illustrious,*

ē-iciō (pronounced: ē-jiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [ex, forth; jacīō, cast], *cast forth or out, drive out, expel; sē ēicere in (w. acc.), to make a raid ON.*

ējus modi or **ējusmodi** [is, that, such; modus, manner, kind], *of such a kind, such.*

ēloquēns, -entis [p. a. of ēloquent, speak out], *eloquent.*

ē-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [ex, forth, out; mittō, send, let go], *send out, let loose.*

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus [ēm-*take*], (orig. meaning, *take*; cf. adimō and sūmō), *buy.*

Empedocles, -is, M., *Empedocles* (natural philosopher of Agrigentum in Sicily; flourished about the middle of the fifth century, B.C.).

enim, conj. [strengthened fm. of nam, *for*] (placed after the first word, or after two or more closely connected words), *indeed, in fact, for.*

Ennius, -ii, M., *Quintus Ennius* (the father of Roman epic poetry; lived 239–169 B.C.).

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out, *openly*; nūntiō, *declare*], *divulge, report.*

ēō, ire, īvī or ii, itum [Vel, ī-, or i, *go*], *go, depart; die.*

ēō, adv. [case fm. of pron. is, that], *to that place, thither.*

ēodem, adv. [case fm. of idem, *the same*; cf. eō], *to the same place.*

eques, -itis, M. [equo- (st. of equus), *horse*], *horseman*; in pl., *horsemen*, *horse*; *knight* (the knights constituted an order in Rome intermediate in rank between the patricians and the plebeians).

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [equit- (st. of eques), *horseman*], *pertaining to cavalry, cavalry (adj.).*

equitātus, -ūs, M. [equitū- (st. of equitō), *ride*], *riding; cavalry.*

equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [equit- (st. of eques), *horseman*], (be a horseman or act as a horseman, and so) *ride.*

equus, -ī, M., *horse.*

ergā, prep. w. acc., *towards.*

ergō, adv., *therefore, then.*

ē-rlgō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus [ex, from below, up; regō, *make straight*], *erect, raise.*

ē-ripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptus [ex, from, away; rapiō, *seize*], *take*

away by force, seize, wrest, deprive.
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander; err, be mistaken.*

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ex, forth; rumpō, *burst, break*], *break forth, make a sally.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. [ē-vrup-, *break forth*], (breaking forth, and so) *sally, sortie.*

essēdūm, -ī, N. [Celtic word], *two-wheeled war chariot* (used by the Gauls and Britons).

et, conj. (for distinction between et and other conjunctions meaning *and*, see ‘and’ in the English-Latin vocabulary), *and; et . . . et, both . . . and.*

etiam, conj. [et, *and*; jam, *now, furthermore*], *also, even.*

etiam si or **etiamsi**, conj. [etiam, *even*; si, *if*], *even if, even though, although.*

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth; vocō, *call*], *call forth, summon.*

ex or ē, prep. w. abl. (for distinction between ex and other prepositions meaning *from*, see ‘from’ in the English-Latin vocabulary), *out of, from; (by difference of idiom) on: ex itinere, on the march; (after a superl.) in; by reason of, because of, in conformity with.*

ex-aglitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth, out; agitō, *drive violently*], *drive violently forth; harass, disquiet.*

examīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-animo- (st. of examinus), *lifeless*], (make lifeless, and so) *deprive of life; in pass., perish.*

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [ex, forth, out; cēdō, *go*], *go forth, withdraw, depart.*

ex-cellō, -ere, excelsus (adj.) [ex, from below, up; *cellō, *raise*], 1. tr., *raise up*; 2. intr., *rise; be prominent or distinguished, excel.*

ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ex, from, out; capiō, *take*], *take out; except; capture; intercept.*

ex-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth, out; citō, call], call forth, stimulate, excite, rouse.

ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out; clāmō, call], call out.

ex-clūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [ex, out; claudō, shut], shut out, exclude.

ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, intens.; cruciō, torture], torture excessively, torture.

ex-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, from; causa, charge (through *causō; cf. causor)], release from a charge, excuse; sē excūsāre, to apologize.

exemplum, -ī, n. [ex-vem-, take out], (what is taken out to serve as a sample, and so) copy, image; example, precedent; punishment inflicted by way of warning.

ex-eō, -ire, -lī (-īvī) -itus [ex, out; eō, go], go out, go away, go forth.

ex-erceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citus [ex, forth, on; arceō, drive], drive on, keep busy, exercise, train.

exercitatiō, -ōnis, f. [exercitā- (st. of exercitō), exercise frequently, practise], practice, experience.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exercē- (st. of exerceō), train], (lit., training, and so, used concretely) a trained body of men, an army.

ex-hauriō, -ire, -hausi, -haustus [ex, out of, off; hauriō, draw, drain], drain off.

eximius, -a, -um, adj. [ex-vem-, take out], (taken out of the common herd, and so) exceptional, extraordinary, especial.

ex-istimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out; aestimō, reckon or think], value, reckon; consider, think, deem.

ex-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, intens.; optō, desire], desire earnestly, long for.

expediō, -ire, -īvī or -īi, -ītus [ex-ped- (st. of pēs, FOOT), foot-free], (make foot-free, and so) unfetter, extricate, disentangle,

set free; (reflexively) take care of itself.

expeditus, -a, -um [p. a. of expediō, disentangle], unincumbered, free from obstructions.

ex-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus [ex, out; pellō, drive], drive out, expel, banish.

ex-prior, -īrī, -pertus [ex-vper-, penetrate or test thoroughly. cf. comperiō], test thoroughly, try, make trial of, make trial, measure strength with.

ex-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus [ex, completely; *pleō, FILL], FILL up, complete.

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrā- (st. of explōrō), search out], searcher out, explorer; scout.

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [ex, forth; pōnō, put, set], set forth, explain, point out.

ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out, to the end; pūgnō, fight], (fight to the end, and so) take by assault.

ex-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [ex, out, to the end; sequor, follow], follow to the end; execute, maintain.

exsillium, -īi, n. [exsul- (st. of exsul), exile], being an exile, banishment, exile.

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, forth, out; spectō, look], look for, look forward to, await, wait for; wait; wait to see.

ex-stinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus [ex, completely; stinguō, quench], quench completely; extinguish; annihilate.

ex-stō, -āre [ex, out; stō, STAND], stand out, be conspicuous; be extant.

ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ex, from below, up; struō, build], heap up, raise, construct.

ex-sul, -is, c., exile.

ex-sultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex, from below, up; saltō, leap, dance], leap up; revel, exult.

***exterus**, -tera, -terum, adj. [comp. fm. fr. ex, out], on the

outer side, on the outside. Superl., extrēmus, -a, -um, *last, remotest, extreme, farthest, (in agreement w. subst.) remotest part of.*

exterminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex, out of, beyond; terminus, boundary (through presumed adj. st.)], *drive beyond the boundaries, banish.*

ex-timēscō, -ere, -muī [ex, intens.; *timēscō, fear], *fear or dread greatly.*

ex-torqueō, -ere, -torsī, -tortus [ex, from; torqueō, wrest], *wrest from, take away forcibly, extort.*

extrā [abl. fem. of *exterus, used adv.], *adv. and prep. w. acc., beyond.*

extrēmus, see *exterus.

F.

fābula, -ae [v̄fā-, say, tell], *(what is told, and so) story; play.*

faciēs, -ē, f. [v̄fac-, shine, appear; cf. fax, torch], *appearance, face, visage, countenance.*

facile, adv. [n. acc. of facilis, easy, used adv.], *easily, readily.* Comp., facilius, *more easily, more readily.*

facilis, -e, adj. [v̄fac-, do], *(capable of being done, and so) easy.*

facilitās, -ātis, f. [facili- (st. of facilis), easy], *ease; affability, courtesy.*

facilius, see facile.

facinus, -oris, n. [v̄fac-, DO], *DEED, act; MISDEED, crime; mala facinora, acts of lawlessness.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus (for the pass., fiō, fierī, factus is used) [v̄fac-, DO, make, prosecute, commit, perpetrate; cause, produce, bring to pass; grant, furnish, give; act, DO; render; aliquem certiōrem facere, to inform; iter facere, to march; vim facere, to resort to force; facere nō possum quin, I cannot help.

factiō, -ōnis, f. [v̄fac-, DO,

make], doing, making; party spirit; faction, division, political party.

factum, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of faciō, DO], *DEED, act, proceeding, exploit.*

facultās, -ātis, f. [facili- (one fm. of the st. of facilis), ready, apt], *readiness, aptitude, capability; opportunity; abundance.*

fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsus [v̄fal-, make FALL, trip, deceive], *deceive, disappoint.*

falsus, -a, -um [p. a. of fallō, deceptive], *deceptive, false.*

fax, falcis, f., *hooked knife, pruning hook; hook (implement used in sieges for pulling down walls).*

fāma, -ae, f. [v̄fā-, make known, say], *(what is said, and so) common talk, report; good name, reputation.*

familia, -ae, f. [famulo- (st. of famulus), servant], *(collection of servants, and so) slaves of a household; family (descendants of a common ancestor); ancestry; pater familiās or familiāe, master of a house, head of a family.*

familiāris, -e, adj. [familiā- (st. of familia), household], *pertaining to a household or family: rēs familiāris, patrimony, property; intimate; subst., trusted friend.*

familiāritās, -ātis, f. [familiāri- (st. of familiāris), intimate], *intimacy.*

Fannius, -ī, m., *Gaius Fannius Strabo* (son-in-law of Laelius, and one of the characters in Cicero's work on Friendship).

fās, n. def. [v̄fā-, make known, say; conn., therefore, with fāma], *(the divine word or command, and so) divine law; translated adj., right, lawful, proper.*

faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautum, *favor.*

ferāx, -ācis, adj. [v̄fer-, BEAR], *(apt to bear, and so) productive, fertile.*

ferē, adv., *nearly, almost, about, substantially, for the most part, almost all; chiefly; generally.*

ferō, ferre, tuli, latus [pres., *vfer-*, BEAR; perf., *vtol-*, *list*, bear; perf. part., *v(t)lā-*, bear], BEAR, carry, BRING, contribute; endure; regard, consider; fertur, is said; ferendus (gerundive), sufferable.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferro- (st. of ferrum), iron], of iron; iron-hearted, unfeeling.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, fierce.

fessus, -a, -um, adj., weary.

festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [festino- (st. of festinus), hasty], hasten.

fidēs, -ēi, f. [*vfid-*, trust], faith, trust, confidence; keeping, protection.

fidus, -a, -um, adj. [*vfid-*, trust], trusty, faithful.

figūra, ae, f. [*vfig-*, shape], shape.

filia, -ae, f. [fem. of filius, son], daughter.

filiola, -ae, f. [fem. of dim. filiolus, little son], little daughter.

filius, -ii, m., son; in pl., also children.

finiō, -ire, -ivī or -ii, -itus [fini- (st. of finis), end], put an end to, limit, fix, determine; compute, reckon.

finis, -is, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), limit, boundary, frontier; end; in pl., land included within boundaries, and so territories, territory, estates.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [fini- (st. of finis), limit], bordering on, adjacent, neighboring; subst., finitimi, -ōrum, m., neighbors, neighboring tribes.

fiō, fieri (factus, see faciō), become, be made, be done, be committed, be in progress, happen, take place; certior fieri, to be informed; fit, the result is.

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [firmo- (st. of firmus), firm], make firm, strengthen.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., firm, strong, stable, steadfast.

flāgitium, -iū, n. [*vflāg-*, burn], shameful act (done in the heat of passion), disgraceful act.

flamma, -ae, f. [for *flagma, fr. *vflag-*, burn], flame.

flāvēō, -ēre [*flāvo-* (st. of flāvus), yellow] be yellow.

flēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, weep.

flōrēō, -ēre, -ruī [*flōs* (st. of flōs), flower (-s- becomes -r- between two vowels)], be in flower, blossom; flourish; p. a. **flōrēns**, -entis, flourishing.

flūctus, -ūs, m. [*vflūgu-*, flow], flowing; wave, billow.

flūmen, -inis, n. [*vflū(gu)-*, flow], (that which flows, and so) river.

fōns, fontis, m., spring, fountain.

foris, adv. [abl. pl. used adv.], out of DOORS, abroad.

fors (nom.), forte (abl.), f. (used in these two cases only) [*vfer-*, BEAR, BRING], (what brings itself, and so) chance.

fortis, -e, adj., brave.

fortiter, adv. [forti- (st. of fortis), brave], bravely, courageously, with bravery, with courage, with fortitude.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [forti- (st. of fortis), brave], courage, fortitude.

fortūna, -ae, f. [conn. w. fors, chance], fortune; good fortune, success; misfortune.

fortūnātus, -a, -um [p. a. of fortūnō, make prosperous], fortunate.

fossa, -ae, f. [sem. of perf. part. of fodiō, dig, used subst. (sc. terra)], ditch, moat.

fragmentum, -i, n. [*vfrag-*, BREAK], (result of breaking, and so) fragment.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractus [*vfrag-*, BREAK], BREAK, crush.

frāter, -tris, m., BROTHER.

frequēns, -entis, adj., crowded, in great numbers.

frīgus, -oris, n., cold, frost.

frōns, frontis, f., BROW, *front*.
Frontō, -ōnis, m., *Marcus Cornelius Fronto* (celebrated orator, native of Cirta in Numidia, flourished in the second century A.D.).

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frūctu- (st. of frūctus), *fruit*], *fruitful, productive*.

frūctus, -ūs, m. [*Vfrūgu-*, *enjoy*], (*enjoyment, and so*) *fruit, produce, profit, income*.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frūmento- (st. of frūmentum), *grain*], *pertaining to grain; rēs frūmentāria, provisions*.

frūmentum, -ī, n. [*Vfrū(gu)-, enjoy*], (*means of enjoyment, and so*) *grain (usu. harvested); in pl., grain (especially, standing grain)*.

fruor, -i, frūctus [*Vfru(gu)-, enjoy*], *derive enjoyment from, enjoy*.

frūstrā, adv. [conn. w. *fraus, deceit*], *in vain*.

fuga, -ae, f. [*Vfug-, bend, turn aside, flee*], *flight*.

fuglō, -ere, fūgī [*Vfug-, bend, turn aside, flee; cognate w. Eng. bow*], *flee*.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [*fugā* (st. of *fuga*), *flight*], *put to flight*.

fugitivus, -i, m. [adj. used subst., fr. *Vfug-, bend, turn aside, flee*]; *fugitive, deserter*.

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke*.

fundāmentum, -ī, n. [fundā- (st. of fundō), *BOTTOM, make secure*; (*means of making secure, and so*) *foundation*].

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour*.

fungor, -i, fūnctus, *discharge; perform*.

fūnis, -is, m., *rope*.

fūnus, -eris, n. [*said to be conn. w. fūmus, smoke, and having reference primarily to the burning of the body after death*], *funeral, funeral rites*.

fūr, fūris, c. [conn. w. *Vfer-, BEAR*], (*one who carries off, and so*) *thief*.

fūrōr, -ōris, m. [*Vfur-, rage*], *madness, insane folly, fury*.

fūrtim, adv. [acc. used adv.; conn. w. *fūr, thief*], *stealthily*.

fūrtum, -ī, n. [conn. w. *fūr, thief*], *theft*.

G.

Galba, -ae, m., *Servius Sulpicius Galba* (one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul).



Fig. 3.
 Helmet of a
 Romansoldier,
 from the col-
 umn of Trajan.
Gaul (Transalpine Gaul comprised substantially modern France, the Netherlands, and Switzerland; Cisalpine Gaul comprised the valley of the Po in northern Italy).

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of the Gauls* (see Galli and Gallia).

Gallus, -ī, m., *Gajus Sulpicius Gallus* (celebrated for his knowledge of Greek and astronomy; famous also as an orator; lived in the second century B.C.).

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul* (see Gallia).

gaudium, -īi, n. [conn. w. *gaudeō, rejoice*], *joy*.

Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva* (on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone).

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law*.

gēns, gentis, f. [*Vgen-, beget, give birth to*], *offspring, race, people, NATION, tribe*.

genus, -eris, n. [*Vgen-, beget, give birth to*], *birth; stock, race, family; KIND, class, order, mode*.

Gergovia, -ae, f., *Gergovia* (town of the Arverni in Celtic Gaul).

Germāni, -ōrum, m., *the Germans*.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus [*Vges-*

(-s becomes -r), *carry*], *carry, conduct, manage, transact, perform, do, carry on, wage*; in pass., *be in progress*.

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus [Vgn- (reduplicated) and gen-, *beget, give birth to*], *bring forth, bear*.

gladiātor, -ōris, m. [gladiā- (st. of *gladiō), *fight with the sword (gladius)*], (one who fights with the sword, and so) *gladiator*.

gladius, -ī, m., *sword (straight and two-edged)*; see Fig. 4.



Fig. 4.

Sword of a Roman soldier, from the Museo Borbonico.

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, renown*.

glōriātōr, -āri, -ātus [*glōriā-* (st. of *glōria*), *glory*], *glory, boast; idem glōriāti, to make the same boast; hōc glōriāti, to make this boast*.

gradus, -ūs, m., *step; stage*.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*.

grandis, -e, adj., *full-grown; quidam grandis nātū, a [man] advanced in years*.

grātia, -ae, f. [grāto- (st. of *grātūs*), *pleasing, grateful*], *favor, friendship, credit, influence; good will, gratitude*.

grātulor, -āri, -ātus [**gratulō-* (st. of **gratulus*, perhaps dim. of *grātūs*), *somewhat pleasing*], *manifest pleasure, wish joy, congratulate*.

grātūs, -a, -um [p. a. fr. *grādū*, *hold dear, desire*], (held dear, desired, and so) *pleasant, agreeable, gratifying, acceptable, welcome; grateful; deserving of gratitude*.

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy; severe, hard, oppressive, unfortunate; gravior aetās, advanced age*.

graviter, adv. [gravi- (st. of *gravis*), *heavy*], *heavily; severely, harshly*.

gubernātōr, -ōris, m. [gubernā- (st. of *gubernō*), *steer*], *steersman, pilot*.

H.

habeō, -ere, -ūi, -itus, *have, hold, keep; (of confidence) re-pose; (of an address) deliver; consider, esteem, regard, deem; grātiam habēre, to feel or cherish gratitude; habēre immūnitātem, to enjoy immunity*.

haesitō, -are, -āvī, -ātūm [intens. of haereō, *stick fast*], *be at a loss, hesitate*.

Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal* (leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war, B.C. 218–201).

Hellēspontus, -i, m., *the Hellēspont* (mod. Dardanelles, strait connecting the sea of Marmora and the Aegean sea).

Helvētli, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii or Helvetians* (a tribe in the eastern part of Celtic Gaul occupying that part of modern Switzerland which lies between lakes Geneva and Constance).

hērēditās, -ātis, f. [hērēd- (st. of *hērēs*), *heir*], *heirship, inheritance*.

Hermēs or **Herma**, -ae, m., *Hermes-pillar* (a four-cornered post or pedestal terminating in a carved head, often that of the god Hermes; these were frequently to be found in Athens in streets and public places, and before private houses); see Fig. 5.

Fig. 5.
Hermes-pillar, from the capitol at Rome.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. [n. pl. of *hērēnus*, *pertaining to winter, used subst.; sc. castra*], *winter-quarters*.

Hibērus, -ī, m., *the Ebro* (a river in Spain).

hic, haec, hōc, demonstr. pron., (used adj.) *this*; (used subst.) *this man, etc.*, *he, etc.* (emphatic); **hic . . . ille**: *the latter . . . the former*; *of (pertaining to) the latter . . . of (pertaining to) the former*.

hic, adv., *here; upon this, here-upon.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [hiem- (st. of hiems), *winter*], *pass the winter, winter.*

hiems (**hiemps**), -emis, f., *winter.*

Hilōtae, -ārum, m., *Helots* (the servile class in Sparta).

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

historia, -ae, f., *history.*

hodiē, adv. [abl. fm. of pron. st. *ho-*, *this*; abl. fm. of diēs, *day*], *to-day; at the present day.*

hodiernus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. *hodiē*, *to-day*], *of this day; hodierius diēs*, *this day, to-day.*

homo, -inis, c. [conn. w. *humus, ground*], (*son of earth, and so*) *human being, man; fellow.*

honestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [honesto- (st. of honestus), *honorable*], *clothe with honor, adorn, dignify, embellish.*

honestus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. *honōs, honor*], *honorable, worthy of honor.*

honōrī-ficus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs- (st. of *honōs, honor*); *fac-, make*], (*making honor, and so*) *honorable.*

honōs or honor, -ōris, m., *honor, dignity, estimation; honōris causā, out of compliment to, out of respect to.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour* (the Romans divided the interval between sunrise and sunset into twelve parts called hours; accordingly, their hour did not have a fixed value, but varied in length according to the season).

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *encourage, urge, exhort.*

hortus, -i, m. (conn. w. cohors, q.v.), (enclosure, and so) *GARDEN.*

hos̄pes, -itis, c., *host; GUEST* (whether friend or stranger).

hostis, -is, c., *stranger, foreigner; enemy* (especially a *public enemy* in contrast to *inimicus*, a *private enemy*); in pl., *enemy, a hostile army.*

hūc, adv. [case fm. of pron. st. ho-, *this, with demonstr. ending -c(e)*], *to this place, to this point, hither.*

hūmānitas, -ātis, f. [hūmāno- (st. of *hūmānus*), *human; refined*], *humanity; refinement (of manners, language, etc., resulting from a liberal education, and so) accomplishments.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. *homo, man*], *human; humane; refined, highly civilized.*

humillis, -e, adj. [humo- (st. of *humus*, *ground*), (pertaining to the ground, and so) *low; insignificant, weak.*

humus, -i, f., *ground.*

I.

ibī, adv. [pron. st. *i-* (of is), *that, w. loc. suff.*], *in that place, there.*

ictus, -ūs, m. [*vic-, hit*], *hitting; blow.*

idem, *eadem, idem* [is, *that, w. demonstr. suff.*], *the same; trans. adv., also, likewise, again.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable; convenient, accessible.*

Idūs, -uum, f., *the Ides* (one of the three points in the month from which the Romans reckoned; the Ides fell on the thirteenth except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the fifteenth).

igitur, conj. (usu. placed after the first word of the sent.), *then, therefore, accordingly.*

ignāvia, -ae, f. [ignāvo- (st. of *ignāvus*), *idle*], *idleness, sloth.*

ignis, -is, m., *fire.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [conn. w. *ignarus*, *ignorant*], *not know*, *be ignorant of*.

i-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtūm [i(n)-, *not*; (g)nōscō, *take steps to know*], (*not inquire into, and so*) *overlook, pardon*.

ille, illa, illud, demonstr. pron., (used subst.) *he, she, it*; (used adj.) *that; the well known, that . . . of old, of yore; the following; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former*; in pl., *those, they; ille ferreus, so iron-hearted*.

illō, adv. [case fm. of *ille, that*], *to that place, thither*.

imber, -bris, M., *rain, rain-storm*.

immāns, -e, adj., *monstrous, immense, huge*.

im-mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; *mātūrus, ripe, seasonable*], *unseasonable, before one's time*.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [in, upon; *mola, sacrificial MEAL* (through presumed adj. st.)], (*sprinkle sacrificial meal on the victim to be sacrificed, and so*) *sacrifice, immolate*.

im-mortālis, -e, adj. [in-, *not*; *mortālis, mortal*], *immortal, undying, perpetual*; translated adv., *forever*.

im-mūnis, -e, adj. [in-, *not*; *mūnis, under obligation*; cf. *commūnis*], *exempt*.

immūnitās, -ātis, f. [immūni- (st. of *immūnis*), *exempt*], *exemption, immunity*.

impedimentum, -ī, N. [impedi- (st. of *impediō*), *hinder*], *hindrance, impediment*; in pl., *baggage*.

impediō, -ire, -ivī or -ī, -itus [in-ped- (st. of *pēs*), *having the FEET entangled*], (*cause one's feet to become entangled, and so*) *impede, hinder, interfere with, prevent*.

im-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [in, ON, *against*; *pellō, drive*], *drive ON or against, urge ON, impel*.

im-pendeō, -ēre [in, over; pendō, *hang*], *hang over, impend, threaten*.

imperātor, -ōris, M. [imperā- (st. of *imperō*), *command*], *commander, general*.

im-peritus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; *peritus, experienced*], *inexperienced, UNPRACTISED, UNskilled*.

imperium, -ī, N. [conn. w. *imperō, command*], *order, command; power, direction, authority, control; persons in power; government*.

im-perō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [in, within, *thoroughly*; *parō, prepare*], (*lit.*, *prepare thoroughly, work over, and so*) *command, direct, govern; demand, make a requisition for*.

im-petrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [in, (by appeal) to; *patrō, bring to pass*], *bring to pass by entreaty, obtain a request*.

impetus, -ūs, M. [in-*vpet-*, *fly at, fall upon*], (*falling upon, and so*) *onset, attack*.

im-pius, -a, -um, adj. [in-, *not*; *pius, dutiful, reverent*], *UNDUTIFUL, irreverent, impious, wicked*.

im-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [in, to; *plōrō, cry out*], *cry out to, call upon, ask beseechingly, entreat, implore*.

im-pudens, -entis, adj. [in-, *not*; *pudēns, modest*], *shameless*.

impulsor, -ōris, M. [in-*vpol-*, *push ON*], (*one who pushes on, and so*) *instigator, urger; impulsor esse, to urge*.

in, prep. w. acc. and abl. 1. w. acc.: *INTO, to, towards, for; IN favor of; Against, over; 2. w. abl. : IN, ON, IN the midst of, Amid, IN the case of: in armis, UNDER arms; in lātitūdinem, IN width; in cōspectum, IN sight*.

incendium, -ī, N. [in-*vcand-*, *set fire to*], *setting fire to; fire, conflagration*.

in-cendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus [in, to; *candō (*vcand-*), *set fire*], *set fire to, burn; fire, inflame*.

inceptum, -ī, N. [n. perf part. of incipiō, begin], (that which has been begun, and so) attempt, undertaking.

in-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus [in, upon; cadō, fall], fall upon; happen, occur, arise.

in-ciplō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in, upon; capiō, lay hold], (lay hold upon, and so) begin.

in-colō, -ere, -ui [in, IN; colō, dwell], inhabit; dwell.

incolūmis, -e, adj., UNinjured, UNharmed.

incommodum, -ī, N. [n. of adj. incommodus, inconvenient, used subst.], inconvenience, disadvantage, injury, harm, disaster, defeat.

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-, not; crēdibilis, credible], incredible.

in-crepitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, to, Against; crepitō, rattle much, make a loud noise], call out to; exclaim against, rebuke, chide.

incursiō, -ōnis, F. [in-curr-(base in currō), rush IN or Against], incursion, INroad.

in-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, Against; causa, charge (through presumed denom. vb. *causō; cf. causor)], bring a charge Against, find fault with, complain of, blame, upbraid.

inde, adv., from that place, thence; next in order.

indictum, -ii, N. [indic- (st. of index), he who or that which points out], pointing out, informing; information, testimony.

in-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, towards; dicō, make known, and so point], point out, disclose, reveal, betray.

indigeō, -ere, -ui [indigo- (st. of indigus), IN want], be IN want of, need, stand IN need of.

indignē, adv. [abl. form of indignus, UNworthy], UNworthily, UNdeservedly.

in-dignus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; dīgnus, worthy], UNworthy.

in-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [in, INTO; dūcō, lead], lead INTO. indulgeō, -ere, -sī, -tus, indulge. induō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [indu, ON; vu-, clothe], put ON.

industria, -ae, F. industry.

in-eō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itus [in, INTO; eō, go], go INTO, enter; enter UPON or INTO, begin, form.

inermis, -e, adj. [in-, without; armo- (st. of arma, arms)], without arms, UNarmed.

infāmia, -ae, F. [infāmi- (st. of infāmīs), disreputable], disrepute, dishonor, disgrace, infamy.

in-fēlix, -icis, adj. [in-, not; fēlix, happy], UNhappy.

inferior, -ius, adj., comp. of inferus, q. v.

in-ferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus [in, prep., Against; ferō, BEAR], (of war) wage or carry ON Against, (of arms or standards) carry INTO, carry Against; inflict; (w. in and acc.) cast INTO; vim et manūs inferre, to lay violent hands UPON.

inferus, -a, -um, adj., below. Comp., **inferior**, -ius, lower. Superl., **infimus**, -a, -um, lowest, lowest part of, at the bottom.

infestus, -a, -um [p. a. of *infendō, strike or thrust Against; cf. dēfendō, strike or thrust off], (dashed against, and so) hostile, opposed; infestis signis cōsistere, to come to a halt and assume the defensive.

infimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of inferus, q. v.

in-firmus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; firmus, firm], weak, feeble, infirm.

in-fluō, -ere, -xi, -xum [in, INTO; fluō, flow], flow INTO, flow.

ingenium, -ii, N. [in-^vgen-, beget IN], (what is born in one, and so) disposition; mind.

ingēns, -entis, adj. [in-, out of, beyond; genti- (st. of gēns) kind, class], (beyond its kind, and so) great (in an exaggerated degree), huge; a great quantity of.

in-gredior, -ī, -gressus [in, into; gradior, step], *go into, enter; walk.*

in-iciō (pronounced: injiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [in, into; jaciō, throw], *throw into, infuse, impart.*

inimicitia, -ae, f. [inimico- (st. of inimicus), *hostile, UNfriendly*], *hostility, enmity.*

in-imicus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not; amicus, friendly], *UNfriendly, hostile; subst., personal enemy* (opp. hostis, public enemy), *enemy.*

iniquitās, -ātis, f. [iniquo- (st. of iniquus), *UNjust*], *injustice.*

in-iqus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not; aequus, fair], *UNfair; UNreasonable.*

initium, -īī, n. [in-vi-, go into, begin], *beginning; first principles, elements.*

injūria, -ae, f. [in-, not; jūs (st. of jūs), right (-s- becomes -r-)], (violation of right, and so) *injury, wrong, UNjust treatment, oppression; Injūriā, wrongfully, unjustly, without provocation.*

in-lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [in, at; lacrimō, *shed TEARS*], *shed TEARS, weep.*

in-liciō, -ere, -lexī, -lectus [in, into; *laciō, lure], *lure INTO, entice, decoy, seduce.*

inlustris, -e, adj., *distinguished, illustrious, high, exalted.*

in-nocēns, -entis, adj. [in, not; nocēns, criminal, guilty], *guiltless, innocent; subst., the innocent.*

inopia, -ae, f. [inopi- (st. of inops), *without resources*], *want; necessitous condition.*

in primis, *inprimis, or imprimis*, (among the first, and so) *especially, particularly.*

inquam, def., *I say; inquit, says he; said he.*

insāniō, -īre, -īvī and -īī, -ītum [insāno- (st. of insānus), *insane*], *be insane.*

inscientia, -ae, f. [inscient- (st. of insciēns), *inexperienced*], *inexperience.*

in-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scrip-tus [in, ON; scribō, write], *in-scribe, entitle.*

in-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [in, close upon; sequor, follow], *follow close upon or after, pursue.*

insigne, -is, n. [n. of adj. insi-gnis, marked], *distinguishing mark, badge.*

insolenter, adv. [insolent- (st. of insolēns), *insolent*], *insolently.*

in-stituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [in, into; statuō, place], (place into, and so) *fix, establish, institute.*

institutūm, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of instituō, establish], (what is established, and so) *institution, regulation, usage.*

in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [in, into; struō, build], *build IN-to; draw up, arrange.*

insula, -ae, f., *island.*

in-sum, inesse, infūi [in, IN; sum, be], *be IN, belong to.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj. [in-vtag-, not touch], *Untouched, whole; in integrum, to a former condition.*

integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [integro- (st. of integer), *whole*], *make whole, renew.*

intel-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [inter, between, into; legō, see], *see INTO, UNDERstand, know; perceive, be aware.*

in-tempestus, -a, -um, adj. [in, not; *tempestus, *seasonable*], *UNseasonable; intempestā nocte, at an UNseasonable hour of the NIGHT, late at NIGHT.*

inter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. fm. of in, IN], *between, among; inter sē, (according to the context) Among themselves, to one another, from one another, one another, with each other, etc.*

inter-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [inter, between; cēdō, go], *go between, intervene.*

inter-clūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [inter, between; claudō, shut],

shut off (by interposing something), *shut out, cut off.*

inter-dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus [inter, between; dicō, speak], *forbid, prohibit, exclude.*

interdum, adv. [inter, between; dum, while], *sometimes, occasionally.*

interēā, adv. [inter, among; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. ēā), *these things*. cf. anteā w. foot-note], *meanwhile.*

inter-eō, -ire, -ī, -itum [inter, among; eō, go, *be lost*], *(be lost among other things, and so) perish, become extinct.*

inter-ficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectus [inter, among; faciō, put, make go, *cause to be lost*. cf. intereō], *(cause to be lost among other things, and so) dispatch, kill, put to death.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile.*

inter-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [inter, (out from) among; emō, take], *(take an object out from its surroundings, and so) kill.*

interior, -ius, adj. [comp. of *interus], *inner; the interior of.*

inter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [inter, between, and so, IN the midst; mittō, let go], *(leave off in the midst, and so) interrupt, intermit; let pass, suffer to elapse.*

inter-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [inter, between; pōnō, place], *interpose.*

interpreter, -ārī, -ātus [interpret- (st. of interpres), *interpret-er*], *explain, expound, interpret.*

inter-rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [inter, between (the questioner and the person questioned); rogō, ask], *interrogate, question, ask.*

inter-sum, -esse, -suī [inter, between; sum, be], *BE between, intervene; take part IN, have to do with; attend to, superintend; impers., interest, it concerns, it interests, it is important.*

intervallum, -ī, N. [inter, between, and so *within*; vällum,

rampart], *(space within the rampart, i.e. between the rampart and the soldiers' tents, and so) interval, distance.*

in-tueor, -ērī, -itus [in, at, ON; tueor, look], *look at, gaze ON.*

intus, adv. [in, IN], *within.*

in-utilis, -e, adj. [in-, not; utilis, useful], *useless, UNprofitable; injurious.*

in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī [in, INTO; vādō, go], *go INTO, enter, invade, rush IN, fall UPON, take possession.*

in-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus [in, UPON; veniō, COME], *COME UPON, find (by accident; cf. reperiō, which often means 'find by searching').*

inventor, -ōris, M. [in-vén, COME UPON, discover], *discoverer, inventor, contriver.*

in-victus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not; victus (perf. part. of vincō), conquered], *UNconquered; invincible.*

in-videō, -ēre, -vidi, -visus [in, askance at; videō, look], *look askance at; envy.*

invidia, -ae, F. [invidio- (st. of invidus), envious], *envy; obloquy, odium, unpopularity.*

invitus, -a, -um, adj., *UNwilling.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demonstr. pron., *self, himself, herself, itself; mere, very, in person.*

ira, -ae, F., *anger, passion.*

irācundia, -ae, F. [irācundo- (st. of irācundus), *passionate*], *passion.*

irācundus, -a, -um, adj. [irā- (st. of *iror), *be angry*], *passionate, choleric.*

irāscor, -i, irātus [incept. fr. irā- (st. of *iror), *be angry*], *give way to passion, be angry; irātus, -a, -um, p. a., angry, in anger.*

ir-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in, INTO; rumpō, burst], *burst or rush INTO.*

is, ea, id, demonstr. pron., 1. adj., *this, that, such, of such a kind;* 2. subst., *this one, that one, he, she, it; in pl., these, those,*

they; eo . . . quē, by that . . . by which, the . . . the.

iste, ista, istud, demonstr. pron., THAT of yours, THAT; (with contemptuous implication) THAT, THAT one; ista vēritās, THE truth coming from you.

ita, adv., in such a way, so, thus; ita . . . ut, so . . . as.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

itaque, conj. [ita, so; -que, and], and so, THEREfore.

item, adv. [conn. w. ita, so], likewise.

iter, itineris, n. [Vi-, go], journey, march, marching, passage; way, road, route, line of march; iter facere, to march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

J.

jaceō, -ēre, -cuī [intr. fm. conn. w. jaciō, throw], (be thrown, and so) lie, lie prostrate.

jaciō, -ēre, jēcī, jactus, throw, cast.

jam, adv., now; already; at once, forthwith; even.

jānua, -ae, f., street door, door.

Juba, -ae, m., Juba (king of Numidia and opponent of Caesar).

jubeō, -ēre, jüssī, jüssus, order.

jūcundus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. juvō, help], (helpful, and so)

pleasant, agreeable.

jū-dex, -icis, c. [jūs- (st. of jūs), what is binding; v̄dic-, point out], (one who points out what is binding, i.e. justice, and so) judge.

jūdiciūm, -ii, n. [jūdici- (st. of jūdex), judge], judgment, decision, sentence; in jūdiciūm vocāre, to summon before the court.

jūdicō, -ēre, -āvī, -ātus [jūdic- (st. of jūdex), judge], judge; pronounce, proclaim; consider, deem, think.

jugum, -ī, n. [Vjug-, YOKE], YOKE; (mountain) ridge.

Jūlānus, -a, -um, adj. [Jūlio-(st. of Jūlius)], Julian (i.e., belonging to Julius Caesar).

jūmentum, -ī, n. [Vjū(g)-, YOKE], (that which is yoked, and so) beast of burden.

Jūppiter, Jovis, m. [Jovi- (for Diovi, st. of Diovis), god of heaven; pater, FATHER], Jupiter (supreme deity of the Romans).

Jūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains (a chain extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and separating the Sequani from the Helvetii).

jūs, jūris, n. [Vjū-, bind, conn. w. Vjug-], (that which is binding, and so) right, justice; authority; one's rights, redress; in pl., rights, authority; jūs dicere, to pronounce judgment, to administer justice.

jūsjurandum, jūrisjurandī, n. [jūs, what is binding; gerundive of jūrō, swear], oath.

jūssū, m. (in abl. sing. only) [fr. same root as jubeō, order], at the bidding.

jūstitia, -ae, f. [jūsto- (st. of jūstus), just], justice.

jūstus, -a, -um, adj. [jūs- (st. of jūs), right], founded in right, just; regular, proper, due, usual.

Juventūs, -ūtis, f. [juven- (st. of juvenis), YOUNG], YOUTH.

jūvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtus, help, aid, assist, benefit.

K.

Karthāgō, see Carthāgō.

L.

L., abbr. of Lācius, -ī, m., Lucius (Roman praenōmen or first name).

Lablēnus, -ī, m., Titus Attius Labienus (Caesar's chief lieutenant in the Gallic war, 58–50 B.C.).

labor, -ōris, m. [Vlab-, lay hold of], (laying hold of, and so) labor, toil, exertion.

lābor, -ī, lāpsus [Vlab-, glide, fall], glide, fall, sink; err.

lābōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labōr- (st. of labor), labor], labor; struggle against odds.

lac, lactis, n. milk.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, F., *Lacedaemon* or *Sparta* (chief city of Laconia, in Peloponnesus).

Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, M., *Lacedaemonians* (inhabitants of Lacedaemon, q. v.).

lacertus, -ī, M., *upper arm, arm; in pl., also muscle, brawn.*

laceſſō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *challenge, irritate, attack.*

lacrima, -ae, F., *TEAR.*

lacus, -ūs, M., *lake.*

Laea, -ae, M., *Marcus Porcius Laeca* (one of Catiline's accomplices in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.):

Laelius, -īi, M., *Gaius Laelius* (friend of Scipio Africanus the younger, and principal character in Cicero's work on Friendship; flourished in the latter half of the second century B.C.).

laetitia, -ae, F. [laeto- (st. of laetus), *joyful*], *joy.*

laetor, -ārī, -ātus [laeto- (st. of laetus), *joyful*], *be joyful, rejoice; rejoice at.*

lapis, -idis, M., *stone.*

largior, -īrī, -ītus [largo- (st. of largus), *abundant*], *bestow lavish- ly, be lavish of.*

lātē, adv. [abl. fm. of lātus, *wide*], *widely; quam lātiſſimē, as widely or extensively as possible.*

Latinus, -a, -um, adj., *Latin* (pertaining to Latinum, q. v.).

lātitudō, -inis, F. [lāto- (st. of latus), *broad*], *breadth, extent.*

Latium, -īi, N., *Latium* (district in Italy containing the city Rome).

Latovici, -ōrum, M., *the Latovici* (German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii).

latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber.*

latrōcīnum, -īi, N. [coun. w. latrōcinor, *rob on the highway*], *robbery.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, extensive.*

latus, -eris, N., *side, flank.*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laud- (st. of laus), *praise*], *commend, praise.*

laus, laudis, F., *praise, commendation; glory, distinction, renown.*

lēctor, -ōris, M. [lēg-, *read*], *reader.*

lēgātō, -ōnis, F. [lēgā- (st. of lēgō), *depute*], *deputing; deputation, embassy.*

lēgātūs, -ī, M. [perf. part. of lēgō, *depute*], (one commissioned or deputed, and so) *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant* (the lēgātī were experienced officers commanding separate divisions of the army under the general direction of the commander-in-chief; often in special exigencies they exercised independent command).

legiō, -ōnis, F. [lēg-, *pick, gather*], (a levy, and so) *legion* (a full legion in Caesar's time contained about 6000 men; the legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiōn- (st. of legiō), *legionary*].

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus [lēg-, *pick, gather*], *gather; select; read.*

Lemannus, -ī, M., (ancient name of) *Lake Geneva.*

Lemnos or **Lemnus**, -ī, F., *Lemnos* or *Lemnus* (island in the northern part of the Aegean sea).

Lemovicēs, -um, M., *the Lemovices* (tribe in Celtic Gaul, west of the Arverni).

lēniō, -ire, -īvī or -īi, -ītus [lēni- (st. of lēnis), *soft*], *make soft, soothe.*

Lentulus, -ī, M., *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Sura* (one of Catiline's accomplices in the conspiracy of 63 B.C.).

leō, -ōnis, M., *lion.*

Lepidus, -ī, M., *Manius Aemilius Lepidus* (consul 66 B.C.).

levis, -e, adj., *light, slight.*

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [levi- (st. of levis), *light*], *lighten, relieve, release.*

lēx, lēgis, F., LAW.

libenter, adv. [libent- (st. of libēns), willing], willingly, cheerfully.

liber, -brī, M., book, treatise, work.

liber, -era, -erum, adj., free, unrestricted.

liberālis, -e, adj. [libero- (st. of liber), free], belonging to a freeman; liberal, lavish.

liberāliter, adv. [liberāli- (st. of liberālis), pertaining to a freeman], (in a manner becoming a freeman, and so) graciously, courteously.

liberē, adv. [abl. fm. of liber, free], freely, without constraint.

liberi, -ōrum, M. [masc. pl. of adj. liber, free, used subst.], (the free members of the household in distinction from the slaves, and so) children (with reference to their parents; cf. puerī, children in general).

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [libero- (st. of liber), free], set free, free, liberate, relieve, release.

libertās, -ātis, F. [libero- (st. of liber), free], freedom, liberty.

libet, -ēre -buit or -bitum est (older forms, lubet, etc., *v*lub-, desire; cognate w. English LOVE), it is pleasing or agreeable; mihi libet, I am disposed.

licet, -ēre, -cuit or -citum est [*v*lic-, leave free (through presumed adj.)], it is permitted, it is lawful, one is at liberty, it is possible.

Lingonēs, -um (acc. Lingonas), M., the **Lingones** (tribe in Celtic Gaul near the sources of the Marne and Meuse).

lingua, -ae, F., TONGUE; language.

Liscus, -ī, M., *Liscus* (prominent Aeduan of Caesar's time).

Litavicus, -ī, M., *Litavicus* (Aeduan of Caesar's time).

littera, -ae, F., letter (of the alphabet), character; in pl., letter (epistle), dispatch, letters, dis-

patches; litteris mandāre, to commit to writing.

litus, -oris, N., shore (of the sea; cf. rīpa, bank of a river).

loco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [loco- (st. of locus), place], place.

locus, -ī, M.; in pl., (usu.) loca, -ōrum, N., (sometimes) loci, -ōrum, M., place, spot, site, position; room; rank.

longē, adv. [abl. fm. of longus, LONG], far; by far; for a LONG time, LONG.

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. longus], LONG, LONG-continued.

longitūdō, -inis, F. [longo- (st. of longus), LONG], LENGTH.

longus, -a, -um, adj., LONG; nāvis longa, ship of war.

loquor, -ī, -cūtus [vloqu-, sound, speak], speak.

lūceō, -ēre, lūxī [conn. w. lūx, LIGHT], be LIGHT, shine.

lūdus, -ī, M., game.

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, mourn, lament.

lūmen, -inis, N. [vlu(c)-, shine], (that which shines, and so) LIGHT.

lūna, -ae, F. [vlu(c)-, shine], moon.

lūstrum, -ī, N. [vluou-, wash], purificatory sacrifice.

lūx, lūcis, F. [vlu(c)-, shine], LIGHT.

Lycus, -ī, M., *Lycus* (an Athenian, father of Thrasylulus; lived in the fifth century B.C.).

M.

M., abbr. of **Mārcus**, -ī, M. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

M', abbr. of **Mānius**, -īī, M. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

māchinātiō, -ōnis, F. [māchinā- (st. of māchinor), devise], (devising, and so) mechanism; engine.

māchinor, -ārī, -ātus [māchinā- (st. of māchina), machine], invent, contrive, devise.

magis, adv. [for *magius, n. acc. sing. comp. of adj. used adv.], more.

magister, -trī, m. [*mag-*, *be great*, *be powerful*, w. double comp. suff. : -is = -ius, and -ter], (*he who is greater or more powerful, and so*), *master*.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [*magistrā-* (st. of **magistrō*), *be master*], (*being master, and so*) *office of a magistrate, magistracy; magistrate*.

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [*māgno-* (st. of *māgnus*), *great*; *fac-*, *DO*], (*of great deeds, and so*) *magnificent, glorious, splendid*.

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. [*māgno-* (st. of *māgnus*), *great*], *greatness, size, bulk, extent, magnitude*.

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. [*mag-*, *be great*], *great, large; māgni* (gen. of value), *greatly, highly*. Comp., **mājor**, -us, *greater; older, elder*; pl. subst., **mājōrēs**, *ancestors*; **mājōrēs nātū**, *elders, old men*. Superl., **māximus**, -a, -um, *greatest; quam māximus* (with or without some form of possum), *greatest possible*.

mājor, -us, see *māgnus*.

male, adv. [abl. fm. of *malus*, *bad*], *badly, ill*.

maleficium, -ii, n. [*malefico-* (st. of *maleficus*), *mischievous*], *mischievous*.

mālō, mālle, māluī [*mage* (=magis), *rather*; *vōlō*, *wish*], *wish rather, choose rather, prefer*.

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil, mischievous, evil-minded; wretched, unfortunate*; subst., **malum**, -i, n., *evil*. Comp., **pējor**, -us, *worse*. Superl., **pessimus**, -a, -um, *worst*.

mandātum, -i, n. [u. perf. part. of *mandō*, *command*], *injunction, order, commission, message*.

mandō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [*manu-* (st. of *manus*), *hand*; *dō*, *give* (*through presumed adj. st.*)], (*put into one's hands, and so*) *commit, intrust; order, command*.

mānē, adv., *early in the morning*.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum

[*man-, think*], (*stand wrapt in thought, and so*) *wait, remain, abide, continue; manēre in, to remain IN, to abide by*.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; art; force, band; in manibus, IN preparation; vim et manūs īferre, to lay violent hands upon*.

Mārcius, -ii, m., *Quintus Mārcius Rex* (consul 68 B.C.).

mare, -is, n., *sea; mari, on the sea, by sea*.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [*mari-* (st. of *mare*), *sea*], *belonging to the sea, maritime*.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars* (*Mars was originally a Roman agricultural divinity, but early came to be identified with the Greek god Ares; hence he is generally viewed as the god of war*).

Massīva, -ae, m., *Massīva* (grandson of the Numidian king Masinissa; assassinated at the instigation of Jugurtha B.C. 108).

māter, -trīs, f. [*fm. of mā-*, *form, fashion, make*], *MOTHER*.

māteria, -ae, f. [*māter*, MOTHER], (*mother-stuff, and so*) *materials; timber*.

mātūrē, adv. [abl. fm. of *mātūrus*, *ripe*], *seasonably; speedily*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*mātūro-* (st. of *mātūrus*), *ripe*], *ripen; hasten*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. *mānē*, *early in the morning*], *ripe*.

māximē, adv. [abl. fm. of *māximus*, *greatest*], *especially, most of all, most*.

māximus, -a, -um, see *māgnus*.

mediocris, -e, adj. [conn. w. *medius*, *MIDDLE*], *MIDDLE; slight*.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *MIDDLE, MIDDLE part of, in the MIDDLE; per mediōs, through the MIDDLE of them*.

mehercle or **mēhercle** [*mē*, acc. pers. pron. w. vowel shortened (sc. *juvēs*); *hercle* or *hercule*, voc. of *Herculēs*], (*Hercules, [help] me! and so*) *by Hercules!*

melior, -ius, see bonus.

membrum, -i, N., *limb, member.*
memini, def. (only in perf.

system, w. meaning of pres.)
[vmen-, think; cf. mēns], *think of, remember, cherish the memory of; mention, make mention of.*

memor, -oris, adj. [vmor- (re-duplicated), *tarry over, brood;* conn. w. mora, *delay*], *mindful, thoughtful, recalling.*

memoria, -ae, F. [memori- (st. of memor), *mindful*], *remembrance, memory; time; memoriae*
prōditum est, *the story runs* (lit., it has been handed down to memory).

memorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [memori- (st. of memor), *mindful*], (make mindful, call to mind, and so) *mention, recount.*

Menapii, -ōrum, M., *the Menapii* (tribe in the northern part of Belgic Gaul).

mēns, mentis, F. [vmen-, think], *MIND, the intellectual faculties; disposition; opinion; purpose, intention.*

mēnsis, -is, M. [conn. w. mētior, *measure*], (measure of time, and so) *MONTH.*

mentior, -īrī, -ītus [menti- (st. of mēns), *MIND* (with special reference to the imagination)], (draw upon the imagination, invent, romance, and so) *lie, speak falsely.*

mercātor, -ōris, M. [mercā- (st. of mercor), *trade*], *trader, merchant.*

mercātūra, -ae, F. [mercā- (st. of mercor), *trade*], *trade, traffic, commerce; in pl., commercial transactions.*

mercēs, -ēdis, F. [conn. w. mercātor and mercātūra], *hire, pay.*

Mercurius, -ī, M. [conn. w. the foregoing words], **Mercury** (Roman god of commerce and gain; later identified with Greek god Hermes, and so viewed as herald and messenger of the gods, presider over roads, etc.).

mereor, -ērī, -ītus, *deserve, merit.*
Messālla, -ae, M., *Messalla* (Messala).

-met (pron. suff. appended for emphasis to certain forms of the pers. and poss. prons.), *self.*

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus [conn. w. modus, *MEASURE, and mēnsis, MONTH*], *measure, estimate, judge.*

metuō, -ēre, -ūlī, -ūtus (once) [metu- (st. of metus), *fear*], *fear.*

metus, -ūs, M., *fear, apprehension.*

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., MY; *mēā interest, it interests ME, it is of importance to ME.*

miles, -itis, M., *soldier.*

militāris, -e, adj. [milit- (st. of miles), *soldier*], *pertaining to soldiers, military; rēs militāris, the military art.*

militia, -ae, F. [milit- (st. of miles), *soldier*], *warfare, military service; militiae, abroad, in the field.*

mille, in sing., indecl. adj., thousand; also in nom. and acc. sing. (w. part. gen.), subst., thousand: *mille passuum, a thousand paces, a mile; in pl., milia (millia) (w. part. gen.), subst., thousands: milia passuum or milia (sc. passuum), miles.*

Miltiadēs, -is, M., *Miltiades* (celebrated Athenian general; defeated the Persians in the battle of Marathon B.C. 490).

mina, -ae, F. [borrowed from the Greek], *mina* (sum of money equivalent to about \$18).

Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva* (goddess of wisdom, of the arts and sciences, of spinning and weaving, etc.).

minimus, -a, -um, see parvus.

minimē, adv. [abl. fm. of minimus, least], *least, least of all.*

minitor, -īrī, -ītus [intens. of minor, threaten; formed as if the perf. part. were minitus], *threaten, menace.*

minor, -us, see parvus.

minus, adv. [acc. n. sing. of minor], less; not; **minus valēre**, not to be strong enough, to be too weak.

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [conn. w. minor, less], lessen, diminish; check, prevent; (of disputes) settle.

mīrabilis, -e [mīrā- (st. of mīror), wonder at], to be wondered at, wonderful.

miror, -ārī, -ātus [mīro- (st. of mīrus), wonderful], wonder at, admire, wonder.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. [$\sqrt{v(s)mī}$, smile], wonderful, strange; **mīhi mirum vīdētur**, I am at a loss to understand.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, unfortunate.

miseror, -ērī, -eritus or -ertus [misero- (st. of miser), wretched], (be wretched in another's behalf, and so) feel pity, pity, have compassion.

miseret, -ērē, -eritum, impers. [misero- (st. of miser), wretched], it distresses, it moves to pity; **mē miseret**, I pity, I am sorry for.

misericordia, -ae, f. [miseri-cordi-, (st. of misericors), tender-HEARTED], tender-HEARTedness, compassion, pity.

miseri-cors, -cordis, adj. [misero- (st. of miser), wretched; cordi- (st. of cor), HEART], tender-HEARTED, compassionate.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [misero- (st. of miser), wretched], express pity for, lament, bewail.

Mithridātēs, -is, m., **Mithridates** (king of Pontus and enemy of the Roman people; committed suicide 63 B.C.).

mitis, -e, adj., mild.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, send.

modestē, adv. [abl. fm. of modestus, temperate], temperately.

modestus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. modus, MEASURE], (measured, observant of due restraint, and so) modest.

modicus, -a, -um, adj. [modo-

(st. of modulus), MEASURE], moderate.

modo, adv. [abl. of modus, MEASURE, w. final vowel shortened], (by measure, i.e. not exceeding, and so) only, merely, but; if only; **nōn modo . . . vērum etiam**, not only . . . but also.

modus, -i, m. [\sqrt{vmod} , MEASURE, quantity, amount; manner, way, sort; **hūjusmodi**, of this sort, the following, as follows; **ējusmodi**, of such a kind, such; ad hunc modum, as follows; in servilem modum, as in the case of slaves.

moles, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. mōlēs, mass, burden], burdensome, troublesome, annoying.

mollīō, -īre, -īvī and -īi, -ītus [mollī- (st. of mollis), soft], soften. **mollis**, -e, adj., soft, pliant, yielding; feeble.

mōmentum, -i, n. [\sqrt{vmov} , push], (result of pushing, and so) movement; weight, importance, moment.

moneō, -ērē, -uī, -ītus [\sqrt{vmon} , think, cause to think], remind, warn. **mōns**, montis, m., mountain.

morbus, -i, m. [\sqrt{vmor} , waste away; conn. w. morior and mors], disease.

Morini, -ōrum, m., the Morini (tribe in Belgic Gaul near strait of Dover).

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus [\sqrt{vmor} , waste away; conn. w. morbus and mors], die.

moror, -ārī, -ātus [mōrā- (st. of mora), delay], delay, remain, linger.

mors, -tis, f. [\sqrt{vmor} , waste away; conn. w. morior and morbus], death.

mortalis, -e, adj. [morti- (st. of mors), death], pertaining to death, mortal; subst., human being, mortal, man.

mortuus, -a, -um [p. a. of morior, die], dead.

mōs, mōris, m., custom, wont, usage, practice; in pl., morals, character.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [*mov-*, *push* (through presumed adj. st.)], *move*; *excite, cause; affect, disturb, trouble; influence.*

muller, -eris, f., *woman.*

multiplex, -icis, adj. [multo- (st. of multus), *much*; *vplec-*, *fold*], *manifold; plausus multiplex, repeated outbreaks of applause.*

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multo- (st. of multus), *much*], *great number, multitude; the people, the public.*

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [multā- (st. of multa), *penalty, fine*], *punish, fine; aliquem pecūnlā multāre, to fine one in a sum of money.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much*; in pl., *many*; *multum* (used adv.), *much, widely*; *multō* (w. comp.), *much, far*; *multā nocte, late at night.* Trans. adv., *frequently.* Comp., *plūs, plūris, more*; pl., *plūrēs, plūra, more than one, and so several.* Superl., *plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very much, very many, most numerous; plūrimū posse, to be most or very powerful, to be very influential.*

Mulvius, -a, -um, adj., *Mulvian* (bridge across the Tiber).

mundus, -i, M., *universe, world.*

mūnimentum, -i, N. [mūni- (st. of mūniō), *fortify*], *means of defense, fortification, rampart.*

mūniō, -ire, -īvī or -īlī, -ītus [old fm., *moeniō*, fr. *moeni-* (st. of *moenia, walls*)], *build a wall; make secure, fortify.*

mūnitō, -ōnis, f. [mūni- (st. of mūniō), *fortify*], *fortification.*

mūnus, -eris, N., *office, function, duty; burden; service; gift.*

mūrus, -i, M., *wall.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [for *mōtō, intens. of moveō, *move*; fr. mōto-, st. of perf. part. mōtus], *change.*

N.

nam, conj. (*stands at the beginning of the sentence*), *for; (in interrog. sentences expressing surprise or emotion) but or pray.*

namque, conj. [*nam, for; que, and; cf. etenim*] (*stronger than nam*), *for indeed, for.*

nāscor, -i, nātus [for *gnāscor, *inceptive fr. vgnā-*, *be born*], *be born; arise.*

nātālis, -e, adj. [nāto- (st. of nātus), *born*], *pertaining to one's birth; diēs nātālis, birthday.*

nātō, -ōnis, f. [for *gnātō, fr. vgnā-, *be born*], *being born, birth; race; nation, people, tribe.*

nātū (in abl. only), M. [for *gnātū, fr. vgnā-, *be born*], *by birth; grandis nātū, advanced in years.*

nātūra, -ae, f. [for *gnātūra, fr. vgnā-, *be born*], *nature, character; nātūrā, by nature, naturally.*

nātūrālis, -e, adj. [nātūrā- (st. of nātūra), *nature*], *belonging to nature, natural.*

nātus, -a, -um [perf. part. of nāscor, *be born*], *born.*

nāvāllis, -e, adj. [nāvi- (st. of nāvis), *ship*], *belonging or pertaining to ships, naval.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nāvi- (st. of nāvis), *ship*; *vag-*, *drive through* (presumed adj. st.)], *sail.*

nāvis, -is, f., *ship*; **nāvis longa**, *ship-of-war, man-of-war; see Fig. 6.*

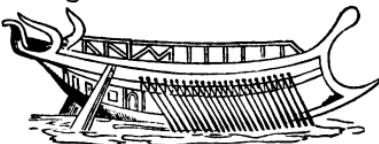


Fig. 6.

Nāvis longa, from a mosaic in a tomb near Puteoli.

nē, adv. (regular negative w. hort. and opt. subj.), *Not; (in final clauses) that Not, lest; (w. verbs of fearing) that or lest.*

nē . . . quidem, *not even (w. emphatic word or words between nē and quidem).*

-ne, enclitic interrog. particle; it simply inquires, without implying what answer is expected. cf. nōnne and num.

Neapolis, -is, f., *Naples* (New-ton).

nec, see neque.

necesse, n. adj. used in nom. and acc. sing., *necessary*.

neg-legō, -ere, -ēxi, -ēctus [nec, not; legō, gather, heed], *disregard, neglect; set at defiance*.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *deny, say . . . Not*.

negōtium, -ii, n. [nec, not; ōtium, *leisure*], *business, affair, matter, enterprise, undertaking*.

nēmō (in place of gen. nēminis, nūlius is used; in place of abl. nēmine, nūlō, m. or nūllā, f. is used), c. [nē, not, NO; hemo (homo), man], *No one, Nobody*.

neque or nec, conj. [nē (w. vowel shortened), not; -que, and], *and Not, Neither, Nor; neque . . . neque or nēc . . . nec, Neither . . . Nor*.

Nervii, -ōrum, m., *the Nervii* (tribe in Belgic Gaul between the Sambre and the Scheldt).

ne-sciō, -īre, -īvī or -īlī [nē, not; sciō, know], *Not know*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. [nē, not; ute, eiTHER], *NEITHER; in pl., neutrī, NEITHER party*.

nēve or neu, conj. [nē, not; ve, or], *and Not, Nor, and that Not (takes the place of neque in clauses expressing purpose, exhortation, and prohibition)*.

nex, necis, f. [*Vnec-, destroy*; conn. w. noceō and perniciēs], *death (by violence)*.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*.

nihil, n., def. (also nihillum, -ī, n., and nil) [nē, not; hilum, trifle, *the least thing*], *Nothing; nihil (adv. acc.) Not at all; nihil posse, to be without any effective strength*.

nimir, adv., *too, excessively*.

nimius, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. foregoing], *too much, excessive*.

nisi, conj. [nē, not; sī, if], *if*

not, unless, except; nihil nisi, Nothing but; nisi cum, until.

nitor, -ī, nīsus or nīxus, *depend, rely*.

nōbilis, -e, adj. [*Vgnō-, KNOW*], *capable or worthy of being known; famous, celebrated, renowned; high-born, noble; subst., nobleman, noble*.

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. [*nōbili-* (st. of nōbilis), *well known*], *fame; nobility, noble birth, rank; nobles, the nobility*.

nōbilitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*nōbili-* (st. of nōbilis), *famous*], *make famous*.

noceō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [*Vnoc-, destroy, injure* (through presumed adj. st.); conn. w. nex and perniciēs], *injure, damage, inflict injury*.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. noctū, by NIGHT], *pertaining to the NIGHT, nocturnal, posted by NIGHT*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi [nē, not; volō, wish], *be unwilling, decline; id nōlle, to object to this*.

nōmen, -inis, n. [*Vgnō-, KNOW*], *(means of knowing, and so) NAME; nōmine, under the NAME, as, by way of*.

nōminātīm, adv. [*nōminā-* (st. of nōminō), NAME], *by NAME, in detail*.

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*nōmin-* (st. of nōmen), NAME], *NAME, call*.

nōn, adv. [old forms, noenum, noenu, fr. nē, not, and ūnum, ONE], *Not, NO*.

nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., *NINETIETH*.

nōndum, adv. [*nōn, Not; dum, yet*], *Not yet*.

nōnne [*nōn, Not; -ne, interrog. particle*], *interrog. particle introducing questions to which an affirmative answer is expected*.

nōn nūllus or nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj. [*nōn, Not; nūllus, No*], *some; pl. subst., nōnnūlli, some*.

nōn **nunquam** (*numquam*) or
nōnnunquam (*numquam*), adv. [nōn, not; *nunquam*, never], sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [coun. w. *novem*, NINE], NINTH.

Nōrīcus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to *Noricum* (a country lying between the Alps and the Danube) *Norican*.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus [*inceptive fr. vgnō*, KNOW], become acquainted with; acknowledge; in perf., KNOW.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [nōs, we], our.

novem, num. adj. indecl., NINE.

nōvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*novō* (st. of *novus*), NEW], make NEW, reNEW.

novus, -a, -um, adj., NEW, strange; superl., novissimus, hindmost, rear; novissimum ag-men, rear; ab novissimis, in the rear.

nox, noctis, f. [*vnoc-*, destroy, injure; conn. w. *noceō*], NIGHT; multā nocte, late at NIGHT.

noxa, -ae, f. [*vnoc-*, destroy, injure; conn. w. *noceō*], offence, crime.

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, (of a bride) veil one's self (for the bridegroom), and so marry; nūptum (sup.) conlocāre, to give in marriage.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*nūdo* (st. of *nūdus*), bare], strip; lay bare.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj. [for *nug-dus; cognate w. English NAKED], bare, destitute.

nūgātor, -ōris, m. [*nūgā* (st. of *nūgor*), trifler].

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, not; ullus, ANY], not ANY, NO; annihilated; subst., NO ONE.

num, interrog. particle introducing questions to which a neg. answer is expected; also (in dependent questions), whether.

Numantia, -ae, f., *Numantia*

(town in Spain on the upper Douro, destroyed by Scipio Africanus the younger 133 B.C.).

nūmen, -īnis, n. [*vñū*, nod], (that which is expressed by a nod, and so) divine will or power.

numerus, -i, m., number; account, estimation, rank.

numquam, see *nunquam*.

nunc, adv., now.

nunquam or **numquam**, adv. [nē, Not; unquam, ever], Never.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*nūntio* (st. of *nūntius*), messenger], announce, report.

nūntius, -ii, m. [conn. w. *novus*, NEW], messenger; message, NEWS; order, injunction.

nusquam, adv. [nē, Not; usquam, anywhere], Nowhere.

O.

ō, interj., O, OH.

ob, prep. w. acc., in view of, on account of, for.

ob-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, ductus [ob, towards, forward; dūcō, draw], draw forward, extend.

ob-iciō (pronounced: objiciō), -ere, -jēci, -jectus [ob, before, against; jaciō, cast], cast before; set against, match.

oblitus, -a, -um [p. a. of obli-visor, forget], forgetful.

obliviscor, -ī, -litus, forget, turn one's thoughts from.

obscūritās, -ātis, f. [*obscūro* (st. of *obscūrus*), obscure], obscurity.

ob-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, towards, before; sacrō, declare sacred], (appeal to one in the name of the gods, and so) beseech, implore.

ob-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, before; servō, keep], observe, mark, keep; respect, follow, comply with.

ob-ses, -idis, c. [ob, before; sed-, sit], (one who sits or remains as a pledge, and so) hostage.

ob-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sēssus [ob, before; sedeō, sit], *besiege.*

ob-stō, -āre, -stītī [ob, against; stō, stand], *stand against, oppose.*

ob-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ob, against; struō, build], *build against, barricade.*

ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [ob, against; teneō, hold], *lay hold of; hold; be in authority over; obtain.*

ob-tingō, -ere, -tigī [ob, towards; tangō, touch], *fall to one's lot.*

ob-truncō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, implying attack; truncō, cut off], *cut down, kill.*

obviām, adv. [ob, towards, on; via, way], *on the way, to meet;* **obviām īre** (w. dat.), *to go to meet, to resist.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. [ob-vcād-, fall towards], *(falling towards one, and so) occasion, chance, opportunity.*

occāsus, -ūs, m. [ob-vcād-, fall towards, sink down], *(sinking, and so) setting.*

oc-cidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob, against; caedō, cut], *kill, slay.*

occultē, adv. [abl. fm. of oculatus, secret], *secretly.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of occulō, cover up, fr. occulto- (st. of perf. part.)], *conceal, secrete.*

occultus, -a, -um [perf. part. of occultō, cover up], *concealed, secret; in occultō, IN secret.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-vcap-, lay hold of (through presumed adj. st.)], *take possession of, seize; occupy, employ.*

oc-currō, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī, rare), -cursum [ob, towards; currō, run], *run to meet; hasten to oppose; hasten (against the enemy) to the rescue (of one's friends).*

Ōceanus, -ī, m., *ocean.*

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [octin-, conn. w. octō, EIGHT; -gintī, conn. w. centum, HUNDRED], *EIGHT HUNDRED.*

octō, indecl. num. adj., **EIGHT.**

octōgēsimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., **EIGHTIETH.**

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj. [octō, EIGHT; -gin- represents (de)cem, TEN], **EIGHTY.**

oculus, -ī, m. [fr. vōc-, see (through presumed subst.)], **EYE.**

ōdi, -ōsus, def. (pres. system wanting), *hate, cherish hatred.*

odium, -īi, n. [vōd-, hate; conn. w. ōdi], *hatred; grudge.*

of-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob, towards; ferō, BEAR], *present, offer.*

officium, -īi, n. [base op- (in opus), work, service; vōfac-, do], *service, office, duty; sense of duty; obedience, allegiance.*

ōmen, -īnis, n., *omen.*

o-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [ob, before, aside; mittō, let go], *let go; disregard.*

omnīnō, adv. [abl. fm. conn. w. omnis], *altogether, in all, only, but; in general.*

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every.*

onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight; enui.*

opēs, -um, f. (nom. sing. used only as name of goddess of Plenty), *means, resources, property, wealth, riches; opis (gen. sing.), aid, help, assistance.*

opiniō, -ōnis, f. [conn. w. opinor, be of opinion], *opinion, views, beliefs, impression; expectation; suspicion; celerius opiniōne, more quickly than any one had supposed possible.*

opitulor, -ārī, -ātus [opi- (st. of opis), aid; vōtol-, bear (through *opitulus)], *bring aid, relieve.*

oporet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., it is proper, it is right, it behoves.*

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppido- (st. of oppidum), town], *belonging to the town; subst., oppidāni, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of the town, townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town (viewed as stronghold).*

opportūnitās, -ātis, f. [oppor-tūno- (st. of opportūnus), *convenient*], *convenience, favorable-ness; opportunity*.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *con-venient, fit, opportune*.

op-prīmō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob, *against*; premō, *press*], *crush, overpower*.

op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, *against*; pūgnō, *fight*], *assault*.

optimus, see bonus.

[**Ops**], opis, f., see opēs.

opus, -eris, N., *work; undertak-ing*; in pl., *manufactures*.

opus, N., used as nom. and acc. only [same as foregoing], *need, necessity*; translated adj., *neces-sary*.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [*ōrā-*, *speak*], *speaking, speech, language; address*.

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [*ōrā-*, *speak, plead*], *speaker, orator*.

orbis, -is, m., *circle, orb; com-pact mass*.

ōrdō, -inīs, m., *row, rank; com-pany*.

Orgetorix, -igis, m., *Orgetorix* (prominent Helvetian of Caesar's time).

orior, -īrī, ortus, *rise, spring up, take one's origin, begin; descend*.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, N. [*ōrnā-* (st. of *ōrnō*), *embellish*], (*means of embellishing, and so*) *mark of honor, distinction, ornament*.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ōs-* (st. of *ōs*) (-s- becomes -r-), *mouth*], *en-treat, beg, beseech*.

ortus, -ūs, m. [*vor-, rise*; conn. w. *orior*], *rising; origin*.

ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus [*ōsculo-* (st. of *ōsculum*), *a kiss*], *kiss*.

os-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus [*obs=ob, *towards*; tendō, *stretch*], *point out, show; make known, de-clare, give to understand*.

ōstium, -īl, N. [conn. w. *ōs, mouth*], *entrance, door*.

ōtium, -īl, N., *leisure*.

P.

P., abbr. of **Pūblius**, -īl, m. (Roman praenōmen or first name).

paene, adv., *almost*.

paenitēt, -ēre, -uit, *impers. [conn. w. poena, penalty]*, *cause to repent; mē paenitēt, I repent, I regret, I am dissatisfied*.

pāgus, -ī, m. [*vpāg-*, *make fast*], (*place enclosed by fixed bounda ries, and so*) *district*.

palam, adv., *openly, publicly*.

Palātium, -īl, N., *the Palatine hill* (one of the seven hills on which Rome was built).

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.

pandō, -ere, *pandī, pāssus, stretch out, expand*.

pār, paris, adj., *equal; match for; of equal rank or considera-tion*.

parātus, -a, -um [p. a. of parō, *prepare*], *prepared, ready; eager*.

parcō, -ere, *pepercī (parsī), SPARE*.

parēns, -entis, c. [part. of pariō, *bring forth, used subst.*], *parent*.

pārēō, -ēre, *pārūl* [intr. form conn. w. tr. parō, *make ready*], (*be ready, and so*) *appear; (ap-pear in response to orders, and so) obey*.

pariter, adv. [pari- (st. of pār), *equal*], *equally; at the same time*.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tr. fm. conn. w. intr. pārēō, *be ready*], *make ready, prepare; procure, ac-quire*.

paras, partis, f. [*vpar-*, *assign, make ready*; the same root is contained in parō and pārēō], (*as-signment, and so*) *part, portion, share; side, direction, quarter*.

parti-ceps, -cipis, adj. [parti- (st. of pars), *part*; *vcap-, take*], *taking part, sharing; particeps esse, to come in for a share*.

partīor, -īrī, -ītus [parti- (st. of pars), *part, divide, distribute*.

parum, adv. [acc. used adv. ; parum (for *sparum) is conn. w.

parcō (for *sparcō), SPARE], too little.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. parvo- (st. of parvus), small], very small, tiny; ab parvulis, from childhood.

parvus, -a, -um, adj. [= *paurus (cf. nervus = *neurus); conn. w. pauci, FEW], small, little, slight. Comp., minor, -us, less, smaller; minus, used adv.: less; not; minus valēre, not to be strong enough, to be too weak. Superl., minimus, -a, -um, very little, least.

passus, -ūs, M. [\sqrt{pat} , spread, stretch; conn. w. pateō], (stretching forth of the legs in walking, and so) pace; (as a measure of length) five Roman feet (a little less than five English feet).

pateō, -ere, -ūi [\sqrt{pat} , spread, stretch (through presumed adj. st.)], be open, lie open, extend.

pater, -tris, M. [of uncertain origin], FATHER.

pater familiās or **paterfamiliās**, patris familiās, M. [pater, FATHER; familia, household of slaves], master of a house, head of a household.

patera, -ae, F. [conn. w. pateō, through \sqrt{pat} , spread], libation-saucer, sacrificial dish; see Fig. 7.

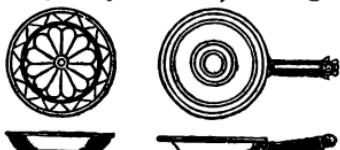


Fig. 7.

Front and side view of two paterae, one with handle, the other without. The illustrations are copies of bronze originals found at Pompeii.

patienter, adv. [patient- (st. of patiēns), patient], patiently.

patior, -i, passus, suffer; permit.

patria, -ae, F. [fem. of patrius, belonging to one's FATHERS; sc. terra], native country.

pauci, -ae, -a, adj. (sing. very rare) [conn. w. parvus, small,

q. v.], FEW, but FEW; pauca, FEW words, briefly; paucis, in a FEW words, briefly.

paulisper, adv., for a little while, for a short time.

paulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. *pauro=parvo- (stem of parvus) little], a little; paulō, by a little, a little.

Paullus, -i, M., 1. *Lucius Aemilius Paullus* (Roman consul, killed in the battle of Cannae 216 B.C.); 2. *Lucius Aemilius Paullus* (son of preceding, defeated Perses, king of Macedon, at Pydna 168 B.C.).

pāx, pācis, F. [\sqrt{pac} , bind fast], (that which binds fast, and so) peace; pāce tuā, with your permission.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, make a mistake, transgress, sin.

pecūnia, -ae, F. [conn. w. pecū, cattle], (as cattle constituted the earliest form of wealth, therefore) wealth, riches; money, a sum of money.

pedes, -itis, M. [ped- (st. of pēs), FOOT], FOOT-soldier.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pedit- (st. of pedes), FOOT-soldier], pertaining to FOOT-soldiers.

peditātus, -ūs, M. [peditā- (st. of peditō) go on FOOT], (orig. going on foot, and so, used concretely) FOOT-soldiers, infantry.

pējor, -us, comp. of malus, q. v.

pellis, -is, F. [cognate w. English FELL], skin; tent; sub pellibus, in camp.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, beat; drive, expel; rout.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, weigh; pay.

pēnsum, -i, N. [n. perf. part. of pendō, weigh], something weighed; weight, consideration, importance; pēnsi habēre, to consider of importance.

per, prep. w. acc., through; by, by means of, through the instrumentality of; per sē; of himself,

herself, itself or themselves; through his, her, its or their own exertions.

per-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [per, completely; capiō, take], *perceive, learn, understand; receive in one's own person, experience.*

per-discō, -ere, -didicī [per, thoroughly; discō, learn], *learn thoroughly, commit to memory.*

per-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus [per, through, away; dō, put], *make way with, destroy, ruin.* The forms of pereō supply the pass.

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [per, through; dūcō, lead], *lead through, lead; carry, extend, conduct.*

peregrinus, -a, -um, adj. [peregro- (st. of adv. peregrē, abroad)], *strange, foreign; subst., stranger, foreigner.*

per-eō, -ire, -iī [per, through, away; eō, go, pass], *perish, be destroyed; perlit, is dead.*

per-facilis, -e, adj. [per, very; facilis, easy], *very easy; perfacilest, it is a very easy matter.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [per, through; ferō, BEAR], *BEAR to the end, endure, submit to, sustain.*

per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [per, through; faciō, do], *carry through or out, accomplish; finish, bring to completion.*

per-fruor, -ī, -frūctus [per, thoroughly; fruor, enjoy], *enjoy fully.*

perfuga, -ae, m. [per-^vfug-, flee through (the lines)], *(one who flees through the lines, and so) deserter.*

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrectus [per, through, on; regō, guide], 1. tr. *proceed with;* 2. intr. *proceed.*

periclitōr, -ārī, -ātus [intens. verb; conn. w. periculum, trial], *make trial of, try, test.*

periculōsus, -a, -um [periculō- (st. of periculum), peril], *full of peril, dangerous, perilous.*

periculum, -ī, n. [peri- (st. of *perior; cf. experior and peritus), try, test], *trial; danger, peril, risk.*

peritus, -a, -um [p. a. of *perior (cf. experior), try, test], *tried, experienced, skillful.*

per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum [per, through; maneō, stay], *stay through, remain, abide, continue; survive.*

per-misceō, -ēre, -scuī, -mīstus or -mīxtus [per, thoroughly; misceō, MIX], *disturb, throw into confusion.*

per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [per, through; mittō, let go] (orig., let go through), *intrust, commit.*

per-moveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtus [per, thoroughly; moveō, move], *move deeply, influence, alarm.*

perniciēs, gen. -īi, -iēs, or -iē, f. [per-vnec-, completely destroy], *destruction, ruin.*

perniciōsus, -a, -um, adj. [perniciē- (st. of perniciēs), destruction], *destructive, ruinous, pernicious.*

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [per, through; rumpō, break], *break or rush through.*

per-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [per, persistently; sequor, follow], *follow up; avenge.*

Persēs, -ae, m., *Perses* (last king of Macedonia, defeated by Lucius Aemilius Paullus at Pydna 168 B.C.).

per-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus [per, completely; solvō, discharge], *discharge fully, pay.*

per-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [per, through; speciō, look], *examine; perceive, ascertain.*

per-suādeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus [per, through, to the end; suādeō, urge], *persuade, convince; inculcate.*

per-terreō, -ere, -ui, -itūs [per, thoroughly; terreō, frighten], *frighten thoroughly; paralyze with fear.*

per-tineō, -ēre, -ūī [per, through, to the end; teneō (intr.), continue], *extend; tend.*

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. [perturbā- (st. of perturbō), throw into confusion], *confusion, disquiet, perturbation.*

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [per, greatly; turbō, *disturb*], *throw into confusion, rout; disturb, disquiet, discompose, agitate.*

per-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum [per, through, to the end; veniō, COME], *arrive, COME; (of money) revert.*

pēs, *pedis*, m. [*ped*-, *tread*], *foot.*

petō, -ere, -īvī or -īī, -itus [*pet*-, fly at, fall], *fall upon; make for, repair to; go to seek, go after, seek, ask for, beseech.*

pictor, -ōris, m. [*pig*-, *paint*], *painter.*

pletās, -ātis, f. [pio- (st. of pius), dutiful, reverential], *dutiful or reverential conduct; (with reference to the gods) piety; (with reference to parents) filial respect.*

piget, -ēre, -uit, -itum, *it irks, it disgusts; mē piget, I loathe, I am disgusted.*

pilum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin.*

pingō, -ere, pinxī, pictus [*pig*-, *paint*], *paint.*

Piso, -ōnis, m., 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso* (lieutenant of Cassius 107 B.C.); 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius* (grandson of the preceding and father-in-law of Caesar).

placeō, -ēre, -ūī, -itus (p. a.) [conn. w. plācō, *reconcile*], *be pleasing; impers., placet, it pleases, it seems good, it is one's pleasure.*

placidus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. placeō, be *pleasing*], *calm, placid.*

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. placeō, be *pleasing*], *reconcile; appease, propitiate.*

plānitiēs, gen. -ae, f. [plāno- (st. of plānus), *level*], *plain.*

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *level, flat, plane.*

plausus, -ūī, m. [base plaud- (in plaudō), *clap*], (clapping, and so) *applause.*

plēbēs, f., archaic form of plēbs, q. v.

plēbs, -is, f. [conn. w. plēnus, FULL, through *plē*, *FILL*], *the multitude, the common PEOPLE, commons, lower orders, POPULACE.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [*plē*, *FILL*], *FULL.*

plērumque, see *plērusque.*

plērusque, -raque, -rumque, adj. (usu. pl.) [conn. w. plēnus, FULL], *very many, most, the greater part; adv., plērumque, for the most part, commonly.*

plūrēs, pl. of plūs, q. v.

plūrimus, -a, -um, superl. of multus, q. v.

plūs, plūris, comp. of multus, q. v.

poena, -ae, f., *satisfaction; penalty, punishment; poenās dare, to give satisfaction, and so to suffer punishment.*

Poeni, -ōrum, m., *inhabitants of Carthage, Carthaginians* (see *Carthāgō*). The Carthaginians were descended from the Phoenicians; hence the name Poenī).

poēta, -ae, m. [borrowed from the Greek], *poet.*

pol-liceor, -ērī, -itus [por- (old prep.), to, towards; liceor, *make an offer*], *PROMISE (voluntarily).*

Pompējus, **Pompēi**, m., *Pompey* (celebrated conqueror of the pirates of the Mediterranean and of Mithridates; defeated by Caesar at the battle of Pharsalus 48 B.C.).

Pompējus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pompey, Pompeian* (see preceding).

pondus, -eris, n. [conn. w. pendō, *weigh*], *weight.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, *positus, place, deposit;* (of a camp), *pitch.*

pōns, *pontis*, m., *bridge.*

populāris, -e, adj. [populo- (st. of *populus*), *people*], *belonging to the people, popular.*

populor, -ārī, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate.*

populus, -ī, m. [conn. w. *plēbs* and *plēnus*], *people.*

porta, -ae, f. [*þpor-*, *FARE, go through*], *gate.*

portō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus [*portā* (st. of *porta*), *gate*], *carry.*

portus, -ūs, m. [*þpor-*, *FARE, go through*], *entrance; harbor, port.*

poscō, -ere, *poposcī, ask urg-ently for, demand.*

possessiō, -ōnis, f. [*por-* (old prep.), *before*; *sed-*, *sit*], *(sitting before, and so) possession, prop-erty.*

pos-sideō, -ere, -sēdī, -sēssus [*por-* (old prep.), *before*; *sedeo*, *sit*], *hold, be master of, possess.*

possum, *posse, potui* [*potis*, *able*; *sum, be*], *can, be able; plū-rimum posse, to be the most pow-erful, to have the most power, to be very influential; nihil posse, to be without any effective strength; facere nōn possum quin, I can-not help.*

post, adv. and prep. w. acc., 1. adv.: *afterwards, later, after; annō post, the year after.* 2. prep. w. acc.: *(of place) behind, in the rear of, next to; (of time) after.*

posteā, adv. [*post, after; acc. pl. n. ea* (orig. *eā*), *these things; cf. anteā*], *afterwards.*

***posterus**, -era, -erum, adj. [*posti-* (st. of *post*), *after*], *coming after, following; subst., posteri, -ōrum, m., posterity.* Comp., *posterior, -ius, later.* Superl., *postrēmus, -a, -um, last.*

postquam or **post quam** [*post, later; quam, than*], *after, WHEN.*

postrēmus, -a, -um, superl. of **posterus*, q. v.

postulō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. *poscō*], *press earnestly, de-mand, claim, request.*

potēns, -entis [p. a. of verb

conn. w. *possum, be able*], *power-ful.*

potentātus, -ūs, m. [potent- (st. of *potēns*), *powerful* (through presumed verb stem)], *political power.*

potentia, -ae, f. [potent- (st. of *potēns*), *powerful*], *political power, influence.*

potestās, -ātis, f. [potent- (st. of *potēns*), *powerful*], *power; sovereignty, majesty; possibility.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus [*poti-* (st. of *potis*), *able*], *become master of, get possession of, obtain; reduce to subjection.*

potius, adv. [n. sing. comp. of *potis, able*], *rather.*

praebeō, -ēre, -ūī, -ītus [= *prae-hibeō*, fr. *prae*, *before*; *habeō, hold*], *offer, produce, FURNISH, give ground FOR.*

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus [*prae*, *before*; *cēdō, go*], *go be-fore, precede; surpass, excel.*

praeceps, -cipītis, adj. [*prae*, *before*; *caput, HEAD*], *HEAD FOREmost, HEADlong; steep, preci-pitous.*

prae-clipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*prae*, *before*; *capiō, take*], *take BEFOREhand; instruct, order, di-rect.*

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj. [*prae*, *exceedingly*; *clārus, illustrious*], *very illustrious, illustrious, glori-ous.*

prāēda, -ae, f. [conn. w. *pre-hendō, seize*], *booty.*

prae-dicō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus [*prae*, *before*, and so *publicly*; *dicō, de-clare*], *proclaim, declare, maintain, avow.*

prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [*prae*, *before*; *faciō, make, put*], *appoint over, place in command.*

prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [*prae*, *forward*; *mittō, send*], *send FORWARD, send in advance.*

praemium, -ii, n. [= **praeimium*, fr. *prae-ēm-*, *take before (oth-ers)*], *(what one receives more*

than or in preference to others, and so) *reward*; *privilege*.

prae*scriptum*, -i, N. [n. perf. part. of *praescribō*, *prescribe*], *dictate, order*.

prae*situm*, -ii, N. [prae-*sed-*, SIT BEFORE], (sitting before for protection, and so) *defence, protection, aid, support; guard, garrison*.

prae*stō*, -āre, -iī, -ātus (once), -itus (once) [prae, BEFORE; stō, STAND], (intr. w. dat. pers.) *excel, surpass*; (impers.) *praestat, it is better*; (tr.) *perform; exhibit, display*.

prae*stō*, adv. [superl. fm. conn. w. *prae, before*], (in the foremost place, and so) *at hand*.

prae*sum*, -esse, -fui [prae, BEFORE; sum, be], *BE at the head of, have charge or command of, BE invested with, preside over*.

praeter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. form of *prae, before*], *beyond; besides; except*.

praeterēā, adv. [praeter, *besides*; acc. pl. n. ea (orig. eā), *these things*; cf. *anteā*], *besides, moreover, too*.

praeter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus [praeter, beyond, by; mittō, let go], *let pass, omit, leave*.

praeteritūs, -a, -um [p. a. of *praetereō*, go by], *past*.

praetor, -ōris, M. [= **praeitor*, fr. *prae-vi*, go BEFORE], (one who goes before, and so) *leader; praetor* (Roman magistrate who administered justice).

precēs, -um, F. (usu. pl.), *treasures, prayers*.

prēndō = **prehendō**, -ere, -hendi, -hēnsus, *grasp*.

premō, -ere, *pressī*, *pressus*, *press hard, beset, weigh down, burden, overpower, distress*.

pre*mium*, -iī, N., *price*.

**prex*, **precis*, F., see *precēs*.

pridiē, adv. [pri- = *prae* (loc.)],

before; loc. or abl. form of diēs, day], the day before.

primus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of prior, q. v.

prin*ceps*, -cipis, adj. [primo- (st. of *primus*), FIRST; *take*], (taking the first place, and so) *foremost, chief; subst., foremost man, leader, head*.

principātūs, -ūs, M. [princip- (st. of *princeps*), *foremost* (through presumed verb st.)], (being foremost, and so) *foremost place, supremacy presidency*.

principiūm, -ii, N. [princip- (st. of *princeps*), *foremost*], *beginning*.

prior, prius, adj. [comp. of st. conn. w. *prae* and *prō*], *former*. Superl., **primus**, -a, -um, *FIRST, foremost*; (in agreement with subst., often) *first part of, in primis, especially, particularly*; adv., *primum, first*.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj. [pris- for priōs- (st. of *prior*), *former*], *belonging to former times, former, earlier, ancient, pristine*.

prius quam or **priusquam**, adv. [*prius, sooner; quam, than*], *before, until*.

privātūs, -a, -um [p. a. of *privō*, *deprive*], *private; subst., private individual*.

prō, prep. w. abl., *in front of, before; in behalf of, for; in view of, considering; in the light of, as; in return for*.

probītās, -ātis, F. [probo- (st. of *probus*), *upright, good*], *uprightness, probity*.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [probo- (st. of *probus*), *good*], *esteem good, approve; recommend, make satisfactory or acceptable*.

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [prō, before; cēdō, go], *go forward, advance, proceed*.

Procillus, -i, M., *Gaius Valerius Procillus* (a Gaul much trusted by Caesar).

prō-cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō,

in behalf of, FOR; cūmō, take care], attend to, look after, conduct, superintend.

prō-currō, -ere, -currī and -cu-curri, -cursum [prō, FORWARD; currō, run], *run FORWARD.*

prōditiō, -ōnis, f. [prō-ūda, give up, betray], *betrayal, treachery, treason.*

prōditor, -ōris, m. [prō-ūda, give up, betray], *betrayer, traitor.*

prō-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus [prō, FORTH; dō, give, put], *give or put FORTH, make known, publish; give up, betray; hand down (as by tradition); memoriae prōditum est, the story runs (lit. it has been handed down to memory).*

proellor, -ārī, -ātus [proelio-(st. of proelium), battle], *engage in battle, fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, fighting.*

profectō, -ōnis, f. [prō (w. vowel shortened)-ūfac-, make off], *(making off, and so) setting out, departure.*

profectō, adv. [prō (w. vowel shortened), FOR; factō (abl. of factum), *accomplished fact*], *assuredly.*

proficisciō, -ī, -fectus [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH, off; *faciscor (inceptive of faciō), begin to make], *(begin to make off, and so) set out, depart, proceed; proficisci in w. acc., set out for, depart to join.*

pro-fiteor, -ērī, -fessus [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH, openly; fateor, acknowledge], *declare one's self, give in one's name, volunteer.*

pro-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH; fugiō, flee], *flee FORTH, flee, run away.*

prō-gnātus, -a, -um, adj. [prō, FORTH, from; (g)nātus, born, perf. part. of nāscor], *born from, born, descended.*

pro-hibeō, -ere, -ui, -itus [prō (w. vowel shortened), FORTH, off; habeō, hold], *keep off, exclude, cut*

off, restrain, prevent, impede; prohibit; defend.

prō-iciō (pronounced: prō-jiciō), -ere, -jēcī, -jectus [prō, FORTH, off; jaciō, cast], *cast off.*

prō-latō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, FORWARD; *latō (intens. fr. st. of latus, perf. part. of ferō), carry], *(carry forward, and so) defer, postpone.*

prō-moveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtus [prō, FORWARD; moveō, move], *move FORWARD.*

prope, adv. and prep. w. acc., near.

prōpēnsus, -a, -um [p. a. of propendeō, hang FORWARD], *inclined, disposed.*

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. prope, near], *near; substs.: propinquus, -ī, m., relative, kinsman; propinqua, -ae, f., female relative, kinswoman.*

proplor, -ius, adj. [comp. of st. contained in prope, near], *nearer. Superl., proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next, neighboring; proximā nocte, last NIGHT.*

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [prō, FORTH; pōnō, put, set], *set FORTH, display; make known, declare.*

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own, peculiar to one's self, private, personal.*

propter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [comp. form of prope, near; cf. inter and praeter], *close to; owing to, on account of.*

prō-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, in front; pūgnō, fight], *rush out to fight, make a sortie.*

prō-pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, FORTH, off; pulsō, drive], *ward off, repel, avert.*

prō-riplō, -ere, -ui [prō, FORTH; rapiō, seize, drag], *drag FORTH; w. sē, rush FORTH.*

prō-videō, -ere, -vīdī, -vīsus [prō, FORWARD; videō, see], *provide, have in view.*

prōvinciā, -ae, f., *province.*

proximitās, -ātis, f. [proximo- (st. of proximus), *next*], *nearness; relationship*.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of propior, q. v.

proximē, adv. [abl. fm. of proximus, *nearest*], *last*.

prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdent- (st. of prūdēns), *sagacious*], *sagacity, practical wisdom, prudence, skill*.

Ptolomaeus, see Ceraunus.

pūblicē, adv. [abl. fm. of pūblicus, *belonging to the state*, *in behalf of the state, from a public point of view, as a measure of state policy*].

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [= *pōpūlicus, fr. populo- (st. of populus), *people*], *belonging to the people or state, public, common*; **rēs pūblica**, *common weal; commonwealth; in pūblicō, in public*.

pudet, -ēre, puduit or puditum est, *it shames; mē pudet, I am ashamed*.

pudicitia, -ae, f. [pudico- (st. of pudicus), *modest*], *modesty; chastity*.

pudor, -ōris, m. [base pud- (in pudet), *shame*], *sense of shame, modesty*.

puella, -ae, f. [= *puerula (-u- disappeared and -r- was assimilated to -i-) dim. fr. puer- (st. of puer) *child*], *female child, girl, little girl*.

puer, -erī, m., *child; boy*.

puerilis, -e, adj. [puero- (st. of puer), *child, boy*], *boyish, youthful*.

pueritia, -ae, f. [puero- (st. of puer), *child*], *childhood, boyhood*.

pūgna, -ae, f., *fight*.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugnā- (st. of pūgna), *fight*], *fight*.

pulcher, -chra, -chrūm, adj., *beautiful; honorable, glorious*.

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust*.

pungō, -ere, pupugī, punctus [pug-, *thrust*], *prick, sting; disquiet*.

pūniō, -ire, -ivī or -ii, -itus [old form, poeniō, fr. poenā- (st. of

quam ob rem

poena), punishment, inflict punishment on, punish.

puppis, -is, f., *stern*.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [= *pūrigō, fr. pūro- (st. of pūrus), *clean; vag-*, *drive, make (through presumed adj. st.)*], *make clean, cleanse, purge; free from suspicion, exculpate*.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [puto- (st. of putus), *cleansed*], *cleanse; (of trees) prune; (of accounts) clear up, settle; reckon; think, suppose*.

Q.

Q., abbr. of **Quintus**, -ī, m., *Quintus* (Roman praenōmen or first name).

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj. [quadrā-, conn. w. quattuor, FOUR; -gin- represents (de)cem, TEN], *FOORTY*.

quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [fr. st. of quadrīnī, distr. num. adj., FOUR; -gentī, conn. w. centum, HUNDRED], *FOUR HUNDRED*.

quaerō, -ere, -sīvī or -sīi, -sītūs, *seek, search, strive to obtain; acquire; ask, ask for, seek to learn, inquire, make inquiry, inquire for*.

quaestīō, -ōnis, f. [base quaes- (in quaerō, orig. quaesō), *inquire*], *inquiring; investigation; examination by torture*.

quaestus, -ūs, m. [base quaes- (in quaerō, orig. quaesō), *acquiring, acquisition; gain*].

quālis, -e, interrog. and rel. adj. [pron. st. quo- seen in forms of quis and qui], 1. interrog., of *WHAT sort*; 2. rel., of *which sort, as*.

quam, interrog. and rel. adv., *HOW*; (used to strengthen superlatives) **quam māximus**, *as great as possible, the greatest possible*; **quam lātissimē**, *as extensively as possible; (in comparisons) as, than*.

quam ob rem or quamobrem, interrog. and rel. adv., *wherefore, for which or WHAT reason*.

quamquam, conj. [quam, how; quam, how], (however, and so) though, although; and yet.

quamvis, adv. and conj. [quam, how, as; vis (volō), you wish], as you will; however, however much, though, although, though ever so.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj. [pron. st. quo- seen in forms of quis and quī], 1. interrog., HOW great, HOW much; quanti (gen. of indef. value), for HOW much. 2. rel. (correlating with tantus) as; (w. tantus omitted) as much as; quantō . . . tanto, by HOW much . . . by so much, the . . . THE.

quārē, interrog. and rel. adv. [abl. of quae rēs], WHY, WHEREFORE.

quartus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR], FOURTH.

quasi, adv. [quam, as; sī, if], as if.

quaternī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR], FOUR [from] each.

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., FOUR.

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj. [quattuor, FOUR; decem, TEN], FOURTEEN.

-que, conj., and.

quem ad modum or quemadmodum, interrog. and rel. adv., in what or which way.

queror, -i, questus, complain.

qui, quae, quod, interrog., rel., and indef. pron., 1. interrog. (used adj.) WHICH, WHAT. 2. rel., WHO, WHICH, WHAT, THAT; (w. aut. omitted) HE WHO, those WHO, any WHO, etc.; (at the beginning of a sentence, often) this, these, etc.; (= ut is, etc.) in order that HE, that HE, etc.; quō . . . eō, by what . . . by that, the . . . the; eō . . . quō, by that . . . by which, the . . . the. 3. (after sī and nē), indef., any.

quicunque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. [qui,

rel. pron.; -cumque, indef. suff.], whoever, WHATEVER; any WHATEVER.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam and (subst.) quiddam, indef. pron. [quī, rel. pron.; -dam, pron. suff.], a, a certain, some one.

quidem, adv., indeed; nē . . . quidem (with emphatic word or words between nē and quidem), Not even.

quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus (p. a.), become quiet, go to rest, refrain from action.

quiētus, -a, -um [p. a. of quiēscō, be quiet], quiet, at rest.

quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet and (subst.) quidlibet, indef. rel. pron. [quī, rel. pron.; libet, it is pleasing], any you will, any WHATEVER.

quīn, conj. [quī, abl. fm. of rel. pron. quī; nē, Not], WHO . . . NOT, that, but that, so that Not, from or without (w. part.).

quindecim, indecl. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE; decem, TEN], FIFTEEN.

quini, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE], FIVE apiece.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj. [quīnquā, conn. w. quīnque, FIVE; -gin- represents (de)cem, TEN], FIFTY.

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., FIVE.

quīnquennium, -iī, N. [quīnquenni- (st. of quīnquennis), of FIVE years], a period of FIVE years.

quīntus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quīnque, FIVE], FIFTH.

Quirītēs, -iūm, m. [Curi- (st. of Curēs, town of the Sabines)], *Quirites* (i.e., inhabitants) of Cures. After the union of the Sabines with the Romans, the name *Quirītēs* was applied to the combined people when acting in a civil capacity; the name *Rōmānī*, on the other hand, was applied to them when acting in a military capacity); fellow citizens.

quis, quid, interrog. and indef. pron., 1. interrog., WHO, WHAT; (occasionally used adj.) WHAT; neut. sing. acc. **quid** (used adv.), WHY. 2. (after sī and nē) indef., any one, any thing; (occasionally used adj.) any; si quid, if anything, if at all.

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam and (subst.) quidpiam or quippiam, indef. pron., any one, any.

quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (pl. and fem. sing. wanting), indef. pron. (used when a neg. is expressed or implied), any one, any thing.

quisque, quaeque, quodque and (subst.) quicque or quidque, indef. pron., every one, each one, every, each; nobilissimus quisque, all the nobility; antiquissimum quodque tempus, priority (of occupation) in each instance.

quivis, quaevīs, quodvīs and (subst.) quidvīs, indef. pron. [qui, rel. pron.; vīs (volō), you wish], any you please, any WHAT-ever; any one you please, any one WHATEver.

quō, adv. [case fm. of pron. st. quo-], WHITHER; (at the beginning of a sentence, often) thither, there.

quō, conj. [neut. abl. of rel. pron. qui] (= ut eō, usu. w. comp.), that thereby, in order that, that.

quoad, adv. [quō (w. vowel shortened), whither; ad, to], (how long, and so) as long as; until.

quod, conj. [neut. acc. of rel. pron. qui], because, that.

quōminus, conj. [quō, neut. abl. of rel. pron. qui; minus, less, not], that thereby the less, so that not, from (w. part.).

quoniam, conj. [quom = cum, since; jam, now], seeing that.

quot, indecl. interrog. and rel. adj., HOW many; as.

quot annis or **quotannis**

[quot, how many, as many as; annīs, abl. pl. of annus, year], (on as many years as there are, and so) every year, annually.

quotiēns, adv. [quot, how many], HOW often, HOW many times; as often as.

R.

ratiō, -ōnis, f., account, computation; list, register; business matter, transaction; manner, way, method, procedure.

ratīs, -is, f., float, raft.

Raurici, -ōrum, m., the Raurici (tribe in Celtic Gaul, neighbors of the Helvetians).

recēns, -ēntis, adj., recent.

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re(d)-, again, back; capiō, take], take back; receive; sē recipere, to take back one's self, return, flee for refuge, recover; sē inde recipere, to come off.

re-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, intensive; citō, recite], recite.

re-cōgnoscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [re(d)-, again; cōgnōscō, become acquainted with], recall to mind, review.

recordor, -ārī, -ātus [re(d)-, again; cord- (st. of cor), HEART (through presumed adj. st.)], (take to heart, and so) think over, reflect on, review, recall.

rēctē, adv. [abl. fm. of rēctus, right], RIGHTLY.

rēctus, -a, -um [p. a. of regō], right, fitting.

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, against; causa, objection (through denom. vb. *causō; cf. causor)], make objection against, refuse; recūsāre dē, to make objection to, to object to.

red-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus [red-back; dō, give], give back, return, restore; accord, award, grant, pay.

red-eō, -ire, -ī, -itum [red-back; eō, go], go or come back, return; come for settlement, come in the last resort.

red-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [red-, back; agō, drive, bring], bring back, reduce.

red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [red-, back; emō, buy], buy back, redeem; contract for, farm; purchase, procure.

red-integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [red-, again; integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [re(d)-, back; dūcō, lead], lead or bring back.

re-ferciō, -ire, -sī, -tus [re(d)-, intens.; farciō, stuff, cram], fill full, crowd.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus [re(d)-, back; ferō, BEAR], BEAR, carry or bring back, report; re-ferre ad senātūm, to lay a matter before the senate.

rē fert or **rēfert**, -ferre, -tulit, it matters, it is of importance.

re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī [re(d)-, back; fugiō, flee], flee back, retreat.

rēgālīs, -e, adj. [rēg-(st. of rēx), king], pertaining to a king, royal.

regiō, -ōnis, f. [vreg-, guide, direct], direction; boundary-line; territory, region; province, district.

rēglus, -a, -um, adj. [rēg- (st. of rēx), king], pertaining to a king, royal, regal.

rēgnō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [rēgnō- (st. of rēgnūm), sovereignty], exercise sovereignty, reign.

rēgnūm, -ī, n. [vreg-, guide, direct], kingdom; sovereignty, royal power.

regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus [vreg-, guide, direct], direct; rule, preside over.

re-laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, intens.; laxō, loosen], relax, unbend.

religiō, -ōnis, f. [re(d)-leg-, go over again, regard attentively], (regard for the gods, and so) religion; superstition, sacredness, sanctity; in pl., religious matters, religious rites, matters pertaining to the worship of the gods.

re-linquo, -ere, -liquī, -lictus [re(d)-, back, behind; linquō, leave], leave behind, leave.

reliquo, -a, -um, adj. [re-vliqu-, leave behind], remaining, other, rest of; subst., the rest.

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī [re(d)-, back, behind; maneō, stay], stay behind, remain.

remedium, -ī, n., remedy, means of defence.

Rēmi, -ōrum, m., the **Remi** (tribe in Belgic Gaul on the Marne).

rēmiglūm, -ī, n. [rēmig- (st. of rēmex), rower], rowing; oars; rowers.

re-miniscor, -ī [re(d)-, again; *miniscor, call to MIND], recall to mind.

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [re(d)-, back; mittō, send, let go], send or let go back; relax, enfeeble.

re-moveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtus [re(d)-, back, away; moveō, move], remove, dismiss.

re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus [re(d)-, back, in return; mūneror, bestow], recompense.

Rēmus, -ī, m., one of the **Remi** (see **Rēmi**), a Reman.

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, again; novō, make NEW], renew.

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, back; nūntiō, bring word], bring back word, report.

re-pellō, -ere, reppuli, repulsus [re(d)-, back; pellō, drive], drive back.

repente, adv. [case fm. of repēns, sudden], suddenly.

repentinus, -a, -um [repent- (st. of repēns), sudden], sudden.

re-periō, -ire, repperī, repertus [re(d)-, again; pariō, procure], find, find out (by making inquiry) learn, ascertain, discover; invent, devise.

re-petō, -ere, -īvī or -ī, -ītus [re(d)-, again; petō, demand], demand back, demand; lay claim to.

re-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus [re(d)-, back; prehendō, *grasp, hold*], *hold back, check; dis-approve, reprehend*.

re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [re(d)-, back; premō, *press*], *check, restrain, repress*.

repudiō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [repudio- (st. of repudium), *rejection*], *reject*.

re-pūgnō, -are, -āvī, -ātum [re(d)-, back, *against*; pūgnō, *fight*], *oppose, resist*.

re-quirō, -ere, -sīvī or -sīī, -sītus [re(d)-, *again*; quaerō, *seek*], *seek after, ask for, be in want of*.

rēs, gen. rēī (rēl, rē), F., *thing, affair, matter, subject, object, fact, circumstance, condition, movement, business, enterprise, it; rēs militāris, the military art; rēs frūmentaria, corn, grain, provisions; rēs pūblica: common weal, public welfare; civil affairs, government; commonwealth, state; summa rēs pūblica, the highest interests of the commonwealth; tōta rēs pūblica, complete control of public affairs; rēs familiāris, private resources, patrimony, property; in turbidis rēbus, in distressed circumstances; rēs dē, proposition to.*

re-sistō, -ere, -stītī [re(d)-, back, *against*; sistō, *stand*], *resist*.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re(d)-, *in return*; spondeō, *promise*], (*orig. present in return*), *answer, make answer, say or tell in reply*.

respōnsum, -ī, N. [*neut. perf. part. of respondeō, answer*], *answer*.

re-stituō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtus [re(d)-, *again*; statuō, *set up*], *restore*.

re-tineō, -ere, -ūī, -tentus [re(d)-, back; teneō, *hold*], *hold fast, retain, detain, keep*.

re-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -volus or -vulsus [re(d)-, back, *away*; vellō, *pluck, pull*], *pull away, tear away*.

reversiō, -ōnis, F. [re(d)-vert, *turn back*], *return*.

re-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus

[re(d)-, *back*; vertō, *turn*], *turn back; return*.

re-vertor, -ī, -versus [re(d)-, back; *vertor, *turn*], *turn back; return*.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re(d)-, back; vocō, *call*], *recall, restore*.

rēx, rēgis, M. [*vrēg-*, *guide, direct*], *king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *Rhine* (river separating Gaul from Germany).

Rhodanus, -ī, M., *Rhone* (river in Gaul).

ripa, -ae, F., *bank of a river*.

rōbur, -oris, N., *oak*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask*.

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome* (city on the Tiber in Italy).

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [*Rōmā*- (st. of Rōma), *Rome*], *belonging to Rome* (see Rōma), *Roman*; subst., *Rōmāna*, -ae, F., *Roman woman*.

Rōmāni, -ōrum, M., *Romans* (inhabitants of Rome; see Rōma).

rota, -ae, F., *wheel*.

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj. [*vrub-*, REDDEN], *RED*.

Rūfus, -ī, M., *Lucius Vibullius Rufus* (adherent of Pompey).

ruīna, -ae, F. [*conn. w. ruō, fall violently*], *downfall, crash*.

rūmor, -ōris, M., (*orig.*, noise, murmur, and so) *hearsay, rumor, report*.

rūpēs, -is, F. [*vrūp-*, *break*], *(broken, precipitous) rock*.

rūrsus, adv. [= revorsus, perf. part. of revertō, *turn back*], *again*.

rūs, rūris, N., *the country* (opp. the city).

S.

Sabis, -is, M., *the Sabis* (mod. Sambre, river in Belgic Gaul).

Saburra, -ae, M., *Saburra* (lieutenant of Juba, king of Numidia).

sacrificium, -ī, N. [*sacrifico*- (st. of sacrificus), *sacrificial*], *sacrifice*.

sacrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sacro*- (st. of sacer), *sacred*], *declare sacred*.

saepe, adv. [neut. acc. of *sae-pis, crowded, frequent; conn. w. saepēs, hedge], often.

saepe numerō or **saepenumero** [saepe, often; numerō, in number], oftentimes, again and again. **saepēs**, -is, f. [conn. w. saepe, q. v.], hedge, fence.

saeviō, -ire, -īi, -itum [saevo-(st. of saevus), fierce], be fierce, rage. **sagittārius**, -īi, m. [adj. used subst., fr. sagittā (st. of sagitta), arrow], (one having to do with arrows, and so) archer, Bowman.

salūs, -ūtis, f. [conn. w. salvus, safe], safety.

salūtaris, -e, adj. [salūt- (st. of salūs), safety], pertaining to safety, salutary.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salūt- (st. of salūs), safety], wish safety to, greet, pay one's respects to, salute.

salvus, -a, -um, adj. [$\sqrt{\text{sal}}$ - (akin to $\sqrt{\text{ser}}$ - in servus), protect, support], sound, unimpaired, safe, unharmed, preserved.

sanciō, -ire, sanxi, sānctus (sancitus, once) [conn. w. sacer, sacred], render sacred; (of laws) establish, ordain, enact.

sānctus, -a, -um [p. a. of sanctiō, q. v.], sacred, inviolable.

sānē, adv. [abl. fm. of sānus, sound], indeed, by all means, for aught I care, if you will.

sanguis, -inis, m., blood (flowing in the body).

Santoni, -ōrum, m., the Santoni (tribe in Celtic Gaul on the northern bank of the Garonne).

sapiēns, -entis, p. a. (of sapiō, taste; discern) discerning, wise.

Sardinia, -ae, f., **Sardinia** (island in the Mediterranean, west of Italy).

Sardiniēnsis, -e, adj. [Sardiniā- (st. of Sardinia), **Sardinia**], of Sardinia, Sardinian (see Sardinia).

saermenata, -ōrum, n. (usu. pl.) [$\sqrt{\text{sarp}}$ -, lop, prune], (what is lopped, and so) light branches.

sarmenatum, see **sarmenta**.

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently; very.

satis faciō or **satisfaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum [satis, enough; faciō, do], give satisfaction, make reparation.

saxum, -ī, n., stone (large and rough).

Scaevola, -ae, m., *Quintus Mucius Scaevola* (augur and jurist of Cicero's time; he was a son-in-law of Laelius).

scelerātus, -a, -um [perf. part. of scelerō, pollute], polluted; accursed.

scelus, -eris, n., crime.

scientia, -ae, f. [scient- (st. of sciēns), knowing], knowledge, skill.

scīō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus, know.

Scipiō, -ōnis, m., 1. *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major* (conqueror of Hannibal at Zama 202 B.C.). 2. *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Minor* (destroyer of Carthage 146 B.C.).

scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus [$\sqrt{\text{scrib}}$ -, dig, GRAVE], (cut with a pointed instrument, grave, and so) write.

scūtum, -ī, n. [$\sqrt{\text{scū}}$ -, cover], an oblong shield (the scūtum of the Roman legionaries was made of wood covered with leather; it was semi-cylindrical in shape, and was $4\frac{1}{2}$ ft. long by $2\frac{1}{2}$ ft. broad); see Fig. 8.



Fig. 8. Shield (scūtum) of the Roman infantry soldier, from the column of Trajan. The decoration represents a thun-

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [= *sequendus, derbot]. gerundive of sequor, follow], (following, and so) second; favorable.

sed, conj., *but*.

sedeō, -ere, **sēdī**, **sēssum**, **sit**.

sēdēs, -is, f. [**\vsēd-**, **sit**; cf. **se-deō**], **SEAT**: *habitation, abode*.

Segūslāvi, -ōrum, m., *the Seguslāvi* (tribe in Celtic Gaul on the Rhone).

sē-jungō, -ere, **jūnxī**, **jūnctus** [sē(d)-, *apart*; **jungō**, *join*], **join, separate, sever**.

Seleucus, -ī, m., *Seleucus* (one of the ablest generals of Alexander the Great; murdered by Ptolemy Ceraunus 280 B.C.).

sēmen, -inis, n. [**\vsē-**, *sow*], (that which is sown, and so) **SEED**; *origin, source*.

sēmentis, -is, f. [**sēmen**, **SEED**], *sowing*.

sēminārium, -īi, n. [adj. used subst., fr. **sēmin-** (st. of **sēmen**), **SEED**], (having to do with seed, and so) *nursery*.

semper, adv. [conn. w. Lat. **similis** and English **SAME**], *always*.

Semprōnia, -ae, f., *Sempronia* (wife of Decimus Junius Brutus; Sempronia was implicated in Catiline's conspiracy 63 B.C.).

senātor, -ōris, m. [conn. w. **senex** and **senātus**], *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m. [conn. w. **senex**, *elder*], *council of elders, senate*.

senātūs cōnsultum or **senātūscōnsultum**, -ī, n., *decree of the senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [**senec-** (st. of **senex**), *old*], *old age*.

senex, **senis**, adj., *old, aged*; subst., *old man or woman*.

senillis, -e, adj. [**sen-** (st. of **senex**), *old person*], *belonging to an old person, senile*.

Senonēs or **Sēnōnēs**, -um, m., *the Senones* (tribe in Celtic Gaul along the upper Seine).

sēnsus, -ūs, m. [**base sent-** (in **sentiō**), *become aware through the senses*], *sense-perception; sense*.

sententia, -ae, f. [conn. w. **sen-**

tiō, *think*], *opinion, view; vote; ad sententiam redire, to come back to the main question; in eam sententiam, to this effect, of this purport*.

sentiō, -ire, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, *perceive, be aware; think*.

septem, indecl. num. adj., **SEVEN**.

septentrīō, -ōnis, m.; also pl., **septentrīōnēs**, -um, m. [**septem**, **SEVEN**; **triōnēs**, *ploughing oxen*], *the SEVEN prominent stars in the constellation Ursa Major or the Great Bear; the north*.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [**\vsē-**, **SEVEN**], **SEVENTH**.

Sēquani, -ōrum, m., *the Sequani* (tribe in Celtic Gaul enclosed by the Saône, the Rhone, and Mt. Jura); sing., **Sēquanus**, -ī, m., *a Sequanian*.

sequor, -i, **secūtūs** [**\vsēqu-**, *follow*], *follow, pursue*.

sermō, -ōnis, m. [**\vsēr-**, *connect*], (*connected discourse, and so*) *conversation, intercourse*.

servillis, -e, adj. [**servo-** (st. of **servus**), *slave*], *pertaining to a slave, servile*.

serviō, -ire, -īvī and -īi, -ītūm [**servo-** (st. of **servus**), *slave*], *be a slave, serve, submit to*.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [**servo-** (st. of **servus**), *slave*], *slavery, servitude; serfdom, vassalage*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [**servo-** (st. of **servus**), *protected*; see **servus**], *protect, preserve; keep, lay by*.

servus, -ī, m. [**\vsēr-** (akin to **\sal-** in **salvus**), *protect*], (*a captive in war, not killed, but saved alive, and so*) *slave*.

Sēstius, -īi, m., *Publius Sestius* (tribune of the people 57 B.C., and friend of Cicero).

sevērus, -a, -um, adj., **severe**.

sex, indecl. num. adj., **SIX**.

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj. [**sexā**, conn. w. **sex**, **SIX**; **-gin-** represents (de)cem, **TEN**], **SIXTY**.

Sextius, -ī, M., *Titus Sextius* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

sextus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [sex, SIX], SIXTH; **sextus decimus**, SIXTEENTH.

sī, conj., if; **sī quis**, if any one; **sī qui**, if any (see quis and qui).

sic, adv., in such a way, so, in this way, thus; as follows; to such a degree; **ut . . . sic**, as . . . so, although . . . yet.

sicut and **sicuti**, adv. [sīc, so; ut or utī, as], just as, as.

sīdūs, -eris, N., group of stars, constellation; star.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [sīgnific-(st. of *signifex), sign-making], show by signs, show, make evident.

signūm, -ī, N., sign, signal; in pl., military standards; **signa ferre**, to advance against the enemy; **conversa signa inferre**, to face about and advance Against the enemy; **infestis signis cōsistere**, to come to a halt and assume the defensive; see Fig. 9.

silva, -ae, F., wood, forest.

silvestris, -e, adj. [conn. w. *silva*, wood], overgrown with wood, wooded.

similis, -e, adj. [cognate w. SAME], like.

simul, adv. [neut. fm. of similis, like], at the SAME time; simul atque, as soon as.

simulācrum, -ī, N. [simulā- (st. of simulō), imitate], image.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [fr. st. of similis, like, seen in adv. simul], imitate; pretend.

sīn, conj. [sī, if; nē, not], if however, but if.



Fig. 9.

Military standards, from a medal. The middle figure represents the eagle, the standard of the legion; the two side figures represent the standards of cohorts.

sine, prep. w. abl. [sī, if, in that case; nē, Not], without.

singuli, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., one by one, single, individual, separate, several; translated adv., singly, individually; in annōs singulōs, each or every year.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left.

sī quidem or **sīquidem**, conj. [sī, if; quidem, indeed], since indeed.

sitis, -is, F., thirst.

sitiō, -īre, -īvī or -īlī [siti- (st. of sitis), thirst], thirst.

situs, -ūs, M. [vsi-, put], (putting or placing, and so) position, situation.

socer, -erī, M., father-in-law.

socius, -ī, M. [adj. used subst., fr. vso-, follow; conn. w. sequor], associate, confederate, ally.

Sōcratēs, -a, -um, adj. [borrowed from the Greek], belonging to **Socrates** (celebrated Athenian philosopher; lived 468-399 B.C.); subst., disciple of Socrates.

sodālis, -is, C., mate, comrade, intimate.

sōl, sōlis, M., sun.

soleō, -ēre, -ētūs, be accustomed, be wont.

sōlitūdō, -inis, F. [sōlo- (st. of sōlus), alone], solitude; deserted place or tract, desert, wilderness.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [sollicito- (st. of sollicitus), agitated], stir up, agitate, urge, stimulate, incite; approach with corrupt overtures, corruptly solicit.

Solōn (**Solō**), -ōnis, M., Solon (famous Athenian law-giver; his public career belongs to the first half of the sixth century B.C.).

solum, -i, N., ground, soil.

sōlum, adv. [neut. of sōlus, alone], only; **nōn sōlum**, Not only.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj. alone, only, sole.

sōmnus, -ī, M. [for *sōpnus, fr. vso-, sleep], sleep.

sōmniūm, -īlī, N. [adj. used subst., fr. somno- (st. of sōmnus),

sleep], (resulting from sleep, and so) dream.

spatium, -ī, N. [*\vspa-, SPAN*, stretch out], *space; distance; time enough, time; interval, division, period.*

speciēs, gen. -ē, F. [*\spec-, SPY*], *seeing; appearance; show.*

spectāculum, -ī, N. [*spectā-* (st. of spectō), *look at*], *spectacle, sight.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of speciō, formed as if from a perf. part. *spectus], *look at; face, extend; regard, heed.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. spēs, hope], *hope, look for.*

spēs, gen. -ēī (-ēī), F., *hope; prospect; hopefulness; in spēm venire, to cherish or entertain hope.*

spiritūs, -ūs, M. [conn. w. spīrō, breathe], *breath.*

spolium, -ī, N., usu. in pl., *spolia, -ōrum, N., spoils.*

sponte, abl. F. (only in gen. [*spontis*] and abl. sing.), *impulse; sponte* is regularly accompanied by a poss. pron.; as, *tuā sponte, of your own free will.*

statim, adv. [acc. fm. of st. *stati-*, fr. *\sta-, STAND*], *on the spot, forthwith.*

statiō, -ōnis, F. [*\sta-, STAND*], *standing; station, post; in statiōne, on guard.*

Stator, -ōris, M. [*\sta- (causative), make STAND*], *STAYER, supporter* (epithet of Jupiter).

statuō, -ere, -ūi, -ūtus [*statu-* (st. of *status*), *standing, position*], *put in position, set up, station; decide, determine, resolve.*

statūra, -ae, F. [*\sta-, STAND*], *(standing, and so) stature.*

stipendium, -ī, N. [= *stipendium, fr. *stipi-* (st. of *stips), *contribution; base pend-* (in *pendo*, *pay*), *(payment of a contribution, and so) tribute, tribute money.*

stirps, -is, F., *stock, root; origin, source.*

stō, -āre, *stetī* [*\sta-, STAND*], *stand; abide; dēcrētō stāre, acquiesce in a decision.*

strepitus, -ūs, M. [base *strep-* (in *strepō*), *make a noise*], *noise, din.*

studeō, -ēre, -ūi, *be eager for, strive earnestly for, apply one's self to, devote special attention to, cultivate; exercise partiality.*

studīosus, -a, -um, adj. [studio- (st. of *studium*), *zeal*], *full of zeal, zealous, earnest; eager [for], assiduous [in], fond [of].*

studium, -ī, N. [base *stud-* (in *studeō*), *be eager*], *eagerness, earnest desire, zeal, enthusiasm; devotion, attachment; pursuit. In pl., zealous efforts; studies, pursuits.*

suāsor, -ōris [*\suād-, make SWEET, urge, advise*], *(one who advises, and so) adviser; suāsor esse, to advise.*

sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under; sub occasum, towards the setting.*

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [*sub, from under; dūcō, draw*], *withdrawn.*

sub-eō, -īre, -īvī or -īī, *subitus* [*sub, under; eō, go*], *go under, go close to, approach; come stealthily; (w. acc.) undergo, submit to.*

sub-īgo, -ere, -ēgi, -āctus [*sub, under; īgō, drive, force*], *constraint, impel, prompt.*

subitō, adv. [n. abl. of *subitus, sudden*], *suddenly.*

subitus, -a, -um [p. a. of *subeō*, *come stealthily*], *sudden.*

sublātus, -a, -um, perf. part., *raised* (see *tollō*).

submōtus, -a, -um [perf. part. of *submoveō, remove, drive back*], *driven back; subst., submōti, those driven back.*

sub-sequor, -ī, -cūtus [*sub, close upon; sequor, follow*], *follow close upon, follow, succeed.*

subsidiūm, -ī, N. [*sub-\vsed-, sit in support of*], *(sitting in re-*

serve for support, and so) *support, aid, relief.*

sub-sistō, -ere, -stiti [sub, under; *sistō, STAND STILL*], *come to a halt, halt; maintain one's ground, withstand.*

sub-trahō, -ere, -xi, -ctus [sub, from under; *trahō, draw*], *withdraw, keep out of reach.*

sub-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum [sub, under, to the support of; *veniō, COME*], *COME to the support of.*

suc-cēdō, -ere, -cēsī, -cēssum [sub, under, close upon; *cēdō, go*], *follow close upon, succeed.*

suc-cendo, -ere, -cēndī, -cēnsus [sub, from below; **cendō*(*canđ-*), set fire], *set fire to (from below).*

Suebī, -ōrum, M., *the Suebi or Swabians* (collective name of several German tribes; their king at the time of Caesar's first campaign in Gaul was Ario-vistus).

Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., *pertaining to the Suebi, Swabian.*

Suessiōnēs, -um, M., *the Suessi-ones* (tribe in Belgic Gaul).

suffrāgiūm, -ī, N. [sub-*vfrag-*, BREAK somewhat or partially], *(fragment used for voting, and so) voting tablet; vote, suffrage.*

sūi, gen. (nom. wanting), reflex. pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves; *inter sē*, see inter.

Sulla, -ae, M., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla* (famous Roman dictator 82-79 B.C.).

sum, esse, fuī [sum, vs, be; esse, ves, be; fuī, vfuī, grow, become], *BE (cognate w. vfuī), exist, prevail, consist, live, remain.*

summa, -ae, F. [fem. of *summus* (sc. rēs), highest], *the main thing, sum; supreme control or direction; in summā, IN general.*

summōtus, see *submōtus*.

summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of *superus*, q. v.

sūmō, -ere, *sūmpsi*, *sūmptus* [sub, from under, UP; emō, take], *take UP, take; assume, arrogant; sibi sūmere, to take UPON one'sself,*

to assume; supplicium sūmere dē, to exact punishment from, to inflict punishment on.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [*sūmptu-* (st. of *sūmpsus*), expense], *expensive, costly.*

sūmptus, -ūs, M. [*sūm-* for sub-*Vem*, take UP (for some purpose, and so) spend], *expense; in pl, extravagance.*

superbla, -ae, F. [superbo- (st. of *superbus*), proud], *pride, arrogance.*

superior, -ius, adj., comp. of *superus*, q. v.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [supero- (st. of *superus*), above] (be above, and so) *be left OVER, remain, survive; surpass, exceed; beat, defeat, OVERCOME, conquer, vanquish; vitā superāre, oulive.*

superstītiō, -ōnis, F. [super-sta-, STAND OVER], (standing over as in wonder, awe, etc., and so) *exaggerated fear of the gods, superstition.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī [super, OVER; sum, be], *BE left, remain.*

superus, -a, -um, adj. [conn. w. sub, from under, UP], *above. Comp., superior, -ius, higher, UPPER; (of time) preceding, former; superiōre nocte, NIGHT before last. Superl., summus, -a, -um, highest; greatest, chief; of the highest importance; supreme; extreme; summus mōns, the summit of the mountain; summus cruciātus, the severest punishment.*

sup-plex, -icis, adj. [sub, under; *vplec*, FOLD, bend], (kneeling, and so) *suppliant; translated adv., in supplication.*

supplicatiō, -ōnis, F. [supplicā- (st. of *supplicō*), kneel to, pray to], (kneeling to, praying to, and so) *public supplication; thanksgiving.*

supplicium, -ī, N. [supplic- (st. of *supplex*), *suppliant*], (humiliation, and so) *punishment; in pl, sacrifice.*

sup-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub, from below, UP to; portō, convey], *convey to a place, bring UP.*

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fem. of superus, above], 1. adv., *above*; (of time) *before, previously*. 2. prep., *before*.

suspicio, -ōnis, f. [conn. w. suspicō, look askance at], *suspicion; ground of suspicion; in suspicōnem venire, to be attended with suspicion, to be open to suspicion.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -ūi, -tentus [*subs, collateral fm. of sub, from below, UP; teneō, hold], *support, sustain; perform, discharge; rein in, check; withstand.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, its, their; subst. sui, his men.*

Syracūsaē, -ārum, f., *Syracuse* (city on the eastern coast of Sicily).

T.

T, abbr. of *Titus*, -i, m., *Titus*, (Roman praenomen or first name).

tabēscō, -ere, tābūi [inceptive fr. tābē- (st. of tābeō), melt], *begin to melt; pine away.*

tabula, -ae, f., *board, plank; writing tablet; tabula picta, painting.*

tabulātum, -i, n. [neut. of tabulatus, boarded], *flooring, story.*

taceō, -ēre, -ūi, -itus, *be silent; pass over in silence.*

taedet, -ēre, -duit or (rarely) -sum est, *it wearies; mē taedet, I am weary.*

talentum, -i, n., *talent* (sum of money equivalent in value to about \$1080).

tāllis, -e, adj. [pron. st. to-, THAT; cf. quālis], *of THAT kind, of such a kind, such.*

tam, adv., *so; nōn tam, not so, not so much.*

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet, still, however, notwithstanding.*

tametsi, conj. [*tamen, nevertheless; etsi, although*], *although.*

tandem, adv., *at length; (in exclam.) pray.*

tantulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. tanto- (st. of tantus), *so great*], *so small, so slight.*

tantummodo, adv. [tantum, *so much, so far, n. acc. of tantus; modo, only*], *only, merely.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj. [pron. st. to-, THAT; cf. quantus], *so great, so much, so strong a, so important, such (= so great); so foul, so heinous, of such enormity; quantus . . . tantus, HOW much . . . so much, and so as much . . . as; quantō . . . tantō, by HOW much . . . by so much, the . . . THE; est tanti, it is worth while.*

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardo- (st. of tardus), *slow*], *make slow, retard, delay, hinder.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, tardy.*

Tasgetius, -ii, m., *Tasgetius* (chief of the Carnutes in the time of Caesar).

taurus, -i, m. [for *staurus; cognate w. English STEER], *bull.*

Taurus, -i, m., *Taurus* (mountain range in Asia Minor).

tectum, -i, n. [n. perf. part. of tegō, *cover*], *roof; dwelling.*

tegō, -ēre, texi, *tectus* [Vteg., *cover*; cognate w. English THATCH and DECK], *cover.*

tēlum, -i, n., *javelin; weapon.*

temerārius, -a, -um, adj. [fr. st. contained in adv. temerē, rashly], *headstrong, rash, indiscreet.*

temporō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. tempus, (lit.) portion], *apportion duly; (conduct one's self with due proportion, and so) restrain, abstain; (w. dat.) restrain.*

tempestās, -ātis, f. [conn. w. tempus, time], *time; weather; storm.*

templum, -i, n. [prob. for *temulum, dim. fr. Vtem-, cut, through lost subst.], (orig. a space marked off by the augur's wand and consecrated, and so) *a consecrated place; temple.*

tempus, -oris, n. [*Vtem-*, *cut*], (lit., a section or portion, and so) a period of time, season, time.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tēnsus or tentus [*Vten-*, stretch], stretch, stretch out, extend.

tenebrae, -ārum, f., darkness. **teneō**, -ēre, -ui [*Vten-*, stretch], hold fast, hold, keep; occupy; detain; (with *quōminus*) restrain, prevent; (culpā) **tenēri**, to be controlled by, to be under the dominion of, to be subject to, to be chargeable with; enchain, hold spell-bound, paralyze; (of wind) **adversum tenēre**, to blow in the face of.

tentō or **temptō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. fr. tento- (st. of perf. part. of tendō, stretch)], attempt, try to effect, test.

tenus, prep. w. abl. (follows its word) [*Vten-*, stretch], as far as.

tergum, -ī, n., back.

ternī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [tri- (st. of trēs) THREE], THREE and THREE, in groups of THREE, THREE from each, THREE apiece, THREE each.

terra, -ae, f. [for *tersa, fr. vtors-, be dry; conn. w. Lat. torreō, parch, and cognate w. English THIRST], dry land, land, earth, ground; **terrā**, by land, on land; land, country; in pl., the earth (as made up of various lands).

terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [for *terseō, vters-, tremble], frighten, terrify, alarm.

terribilis, -e, adj. [conn. w. terreō, frighten], frightful, terrible.

terror, -ōris, m. [for *tensor, fr. vters-, tremble], fright, alarm, terror.

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [conn. w. trēs, THREE], THIRD.

testamentum, -ī, n. [testā- (st. of testor), bear witness], (what is acknowledged before witnesses, and so) will.

testis, -is, c., witness.

theātrum, -ī, n. [borrowed from the Greek], theatre.

Thēbae, -ārum, f., **Thebes** (most important city of Boeotia).

Thrasybūlus, -ī, m., **Thrasybulus** (distinguished Athenian general; freed Athens from the yoke of the thirty tyrants 403 B.C.).

Thūys, Thūynis, m., **Thujās** (prince in Paphlagonia).

Tigurinūs pāgus, -ī, m., **Tigurine district** (one of the four divisions of the Helvetian country; its inhabitants were called Tigurini).

timeō, -ēre, -ui, fear.

timor, -ōris, m. [*Vtim-*, choke, be breathless; conn. w. timeō], fear, alarm; cowardice.

Titūrlus, -īi, m., **Quintus Titurius Sabinus** (one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war).

Titus, -ī, m., **Titus** (Roman praenomen or first name).

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. tollō (*Vtol-*), raise], sustain.

tollō, -ēre, (sustuli), (sublātus) [*Vtol-*, lift, raise; perf. and perf. part. borrowed from sustollō], raise; remove, take away, break off; put an end to.

Tolōsa, -ae, f., **Tolosa** (mod. Toulouse, city in the Roman province of Gaul).

tormentum, -ī, n. [*Vtor(qu)-*, twist, hurl], (means of hurling, and so) engine for hurling missiles; instrument of torture; torture.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, all, entire, complete, throughout.

trā-dō, -ere, didī, -ditus [*trā(ns)*, over; dō, give], surrender, deliver; intrust, impart.

trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [*trā(ns)*, across; dūcō, lead], lead, convey or conduct across.

tragoedia, -ae, f. [borrowed from the Greek], tragedy.

trahō, -ere, traxī, tractus, draw, drag.

trā-iciō (pronounced: trājiciō)

-ere, -jēcī, -jectus [*trā(ns)*, *across*; *jaciō*, *throw*], *throw across, convey over.*

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., *tran-quill*, *undisturbed*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across*.

trāns-eō, -ire, -īvī or -īl, -itus [*trans*, *across*; *eō*, *go*], *go over or across, cross, pass over, pass; remove, migrate*.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātūs [*trans*, *over, across*; *ferō*, *Bear*], *bring over, transfer, transplant*.

trāns-fixō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [*trāns*, *through*; *figō*, *fix, thrust*], *pierce*.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [*trāns*, *across*; *portō*, *convey*], *transport*.

trānsversus, -a, -um [perf. part. of *trānsvertō*, *turn across*], *trans-verse, cross*.

trecenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [tri- (st. of *trēs*), *THREE*; st. of *centum*, *HUNDRED*], *THREE HUNDRED*.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūs [*trepido* (st. of *trepidus*), *restless, alarmed*], *be in a state of trepidation or alarm*.

trēs, *tria*, num. adj., *THREE*.

Trēveri, -ōrum, m., *the Trēveri* (tribe in Belgic Gaul in the lower valley of the Moselle).

tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribu- (st. of *tribus*), *tribe*], (orig., head of a tribe) *tribune*; *tribūnus militūm*, *military tribune* (there were six tribunes attached to each legion, and they commanded in turn, each two months at a time; they seldom led troops in battle, but were employed for the most part in routine administrative duties).

tribuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtūs [*tribu-* (st. of *tribus*), *tribe*], (orig., assign to a tribe, and so) *assign, ascribe, award, allot, bestow, give, contribute, confer, render*.

tribūtūm, -ī, n. [n. perf. part. of *tribuō*, *contribute*, used subst.], *tribute, tribute money*.

triduum, -ī, n. [*trī*, conn. w.

trēs, *THREE*; -duum, conn. w. *diēs*, *day*], *space of THREE days*.

trigintā, indecl. num. adj. [*trī*, conn. w. *trēs*, *THREE*; -gin- represents (de)cem, *TEN*], *THIRTY*.

trini, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. used with substs. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning [conn. w. *trēs*, *THREE*], *THREE*.

tri-plex, -icis, adj. [tri- (st. of *trēs*), *THREE*; -plec-, *FOLD*], *THREEFOLD, triple*.

tristiculus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. fr. *tristi*- (st. of *tristis*), *sorrowful*], *somewhat sorrowful*.

tristis, -e, sad, gloomy. *tristitia*, -ae, f. [*tristi*- (st. of *tristis*), *sad*], *sadness*.

triumphus, -ī, m., *triumph*. *tū*, *tuī*, pers. pron., *THOU, you*.

tuba, -ae, f., *a straight trumpet*; see Fig. 10.



Fig. 10.
Tuba, from the arch of Titus.

Tuberō, -ōnis, m., *Lucius Tuberō* (one of Pompey's lieutenants).

Tulingi, -ōrum, m., *the Tulingi* (German tribe on the Rhine, north of the Helvetii).

Tullius, -ī, m., *Marcus Tullius Cicero* (the famous Roman orator).

Tullus, -ī, m., *Lucius Vocationius Tullus* (consul 66 B.C.).

tum, adv., *at THAT time, THEN*; *tum cum*, *at THE time WHEN, at THE moment WHEN*.

tumulus, -ī, m. [dim. fr. *stu-*, *swell* (through **tumus*)], (orig., a little swelling, and so) *rising ground, earth-mound; pile, heap*.

tumultus, -ūs, m. [*tumulo-* (st. of *tumulus*), *swelling*], *tumult* (especially used of an outbreak in Italy or Gaul).

turba, -ae, f. [conn. w. *turma*, *throng*], *uproar; crowd, multitude*,

mob; turba et conlūviō, vile rabble.

turbidus, -a, -um, adj. [turbā- (st. of *turba*), *uproar*], *disturbed; troubled, dangerous.*

turma, -ae, F. [conn. w. *turba*, *uproar*], *throng; squadron.*

turpis, -e, adj., *base, disgraceful, unbecoming, indecorous.*

turrīs, -is, F., *tower, turret.*

tātus, -a, -um [p. a. of *tueor, protect*], *(protected, and so) safe, secure.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [conn. w. tū, THOU], *THY, your; tuā rēfert, it concerns you, it is of importance to you.*

tyrannus, -i, M. [borrowed from the Greek], *tyrant.*

U.

ubī, adv. [= *cubī = *quobī], loc. fm. of pron. st. quo-], 1. (of place) *WHERE; WHEREVER.* 2. (of time) *WHEN; ubī primum, as soon as.*

Ubii, -ōrum, M., *the Ubii* (a German people on the right bank of the Rhine).

ublīvis, adv. [ubī, WHERE; vīs (volō), *you WILL*], *WHERE you WILL, in any place WHATEVER.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. (used where a negative is expressed or implied) [dim. fr. ūno- (st. of ūnus), ONE], *(least one, and so) ANY at all, ANY; subst., ANY ONE.*

ūlterior, -iūs, adj. [comp. of *ūler, *on the farther side*], *farther. Superl., ūlimus, -a, -um, farthest, remotest.*

ūlimus, -a, -um, superl. of ūlterior, q. v.

ūltrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [abl. fm. of *ūlter, *on the farther side*], *beyond.*

ūltrō, adv. [casé fm. of *ūlter, *on the farther side, used adv.*], *to the farther side, beyond; without urging, of one's own motion, voluntarily, spontaneously.*

Umbrēnus, -i, M., *Umbrenus*

(freedman implicated in Catiline's conspiracy 63 B.C.).

umerus, -i, M., *shoulder.*

umquam, see unquam.

ūnā, adv. [abl. fem. of ūnus, ONE], *in company, together, in common, at the same time.*

ūndēvicēsimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ūndēvigintī, ONE from TWENTY or nineteen], *nineteenth.*

undique, adv., *on all sides, from all parts or quarters.*

ūni-versus, -a, -um, adj. [ūno- (st. of ūnus), ONE; versus, perf. part. of vertō, turn], *(all combined in one, and so) all together, all in a body.*

unquam or **umquam**, adv. (generally used where a neg. is expressed or implied; cf. quisquam), *ever, at any time.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., ONE; *A single, A; the same; alone, only, sole.* In pl., (usu.) *alone*; (with substs. pl. in form, but sing. in sense) *ONE.*

ūrbānus, -a, -um, adj. [urbi- (st. of urbs), *city*], *belonging to the city, in the city.*

ūrbs, -is, F., *city, town.*

ūrus, -i, M., *the ure-ox.*

ūsūra, -ae, F. [base ūt- (in ūtor) *use*], *use, enjoyment.*

ūsus, -ūs, M. [base ūt- (in ūtor), *use; advantage; experience, skill, acquaintance; service; occasion, need, necessity; ex ūsū, expedient, advantageous; ex ūsū, w. gen., for the advantage.*

ut or **ūti**, adv. and conj., *now; as, in proportion as; ut . . . sic, as . . . so, although . . . yet; (w. perf. indic.) as soon as, WHEN; (in final clauses) in order that, that; (after verbs of fearing) that not; (in clauses of result) so that, that.*

uter, *utra, utrum, interrog. and indef. rel. pron. [= *cuter = *quoter, comp. fm. of pron. st. quo-; cf. English who and WHETHER],*

1. interrog. WHICH (of two). 2. indef. rel., WHICHEVER (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. [uter; cf. quisque from quis], each of two, both.

Utica, -ae, f., *Utica* (city in northern Africa, north of Carthage).

ūtilis, -e, adj. [base ūt- (in ūtor), use], useful.

ūtilitās, -ātis, f. [ūtili- (st. of ūtilis), useful], usefulness, serviceableness, utility.

ūtinam, adv. [utī (w. vowel shortened), how; nam, pray], *O that! would that!*

ūtor, -i, ūsus, use, make use of, employ; enjoy.

utrūm, adv. [n. acc. of uter, WHICH OF TWO], WHETHER.

uxor, -ōris, f., wife.

V.

vacātiō, -ōnis, f. [vacā- (st. of vacō), be free], (being free, and so) exemption.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be empty; be free from; (of lands) lie unoccupied.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [base vac- (in vacō), be empty], vacant, empty.

valeō, -ēre, -ūi, (fut. part.) valitūrus, be strong (physically), be well; have power, be able; (in leave-taking) farewell; minus valēre, not to be strong enough, to be too weak.

Valerius, see Proculus.

vällum, -i, n. [neut. of vällus, stake, used in collective sense], (collection of stakes, and so) wall, rampart (of earth surmounted by a palisading of sharpened stakes).

vānitās, -ātis, f. [vāno- (st. of vānus), empty], emptiness; vanity.

Vārus, -i, m., *Publius Attius Varus* (praetor in Africa and adherent of Pompey).

vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vasto-

(st. of vastus), unoccupied, waste], lay waste.

vectigālis, -ē, adj. [neut. of vectigālis (w. final -e lost)], (payment for carriage, and so) tax; revenue.

vectigālis, -ē, adj. [conn. w. vehō, carry], pertaining to payment for carriage, pertaining to taxes or tribute; subject to tribute, tributary.

vehementer, adv. [vehement- (st. of vehemēns), violent, vehement], violently, impetuously; strongly, powerfully, greatly, exceedingly, severely.

vel, conj. [prob. imperat. of volō, wish, choose], (take your choice, and so) or, or if you please; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.

vēlōciter, adv. [vēlōci- (st. of vēlōx), swift], swiftly, quickly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnā- (st. of vēnor), hunt], hunting.

vēn-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (vēn-eō, -ire, -ivī or -iū, -itum, is used as the pass.) [vēnum (acc. of place to which), sale; dō, put], (expose for sale, and so) sell.

Veneti, -ōrum, m., the *Veneti* (tribe in Celtic Gaul on the coast). **vēniō**, -ire, vēnī, ventum [vēn- COME], come; in spēm venire, to cherish or entertain hope.

ventus, -i, m., WIND.

verbūm, -i, n. [vēr-, speak], WORD; in pl., WORDS, expressions.

Vercingetorix, -igis, m., *Vercingetorix* (prominent leader of the Gauls in the time of Caesar).

vērē, adv. [abl. fm. of vērus, true], truly, rightly.

vēreor, -ērī, -itus [vēr-, be WARY (through presumed adj.)], fear.

vergō, -ēre, incline, slope, verge.

vergobretus, -i, m., *vergobretus*, *vergobret* (title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui).

vēritās, -ātis, f. [vēro- (st. of vērus), true], truth.

vērō, adv. [n. abl. of vērus, true], in truth, indeed, verily, pray; but.

vessor, -ārī, -ātus [intens., fr. *verso*- (st. of perf. part. of *vertō*, *turn*)], *busy one's self, occupy one's self, engage*; *versāri in*, *to be encompassed by, to expose one's self to*.

versus, -ūs, M. [*vert*, *turn*], (lit., a turning [of the plow], and so) *furrow; verse*.

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn*.

vērum, adv. [n. acc. of *vērus*, *true*], (but in truth, and so) *but*; *vērum etiam*, *but also*.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true*; subst., *vērum*, -ī, N., *the truth*.

vescor, -ī, *take food, eat, subsist*.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, M., *Vesontio* (mod. Besançon, chief town of the Sequani in Celtic Gaul).

vesper, -erī and -eris, M., *evening*.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [*vōs*, *you*], *your* (pl.).

vestiglō, -ī, N. [conn. w. *vestigō*, *track, trace*], *footstep, track; place, spot; in vestiglō, on the spot, forthwith*.

vestiō, -ire, -ivī or -ii, -itūs [*vesti-* (st. of *vestis*), *clothing*], *clothe*.

vestitus, -ūs, M. [*vestī* (st. of *vestiō*), *clothe*], *clothing*.

vetus, -eris, adj., *old; of long standing; veteran; former*.

vēxillum, -ī, N., *red flag hoisted on the general's tent as a signal for battle*; see Fig. 11.



Fig. 11.

via, -ae, F. [*veh*, *move, carry*; conn. w. *vehō, carry*], *WAY, highway, road, street; journey, march; distance; method, way*.

viātor, -ōris, M. [*viā-* (st. of *viō*), *travel*], *traveller*.

Vibullius, see Rūfus.

vicēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [conn. w. *vigintī*, *TWENTY*], *TWENTY each, TWENTY*.

vicēsimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [*vigintī*, *TWENTY*], *TWENTI-*

eth; vicēsimus sextus, TWENTY-SIXTH.

victima, -ae, F. [*vīg*, *be strong*, w. superl. suff. (the finest animals being selected for sacrifice)], *victim for sacrifice, sacrifice*.

victor, -ōris, M. [*vīc*, *conquer*], *victor; used adj., victorious*.

victōria, -ae, F. [*victōr-* (st. of *victor*), *victor*], *victory*.

victus, -a, -um [perf. part. of *vincō*, *vanquish*], *vanquished; subst. victi, -ōrum, M., the vanquished*.

victus, -ūs, M. [*vīgu-*, *live*], (living, and so) *sustenance, food, maintenance; cōnsuētādō vītūs, manner of living, mode of life*.

vicus, -ī, M. [*vīc-*, *settle*; cf. the ending -WICK in English geographical names; as, Warwick, Berwick], *village*.

videō, -ēre, *vidī, vīsus* [*vīd*, *see* (through presumed adj. st.)], *see*. In pass., *be seen; seem; seem good*.

vigeō, -ēre [*vīg*, *be strong* (through presumed adj. st.); conn. w. *vigil, awake*], *be vigorous, thrive, be in force*.

vigilla, -ae, F. [*vīgili-* (st. of *vigil*), *awake*], *WATCHfulness; WATCH* (the Romans divided the night, i.e. the interval from sunset to sunrise, into four equal parts called watches; hence the watch, like the hour, varied in length according to the season); in pl., *WATCHMEN*.

vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*vīgili-* (st. of *vigil*), *awake*], *WATCH*.

vigintī, indecl. num. adj. [*vī-* (= *dvi-*), conn. w. *duo, two*; -*gin-* represents (de)cem, TEN], *TWENTY*.

viginti quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *TWENTY-FOUR*.

viginti quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *TWENTY-FIVE*.

vimen, -inis, N. [*vī-*, *plait*], (that which is plaited, and so) *withe, osier*.

vincō, -ere, *vīcī, vīctus* [*vīc*, *conquer*], *vanquish, conquer*.

vīnum, -ī, N., *wine*.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conn. w. vīs, strength, violence], *injure, offer violence to*.

vir, virī, M., *man; husband*.

virgō, -inis, F., *virgin, maiden*.

virgulta, -ōrum, N. [virgulā- (st. of *virgula*), *twig*], *shrubbery, brushwood*.

virilis, -e, adj. [viro- (st. of *vir*), *man*], *pertaining to a man, manly*.

virtūs, -ūtis, F. [viro- (st. of *vir*), *man*], *manliness, and so valor, virtue; merit, ability, pre-eminence; military talent*.

vīs, vis; pl. virēs, vīriūm, F. *strength, power, might, vigor, force; violence; vim facere, to use force, to resort to force; vim et manūs inferre, to lay violent hands upon*.

vīta, -ae, F. [vī(gu)-, *live*], *life*.

vītōsus, a, -um, adj. [vītio- (st. of *vitium*), *fault*], *full of faults, faulty, defective; corrupt, vicious*.

vītium, -ī, N. [vī-, *plait*, (through presumed **vitius*)], *(a twist, and so) fault; vice*.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seek to escape, avoid*.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, (fut. part.) vīctūrus [vī(g)u-, *live*; cogn. w. Eng. *QUICK*], *live, be alive; vitam vivere, to pass one's life*.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vī(g)u-, *live*], *alive, living*.

vīx, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, barely*.

vocābulum, -ī, N. [vocā- (st. of *vocō*), *call*], *(that by which a thing is called, and so) name, designation; word*.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vōc-, *speak, call* (through presumed adj. st.)], *call, summon, convene, invite; call, name*.

Volcānus, -ī, M., *Vulcan* (the fire god); *fire*.

volō, velle, volūī [vōl-, *WILL*],

wish, desire; be WILLING; sibi velle, to mean; vellem possem, WOULD that I could!

voluntās, -ātis, F. [volunt-, earlier form of volent- (st. of volēns, pres. part. of volō, *WILL*)], *WILLINGNESS, WILL, wish*.

voluptās, -ātis, F. [volup- (st. seen in adv. *volup, agreeably*); cf. facultas and simultas from sts. faculi- and simuli-], *pleasure; sensual gratification*.

Volusēnus, -ī, M., *Gajus Volusenus Quadratus* (military tribune in Caesar's army).

vōveō, -āre, vōvī, vōtūs, *roar*.

vōx, vōcis, F. [vōc-, *speak, call*], *voice; speech, utterance, outcry; expressions*.

vulgō, adv. [abl. of *vulgus, the multitude*], *commonly, generally, universally*.

vulgus, -ī, N. (sometimes M.), *the multitude, the common people, the public*.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vulner- (st. of *vulnus*), *wound*; -s- of the stem becomes -r-], *wound, inflict wounds*.

vulnus, -eris, N., *wound*.

vultus, -ūs, M. [vōl-, *WILL*], *(manifestation of will through the countenance, and so) countenance, visage, aspect*.

X.

X, as an abbreviation, *decem, TEN*.

Xeno-phōn, -ōntis, M., *Xenophon* (Athenian historian and general, also disciple of Socrates; lived about 445–356 B.C.).

Xerxēs, -is, M., *Xerxes* (son of Darius Hystaspes and king of Persia; made an unsuccessful invasion of Greece; his land forces were defeated at Thermopylae and his fleet at Salamis 480 B.C.).

II. ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

NOTE. — The numeral placed at the right of a verb designates the conjugation to which the verb belongs. The dash (—) is used to represent the leading word; thus (under ‘able’) ‘be —’ is to be read ‘be able.’

a, usu. not translated; *ūnus*,
-a, -um, adj.; *quīdam*, *quaedam*,
quoddam.

abandon, *dēsistō*³ (w. abl.).
abide, *stō*.¹

able, **be** —: *possum*; (= be strong enough) *valeō*.²

about, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; w. numerals: *ad*, prep. w. acc.; *circiter*, adv.

absent, **be** —, *absum*.

absurd, *inscūtus*, -a, -um, adj.

abundance, *cōpia*, -ae, F.; *factūtās*, -ātis, F.; **in** —, **abundē**, adv.

abuse, *abūtor*³ (w. abl.).

acceptable, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.; *acceptus*, -a, -um, p. a.; a thing —, *grātum*, n. adj. used subst.

access, *aditus*, -ūs, M.; **gain** —, *adeō*.⁴

accomplish, *cōficiō*³; *efficiō*³
accordingly, *igitur*, conj. (usu. placed after the first word).

according, — to, sign of abl.; *ad*, prep. w. acc.

account, **on** — **of**: *propter*, prep. w. acc.; *ob*, prep. w. acc.; **call to** —, *accūsō*.¹

acquire, *adipiscor*, -i, *adeptus*.

across, *trāns*, prep. w. acc.

act, 1. subst., *factum*, -i, N. 2. vb., *faciō*.³

action, *manus*, -ūs, F.

Adamastus, *Ādamastus*, -i, M.

address, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, F.

adequate, **less** —, **minor**, -us, adj.

adjacent, *finitimus*, -a, -um, adj.

administer, *administrō*.¹

admonish, *moneō*.²

admonition, **to give** this — **above all others**, *id ūnum monēre* (w. acc. pers.).

adopt, *capiō*³; (= make use of) *ūtor*³ (w. abl.).

advance, *prōcēdō*³; (against the enemy) *signa ferō*; **send in** —, *praemittō*.³

advantage, *commodum*, -i, N.

advantageous, *ūtilis*, -e, adj.

adversary, *adversarius*, -ū, M.

adverse, *adversus*, -a, -um, p. a.

Aeduān, *Aeduus*, -i, M.

Aeduāns or **Aedui**, *Aeduī*, -ōrum, M.

affair, *rēs*, gen. *reī* (*reī*, *rē*), F.

affect, *moveō*.²

afford, *dō*.

after, *post*, prep. w. acc.; *post*, adv.

again, *rūrsus*, adv.; (= the same) *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, demonstr. pron.; — and —: *etiam atque etiam*; *saepenumero*.

against, *contrā*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep. w. acc.; (as translation of ob- or in-) sign of dat.

age, **old** —, *senectūs*, -ūtis, F.

Agesilaus, *Āgesilāus*, -i, M.

ago, **long** —, *jampridem*, adv.

agreeable, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.

aid, *auxiliū*, -ū, N.

alarm, 1. subst., *timor*, -ōris, M.

2. vb., *commoveō*²; *permoveō*²; **in** —, *commōtus*, -a, -um, perf. part.

Alcibiades, *Ālcibiadēs*, -is, M.

all, (without exception) *omnis*, -e, adj.; (when the object is viewed as a whole) *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.; **at** —, *omnīnō*, adv.

allegiance, *officium*, -ū, N.

Allobroges, *Allobrogēs*, -um, M.

- allow, patior.³**
ally, socius, -ī, M.
almost, paene, adv.
also, etiam, conj.; (= and) et, conj.; (= likewise) item, adv.; (= the same) idem, eadem, idem, demonstr. pron.; but —: sed etiam; et.
although, quamquam, conj. (w. indic.); cum, conj. (w. subj.); tametsī (w. indic. and subj. like sī); sign of abl. abs.
altogether, (= enough) satis, adv.
always, semper, adv.
amass, comparō.¹
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, M.
amity, amicitia, -ae, F.
among, apud, prep. w. acc.; inter, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. abl.; — themselves, inter sē.
ancestors, mājōrēs, -um, M.
anchor, ancora, -ae, F.
ancient, p̄istinus, -a, -um, adj.
and, et, conj. (connects expressions that are viewed independently of each other); -que, conj. (connects closely); (= and also, and to, with emphasis on the second member) atque (before vowels or consonants), ac (before consonants only), conj.; — not, neque, nec, conj.
anger, in —, irātus, -a, -um, p. a.
angry, irātus, -a, -um, p. a.
animal, animal, -ālis, N.
announce, nūntiō.¹
annoying, molestus, -a, -um, adj.
another, aliis, alia, aliud, adj. and subst.; — (of two), alter, -era, -erum, adj. and subst.; one —, aliis . . . aliis; at one —, inter sē; from one —, inter sē; at one time . . . at another, aliās . . . aliās.
answer, 1. vb., respondeō² (w. dat. pers.). 2. subst., respōnsum, -ī, N.; make —, respondeō.²
anxiety, cūra, -ae, F.
any, (in neg. and conditional sentences and interrog. sentences implying a neg.) ullus, -a, -um, indef. adj.; (after sī or nē) quī, qua
or quae, quod, indef. adj.; . (= some) aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, indef. adj.; — whatever, quīvis, quaerīs, quodvis, indef. adj.
any body, any one, (in neg. and conditional sentences and in interrog. sentences implying a negative) quisquam, indef. pron. also ullus (used subst.); (after sī or nē) quis, indef. pron.
any thing, quicquam or quidquam; (after sī or nē) quid.
apart, keep —, distineō.²
apiece, sign of distr. num.; in singulōs.
apply, adhibeō.²
appoint, creō.¹
apprehension, metus, -ūs, M.
approach, 1. subst., adventus, -ūs, M. 2. vb., appropinquō¹ (w. dat. or ad w. acc.).
approve, probō.¹
approver, approbātor, -ōris, M.
April, of —, Aprilis, -e, adj.
Aquitania, Aquitānia, -ae, F.
Aquitanian, Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj.
Aquitanians, Aquitānī, -ōrum, M.
Arar, Arar, -aris, M.
archer, sagittārius, -ī, M.
Archias, Archiās, -ae, M.
ardently, — desire, exoptō.¹
Arlovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, M.
arise, orior⁴ (w. some fms. of the 3d conjugation); (= arise together) coōrior.⁴
arm, armō.¹
armor, armātūra, -ae, F.
arms, arma, -ōrum, N.; in —, armātus, -a, -um, p. a.
army, exercitus, -ūs, M. (generic term); agmen, -inis, N. (on the march); aciēs, gen. -ē and -ēi, F. (in order of battle).
arouse, incitō.¹
arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
arrive, pervenitō⁴; to — at, pervenire ad.
arrogance, adrogantia, -ae, F.
art, ars, artis, F.; (= work) opus, -eris, N.

Arverni, *Arvernī*, -ōrum, M.
as, *ut* or *uti*, adv.; *quemadmodum*, adv.; (= that which) *id quod*; (= inasmuch as) *quoniam*, conj.; (= since) *cum* (w. subj.), conj.; just —, *sicut*, adv.; — follows, *sic*, adv.; — soon —, *ubī primum*, *simul atque*; — not (in clauses of result) *qui nōn* or *ut nōn*; — usual, *ex cōsuētudine*; so . . . as, *tam . . . quam*; to regard —, *habēre prō* (w. abl.); to serve —, *esse* w. dat.; — to (= concerning) *dē*.

ascend, *ascendō*.³
ascent, *adscēnsus*, -ūs, M.
ascertain, *cōgnoscō*.³
ashamed, I am —, *mē pudet* (w. gen.).
aside, lay or put —, *dēponō*.³
ask, *rogō*¹ (w. two accs.); *quaerō*³ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ex* or *ē*, *ab* or *ā*, or *dē*); ask, — for, *petō*³ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab* or *ā*).
assault, 1. subst., *impetus*, -ūs, M. 2. vb., *oppūgnō*¹; take by —, *expūgnō*.¹

assemble, 1. tr., *convocō*.¹ 2. intr., *conveniō*.⁴
assembly, *concilium*, -ī, N.
assent, to — to, *approbātor esse* (w. gen.).
assert, *dicō*.³
assign, *attribuō*.³
assistance, *auxiliū*, -ī, N.
associate, *sociū*, -ī, M.
assume, *sibi sūmō*.³
asunder, keep —, *distineō*.²
at, (= in) in, prep. w. abl.; [arrive] at, *ad*, prep. w. acc.; (= at the house of) *apud*, prep. w. acc.

Athenian, *Athēniēnsis*, -e, adj.; also used subst.

Athens, *Athēnae*, -ārum, F.
attach, *adjungō*³ (w. acc. and dat.).
attachment, *studium*, -ī, N.
attack, 1. subst., *impetus*, -ūs, M.; *congressus*, -ūs, M. 2. vb., (= thrust at, rush at, aim at) *petō*³; (= provoke, challenge to

combat, irritate) *lacessō*³; (= approach with hostile intention) *adeō*.⁴

attempt, *tentō*¹ or *temptō*¹; *cōnor*.¹

attention, call one's — to (= remind forcibly), *commonefaciō*.³

audacity, *audācīa*, -ae, F.

augment, *augeō*.²

authority, *auctōritās*, -ātis, F.; (= right) *jūs*, *jūris*, N.; sovereign —, *rēgnū*; supreme —, *imperīum*, -ī, N.; to be in — over, *obtinēre* (w. acc.).

Autronius, *Autrōnius*, -ī, M.

auxiliaries, *auxilia*, -ōrum, N.; *älārū*, -ōrum, M.

avail, *valeō*.²

avert, *dēpellō*.³

avoid, *vīdō*.¹

await, *exspectō*.¹

award, *tribuō*.³

aware, be — of, *scētiō*⁴; *sciō*.⁴
away, — from, *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only).

Axona, *Axona*, -ae, M.

B.

bad, (morally) *improbūs*, -a, -um, adj.

back, *re(d)-*.

badge, *insigne*, -is, N.

baggage, *impedimenta*, -ōrum, N.

band, *manus*, -ūs, F.

banishment, *exsilium*, -ī, N.

bank, (of a river) *ripa*, -ae, F.

barbarian, *barbarus*, -ī, M.

barely, *vix*, adv.

barricade, *obstruō*³ (w. acc.).

base, *turpis*, -e, adj.

battle, *proelium*, -ī, N.; carry

on —, *pūgnō*.¹

be, sum; — in, *insum* (w. dat.);

— away, *absum*.

beak, *rōstrum*, -ī, N.

beat, *pellō*.³

beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrūm, adj.

beauty, *forma*, -ae, F.

because, *quod* (w. indic.); *cum* (w. subj.).

become, *fūō*; — firmly established, *inveterasco*, -*ere*, -*avī*.

becoming, it is —, *debet*,² impersonal.

beech, *fāgus*, -*i*, F.

before, *ante*, prep. w. acc.; *antequam*, *priusquam*, conj.; (= preceding) *superior*, -*ius*, adj. comp.; (= already) *jam*, adv.; (= near) *apud*, prep. w. acc.; (= up to) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; — one's time, *immātūrus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; on the day —, *pridiē*, adv.; to lay the matter —, *referre ad* (w. acc.).

beg, *petō*³ (w. ab or ā and abl. pers.).

began, *coepī*, def.

begin, (= make a beginning) *initium faciō*⁸; (= enter) *ineō*⁴ (w. acc.); — at (= rise from) *orior*⁴ (w. ab and abl.); to — battle, *proelium committere*.

beginning, *initium*, -*ii*, N.

behalf, in—of, *prō*, prep. w. abl.

behavior, (= thing) *rēs*, F.

behind, leave —, *relinquō*.³

Belgians, *Belgae*, -*arum*, M.

believe, *credō*⁸ (w. dat. pers.); (= judge) *jūdicō*.¹

Bellovacī, *Bellovacī*, -*orum*, M.

belonging, — to the town, *oppidānus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

bench, *subsellium*, -*ii*, N.

benefit, *beneficiū*, -*ii*, N.

beseach, *petō*⁸ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. ab or ā).

best, *optimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj. (superl. of *bonus*).

bestow, *dō*.

betake, to — one's self, *sē cōnferrē*.

betoken, *dēsignō*.¹

betray, (= surrender treacherously) *prōdō*⁸; (= point out) *indicō*.¹

better, it is —, *praestat*, impers.

between, *inter*, prep. w. acc.; (= in) *in*, prep. w. abl.

bewail, *miseror*.¹

beyond, *extrā*, prep. w. acc.; *suprā*, prep. w. acc.

bidding, at the —, *jūssū* (in abl. only).

bitter, — experience, *acerbitās*, -*atis*, F.

blockade, *obsideō*.²

blood, *sanguis*, -*inis*, M.

bloodshed, *clādēs*, -*is*, F.

boast, *glōrior*¹; make a — of, *glōrior*¹ (w. abl.); to make the same —, *idem glōriārī*.

body, *corpus*, -*oris*, N.

boldly, *audāctēr*, adv.; **more** —, *audācius*, adv. comp.

boldness, *audācia*, -*ae*, F.; with —, *audāctēr*, adv.; **with the greatest** —, superl. of *audāctēr*.

book, *liber*, -*brī*, M.

booty, *praeda*, -*ae*, F.

bordering, — on, *fīnitimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

born, be —, *nāscor*.³

both, (= each of two) *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*, pron.; **both** ... and, *et . . . et*.

bound, *contineō*.²

boy, *puer*, -*erī*, M.

branches, **light** —, *virgulta*, -*ōrum*, N.

brave, *fortis*, -*e*, adj.

breadth, *lātitūdō*, -*inis*, F.

break, (= throw into disorder) *perturbō*¹; — through, *perfringō*³; — through (= burst through) *perrumpō*³; — into, *irrumpō*³ (w. acc.).

bribe, *largiō*.⁴

bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, M.

bring, *adferō*; (= lead to) *adducō*³; (= lead across) *trāducō*³; — back, *reducō*.³

Britain, *Britannia*, -*ae*, F.

Britons, *Britannī*, -*orum*, M.

broad, *lātūs*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

brother, *frāter*, -*trīs*, M.

Brundisium, *Brundisium*, -*ii*, N.

Brutus, *Brūtūs*, -*i*, M.

build, *aedificō*¹; — up, *exstruō*.³

building, *aedificium*, -*ii*, N.

bulk, **great** —, *māgnitūdō*, -*inis*, F.

burn, *exūrō*, -*ere*, -*ūssi*, -*ūstus*;

cremō,¹ *īgnī* *cremō*.¹

burst, — into view, *ērumpō*³; — through, *perrumpō*³.
business, *negōtium*, -ī, N.; (= care) *cūra*, -ae, F.
 but, *sed*, conj.; (somewhat stronger than *sed*) *vērum*; (introducing with emphasis a new thought, e.g. a supposed objection) *at*; (= indeed) *vērō*, adv.; (= unless) *nisi*, conj.; (= in all, altogether) *omnīnō*, adv.; (= except) *praeter*, prep. w. acc.; (= only) *mōdo*, adv.; **nothing** —, *nihil nisi*; **no one** —, *nēmō nisi*; but **also** or even: *sed* or *vērum etiam*; (correlating with *et*) *et*.
butcher, *jugulō*¹.

buy, *emō*³; — **up**, *coēmō*³.
by, (denoting agency) *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only); (denoting means) sign of abl.; (= through) *per*, prep. w. acc.

C.

Caesar, *Caesar*, -aris, M.
Caeparius, *Caepārius*, -ī, M.
call, (= name) *appellō*¹; (= call together) *convocō*¹; — **one's attention to** (= remind forcibly); *commonefactō*³; — **to mind** (for the purpose of reflecting on), *recordor*¹ (usu. w. acc.); — **to account**, *accusō*¹.

calm, *tranquillus*, -a, -um, adj.
camp, *castra*, -ōrum, N.
can, *possim*; (= may) *licet*,² impers. (w. dat.).
capital, *capitālis*, -e, adj.
capitol, *capitōlium*, -ī, N.

Cappadocian, *Cappadox*, -ocis, M.

captive, *captīvus*, -ī, M.
Capua, *Capua*, -ae, F.

care, *cūra*, -ae, F.; **take** —, *cūrō*¹.

carry, *portō*¹; — **on**, *gerō*³; — **off** (= lead away), *abducō*,³ *dēducō*³; — **on battle**, *pūgnō*¹; **to** — **on war against**, *bellum īferre* (w. dat.); **to** — **one's arms into**, *arma īferre* (w. dat.).

Carthage, *Carthāgō*, -inis, F.
Carthaginians, *Poenī*, -ōrum, M.
case, in the — of, *in*, prep. w. abl.

Cassandra, *Cassandra*, -ae, F.
Cassius, *Cassius*, -ī, M.; **with** —, *Cassiānus*, -a, -um, adj.
cast, *mittō*³; — **down**, *dēmittō*³.
Casticus, *Casticus*, -ī, M.
catch, — **sight of**, *cōspiciō*³.
Catiline, *Catilīna*, -ae, M.
Cato, *Catō*, -ōnis, M.
Caturiges, *Caturigēs*, -um, M.
cattle, *pecus*, -oris, N.
cause, 1. subst., *causa*, -ae, F.
 2. vb., *faciō*³; *efficiō*³.
cavalry, 1. subst., *equitātus*, -ūs, M.; *equitēs*, -um, M. (pl. of *eqūes*, horseman). 2. adj., *equester*, -tris, -tre, adj.

cease, *dēsistō*³; *finem faciō*³.
Celts (Kelts), *Celtae*, -ārum, M.
centurion, *centuriō*, -ōnis, M.
Ceraunus, *Ceraunus*, -ī, M.
certain, a —, a — man, *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* and (subst.) *quidam*.

Cethagus, *Cethēgus*, -ī, M.
change, — the direction of, *convertō*³.
chariot-man (i.e. one who fights from a chariot), *essedārius*, -ī, M.

charioteer, *aurīga*, -ae, M.
cheap, *vīlis*, -e, adj. .
cheese, *cāseus*, -ī, M.
cherish, — the memory of, *memīnī*, def.; — **hatred**, *ōdī*, def.
chief, 1. subst., *prīnceps*, -īpis, M. 2. adj., *māximus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *māgnus*).
chiefly, *plērumque*, adv.

child, *puer*, -erī, M.
children (in general) *puerī*, -ōrum, M.; (with reference to their parents) *līberī*, -ōrum, M.

choose, — **rather**, *mālō*.
Cicero, *Cicerō*, -ōnis, M.
Cimbri, *Cimbrī*, -ōrum, M.
Cimon, *Cimōn*, -ōnis, M.
Cingetorix, *Cingetorix*, -īgis, M.
circuit, *circuitus*, -ūs, M.

circuitous, by a — path, *in circuitū*.
 citizen, *cīvis*, -is, c.
 city, *urbs*, -is, F.; in the — (= belonging to the city), *urbānus*, -a, -um, adj.
 civil, *cīvīlis*, -e, adj.
 claim, have a —, *oportet*,² imper. (w. acc. and infin.); lay — to, *repetō*,³
 class, *genus*, -eris, N.
 Claudius, *Claudius*, -ii, M.
 clear, (= make vacant) *vacuē-faciō*,⁴ make —, *explānō*,¹ it is altogether —, *satis cōstat*, imper.
 climb, *adscendō*,³
 Clodia, *Clōdia*, -ae, F.
 close, at — quarters, *commi-nus*, adv.
 clothe, *vestiō*,⁴
 clothing, *vestitus*, -ūs, M.
 coast, *ōra*, -ae, F.; sea —, *ōra maritima*.
 cohort, *cohors*, -tis, F.
 collect, *cōgō*,³; *conligō*,³; *com-parō*,¹
 come, *veniō*,⁴; (= arrive) *per-veniō*,⁴; — upon, *occurrō*,³ (w. dat.); — out, *ēgredior*,³; — back, *redeō*,⁴; to — off, *sē inde recipere*; to — up to, *accēdere ad* (w. acc.); to — up with, *venire ad* (w. acc.).
 command, 1. subst., *mandā-tum*, -i, N.; (military) *imperium*, -ii, N. 2. vb., *imperō*,¹; be in — of, *praesum* (w. dat.); place in — of, *praeficiō*,³ (w. acc. pers. and dat. th.).
 commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, M.
 commend, (= praise) *laudō*,¹
 commit, (of an injury) *faciō*,⁸; (of crime) *admittō*,³; (= intrust): *permittō*,³ (w. acc. and dat.); *com-mendō*,¹ (w. acc. and dat.).
 common, *commūnis*, -e, adj.
 commonwealth, *rēs pūblica*, *rēi pūblicae*, F.
 community, *cīvītās*, -ātis, F.
 company, *concilium*, -ii, N.
 compare, *comparō*,¹ (w. acc., and dat. or *cum* w. abl.).

compassion, have — on, *mi-sereor*,² (w. gen.).
 compel, *cōgō*,³
 comrade, *comes*, -itis, c.
 concerns, it —, *interest*, impers.
 concerning, *dē*, prep. w. abl.
 condemn, *damnō*,¹ (w. gen. of charge or penalty); *condemnō*,¹ (w. gen. of charge or penalty); *multō*,¹ (w. acc. and abl.); to — to death, *capitis damnāre*.
 condition, (= thing) *rēs*, r.
 conduct, (= manage) *gerō*,³; — across, *trādūcō*,³
 confer, *agō*,³
 conference, *conloquium*, -ii, N.; have a —, *conloquor*,³
 confidence, *fīdēs*, -ēi (-ēi, -ē), F.
 confident, — expectation, *fī-dūcia*, -ae, F.
 confines, *finēs*, -ium, M. (pl. of *finis*).
 conflagration, *incendium*, -ii, N.
 confusion, *tumultus*, -ūs, M.
 conquer, *vincō*,³
 conqueror, come off —, *su-pe-rior discēdō*,³
 conscious, *cōncius*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen. th.; w. or without dat. pers.).
 conscript, *cōscriptus*, -a, -um, p. a.
 consent, withhold — (= [be] unwilling), *invīlus*, -a, -um, adj.
 consider, (= hold, regard) *habeō*,² (w. two accs. in act.); (= ponder) *reputō*,¹
 consign, *mandō*,¹ (w. acc. and dat.).
 consist, — in, *sum* (w. in and abl.).
 conspiracy, *conjūratiō*, -ōnis, F.
 conspire, *cōsentīō*,⁴
 constitution, *jūs*, *jūris*, N.
 constrain, *cōgō*,³
 consul, *cōsul*, -is, M.
 consulship, in the — of, *cōsul* (abl. abs. w. name of pers.).
 consult, *cōnsulō*,³ (w. acc.); — for, — the interests of, *cō-sulō*,³ (w. dat.).
 consume (by fire), *cremō*,¹

contempt, *contemptus*, -ūs, M.
contend, *contendō*³ (w. *cum* and abl.) ; *certō*¹ (w. *cum* and abl.).
contentedly, *aequō animō*.
contention, *contentiō*, -ōnis, F.
continue, *maneō*.²
contradictory, *contrārius*, -a,
-um, adj.
contribute, *cōfērō*.
control, (supreme) *imperium*,
-ī, N.
convene, (= call) *vocō*.¹
convey, (in a body) *comportō*¹ ;
— **across**, *trādūcō*.³
convict, *convincō*, -ere, -vici,
victus (w. gen. of the crime).
convince, *persuādeō*² (w. dat.
pers.).
Corinth, *Corinthus*, -ī, F.
corner, *angulus*, -ī, M.
Cotta, *Cotta*, -ae, M.
council, *concilium*, -ī, N.
country, (= native country)
patria, -ae, F.; (= land) *ager*, -grī,
M.; (= territories) *finēs*, -ium, M.
(pl. of *finis*); (opp. city) *rūs*,
rūris, N.; (= commonwealth) *rēs*
pública, *rēi públicae*; native —,
patria, -ae, F.; — districts, *agri*,
-ōrum, M. (pl. of *ager*); in the —,
rūrī (loc.).
countrymen, *civēs*, -ium (pl. of
civis); *civitās*, -ātis, F.
courage, *animus*, -ī, M.; full of
—, *animōsus*, -a, -um, adj.
course, (= plans, measures, pro-
ceedings) *cōnsilia*, -ōrum, N. (pl.
of *cōnsilium*); shameless —,
audācia, -ae, F.
cover, *tegō*.³
covetous, *appetēns*, -entis, p. a.
(w. gen.).
cowardice, *timor*, ūris, M.
craft, *ratiō*, -ōnis, F.
Crassus, *Crassus*, -ī, M.
creature, living —, *animal*,
-ālis, N.
Crete, *Crēta*, -ae, F.
crew, that —, *īsī*, -ōrum, M.
crime, *scelus* -eris, N.; (= dar-
ing, lawless crime) *facinus*, -oris, N.
criticize, (adversely) *accūsō*.¹

cross, *trānseō*.⁴
crown, (as, with glory) *honōrō*.¹
cruel, *crūdēlis*, -e, adj.
crush, (= break in pieces)
frangō; (= overpower) *opprimō*.³
custody, *custōdia*, -ae, F.
custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, M.
cut, — off, *excipiō*³; — off,
(from supplies) *prohibeo*² (w. acc.
and abl.).

Cyrus, *Cyrus*, -ī, M.

D.

daily, *cottidiānus*, -a, -um, adj.
damage, *noceō*² (w. dat.).
danger, *perīculum*, -ī, N.
dangerous, *perīculōsus*, -a, -um,
adj.
dare, *audeō*.²
dart, *tēlum*, -ī, N.
daughter, *filia*, -ae, F.
day, *diēs*, gen. -ēi (-ēi, -ē), M.
(sometimes F. in sing.); on the
— before, on the preceding —,
prīdiē, adv.
dear, *cārus*, -a, -um, adj.; how
—, *quantū* (gen. of indef. value).
death, *mors*, *mortis*, F.; (as a
penalty for crime) *caput*, -ītis, N.;
put to —, *necō*¹; to condemn to
—, *capitis damnāre*.
deceive, *fallō*.³
decide, *cōstituō*.³
Decii, *Decū*, -ōrum, M.
decision, *jūdiciū*, -ī, N.
declare, *dēclārō*¹; *prōnūntiō*¹;
(= set forth) *prōpōnō*³; (of war)
indecō.³
decline, (= be unwilling) *nōlō*.
decree, *cēnseō*.²
deem, *jūdicō*¹ (w. two accs. in
act.).
deep, *altus*, -a, -um, p. a.
deeply, — move, *permōteō*.²
defeat, 1. subst., *adversum*
proelium. 2. vb., *superō*.¹
defend, *dēfēndō*.³
defence, *praesidium*, -ī, N.;
means of —, *remedium*, -ī, N.
defiance, set at —, *neglegō*.³
delay, *moror*.¹
deliberate, *dēliberō*.¹

deliver, (of an address) *ha-beō*.²

demand, *poscō*³; (= claim, demand as a right) *postulō*¹ (w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. *ab*, *ā*); (= command, order) *imperō*¹ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

Demaratus, *Dēmarātus*, -ī, M.

denarius, *dēnārius*, -ī, M.

dense, *dēnsus*, -a, -um, adj.

deny, *negō*.¹

depart, *exeō*⁴; *dēcēdō*⁸; *sēcē-dō*⁸; (= set out) *proficiscor*⁸; — to join, *proficiscor*⁸ (in (w. acc.)).

departure, *profectiō*, -ōnis, F.

depredation, *maleficium*, -ī, N.; *injūria*, -ae, F.

deprise, (= wrest from) *ēripiō*⁸ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

descend, (of birth) *orior*.⁴

description, (= kind) *genus*, -eris, N.

desert, (= be wanting, fail) *dēsum*.

deserter, *perfuga*, -ae, M.

deserve, *mereor*²; to — well of, *merērī dē*.

design, *cōnsilium*, -ī, N.

desire, 1. subst., *voluntās*, -ātis, F. 2. vb., (of voluntary desire, i.e. desire prompted by the will) *volō*; (of involuntary desire, i.e. natural inclination) *cupiō*⁸; — ardently, *exoptō*.¹

desirous, *studiōsus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.).

desperately, (= sharply, vigorously) *āriter*, adv.

despise, *dēspiciō*.⁸

destitute, *nūdus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. abl.).

destroy, (= annihilate) *dēleō*²; (= squander, ruin) *perdō*⁸ (*pereo* is used for the pass.); (= break through) *perfringō*⁸; (= cut down, e.g. a bridge) *interscindō*, -ere, -scidī, -scissus.

destruction, *perniciēs*, gen., -ī, -ies or -īe, F.; (= downfall) *obitus*, -ūs, M.

destructive, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

detail, in —, *singulātim*, adv.

deter, *dēterreō*²; to — from,

déterrēre quōminus (w. subj.).

determine, (= fix, establish)

cōstituō.⁸

devote, — one's self, *serviō*⁴ (w. dat.).

devoted, — to, *diligēns*, -entis, adj. (w. gen.).

devotion, *studium*, -ī, N.

dictates, *praescriptum*, -ī, N.

die, *moriō*, *mori* (*moriri*), *mori-tuus*; *ēmoriō*.

differ, *differō*, *differre* (the meaning *difer* appears to be confined to the pres. system); to — from one another, *inter sē dif-ferre*.

difficult, *difficilis*, -e, adj.

difficulty, with —, *aegrē* adv.; (= scarcely) *vix*; with the utmost —, *aegerrimē*, adv. (superl. of *aegrē*).

difficulties, *angustiae*, -ārum, F.

digest, *digerō*, -ere, -gessī, -ges-tus.

dignity, *priestly* —, *sacerdō-tium*, -ī, N.

diligence, *dīlignantia*, -ae, F.

diminutive, — stature, *brevi-tās*, -ātis, F.

Dionysius, *Dionȳsius*, -ī, M.

direct, (= order) *imperō*¹ (w. dat.).

direction, (= part) *paris*, *partis*, F.; (= supreme control) *imperi-um*, -ī, N.; change the — of, *convertō*.⁸

disaffection, *aliēnātiō*, -ōnis, F.

disagreement, *dissensō*, -ōnis, F.

disapprove, *reprehendō*.³

disaster, *calamitās*, -ātis, F.

discharge, *fungor*⁸ (w. abl.).

discipline, *disciplina*, -ae, F.

discuss, *disserō*⁸ (w. dē and abl.); *agō*⁸ (w. dē and abl. th., and *cum* w. abl. pers.).

dish, *sacrificial* —, *patera*, -ae, F.

dismiss, *dīmittō*⁸; (= lay aside) *dēpōnō*.⁸

dispatch, *mittō*.⁸

- display, ostendō.⁸**
dispose, — of (= sell), vēndō⁸
 (*vēneō* is used as the pass.).
disposed, cupidus, -a, -um, adj.
 (w. gen.); **favorably —, amīcus,**
 -a,-um, adj.; **be not disposed, nōlō.**
disposition, animus, -i, M.; favorable —, voluntās, -ātis, F.
dispute, contrōversia, -ae, F.
disquiet, perturbō¹; commoveō.²
disquieting, molestus, -a, -um,
 adj.
**disregard, neglegō⁸; (= despise) contemnō, -ere, -tempsi,
 -temptus.**
dissatisfied, I am —, mē paenitet,
 impers. (w. gen.).
dissension, dissensiō, -ōnis, F.
distance, intervallum, -i, N.; to a —, procul, adv.; at a — from, longē ā.
distant, be —, absum.
distress, premō.³
distribute, distribuō.⁸
district, pāgus, -i, M.; (= territory, domain), ager, -grī, M.; (= quarter, region) regiō, -ōnis, F.;
country —s, agrī, -ōrum, M.
disturb, perturbō.¹
ditch, fossa, -ae, F.
Divico, Divicō, -ōnis, M.
divine, divīnus, -a, -um, adj.
Divitiacus, Divitiacus, -i, M.
divulge, ēnūtiō.¹
do, faciō⁸; agō⁸; have to — with, pertineō² (w. ad and acc.); — away with, tollō.⁸
done, be —, fiō.
doubt, dubitō¹; there is no —, nōn est dubium (w. quīn and subj.).
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um, adj.
doubtless, profectō, adv.
down, cast —, dēmittō⁸; to lay — arms, ab armis discēdere.
drag, trahō.⁸
draw, (of a sword) ēdūcō⁸;
 (= draw apart) distrahō⁸; — near, appropinquō¹ (w. dat. or ad w. acc.); — up, instruō.⁸
dream, 1. subst., somnium, -ī, N.; vb., somniō.¹
- drink, bibō, -ere, bibī.**
drive, agō⁸; (= cast out) ēcīcō⁸; (= drive in a body) compellō⁸; — out, expellō.⁸
drug, medicamentum, -ī, N.
Dumnorix, Dumnorix, -īgis, M.
dust, pulvis, -eris, M.
duty, officium, -īū, N.
dwell, incolō.³
dwelling, tectum, -i, N.; — place, domicilium, -īū, N.
- E.**
- each, — one, quisque, quaeque, quodque (adj.) and quicque or quidque (subst.), indef. pron.; (of two) uterque, -traque, -trunque, pron.; with — other, inter se (sēsē).**
eager, alacer, -cris, -cre, adj.
eagerly, intentus, -a, -um, p. a. (in agreement w. subst.).
earlier, pristinus, -a, -um, adj.
early, (= ancient) antiquus, -a, -um, adj.
earnest, studiōsus, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.).
earnestly, press —, postulō¹ (w. acc. th. and abl. pers. w. ab. ā).
earth, — mound, tumulus, -i, M.
easily, facile, adv.; (= at random) temerē, adv.; very — (after a neg.), satis commodē, adv.
east, (= rising sun) sōl oriēns, sōlis orientis, M.
easy, very —, perfacilis, -e, adj.
Ebro, Hibērus, -i, M.
effect, to — a purpose, rem efficere, rem obtinēre.
effects, their —, n. pl. of suus, -a, -um, poss. pron.
effectually, facile, adv.
effort, opera, -ae, F.; to bestow —, operam dare (w. ut and subj.).
eight, octō, indecl. num. adj.
eighteenth, duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um or octāvus decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.
eighty, octōgintā, indecl. num. adj.

either . . . or, (when an alternative is offered) *vel . . . vel*; (when one excludes the other) *aut . . . aut*; **not . . . either . . . or**, *neque . . . neque*, *nec . . . nec*. **elect**, *désignātus*, -*i*, masc. p. a. **embankment**, *agger*, -*is*, M. **embarked**, — on, *impositus*, -*a*, -*um*, perf. part. of *impōnō* (w. *in* and acc.).

embassy, *lēgātiō*, -*ōnis*, F. **empty**, (= make vacant) *vacuē-faciō*.³

encamp, *cōnsidō*.³

end, *fīnis*, -*is*, M. (sometimes f. in sing.).

endeavor, *cōnor*¹; **to — to force** (= to attempt by force), *per vim tentāre*.

endeavors, *cōnāta*, -*ōrum*, N.

endure, *ferō*; *patior*.³

enemy, (personal) *inimicus*, -*i*, M.; (public) *hostis*, -*is*, C.; (= a hostile army) *hostēs*, -*ium*, pl. (usu., but also) *hostis*, -*is*, M., sing.

energy, *vis*, *vis*, F.; **with —, āriter**, adv.; **with the greatest —**, superl. of *āriter*.

engage, to — in battle, *proelium committere*.

engagement, (= battle) *proelium*, -*ūi*, N.; **to come to an —, proeliō dēcertāre**; **to open an —, proelium committere**.

engine, *māchinātiō*, -*ōnis*, F.

enjoy, *fruor*³ (w. abl.); (= make use of) *ūtor*³ (w. abl.).

enmity, *inimicitia*, -*ae*, F.

enough, *satis*, adv.; **well —, commode**, adv.

ensue, *sequor*.³

enterprise, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; (= business) *negōtium*, -*ūi*, N.

entire, *tōtus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

entreat, *ōrō*.¹

entreaties, *precēs*, -*um*, F. pl.

envoy, *lēgātus*, -*i*, M.

envy, 1. subst., *invidia*, -*ae*, F. 2. vb., *invideō*² (w. dat.).

Epaminondas, *Epamīnōndās*, -*ae*, M.

Eporedorix, *Eporedorix*, -*igis*, M.

equal, *pār*, *paris*, adj.; *aequus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; (= same) *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*, demonstr. pron.

equally, *juxtā*, adv.

equanimity, *aequus animus*.

erect, *ērigō*³; (of a tower) *extitō*.¹

error, *pēccātum*, -*i*, N.

escape, *effugiō*³; (= flee) *fu-giō*.³

especially, *māximē*, adv.

establish, *cōnfīrmō*.¹

established, **become firmly —, inveterāscō**, -*ere*, -*āvī*.

esteem, (= consider) *habeō*.²

eternal, *aeternus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

even, *etiam*, conj.; — to, *jam ad* (w. acc.); but —, *sed etiam*, *rērum etiam*; not —, *nē . . . quidem* (w. the emphatic word or words between *nē* and *quidem*); — **though**, *etiamsi* (w. indic. and subj., like *si*; the indic. is more common).

ever, *unquam* or *umquam*, adv.

every, *omnis*, -*e*, adj.; —, — *one*, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (adj.), and *quicque* or *quidque* (subst.), indef. pron.

every thing, *omnia* (n. pl. of *omnis*, -*e*, adj.); *cūncta* (n. pl. of *cūnctus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.).

evident, **make —, significō**¹;

it is —, appāret.²

exceed, *superō*.¹

excel, *praeſtō*¹ (w. dat.); *superō*¹ (w. acc.); *praecedō*³ (w. acc.).

except, *præter*, adv. and prep. w. acc.; (= unless) *nisi*, conj.

excessive, *nimius*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

exchange, **to —, inter sē darc**.

exclaim, *conclāmō*.¹

exculpate, *pūrgō*.¹

execute, *administrō*.¹

exercise, (= apply) *adhibeō*²;

— **partiality**, *studeō*.²

exhort, *cohortor*.¹

exile, *exsilium*, -*ūi*, N.

expectation, *opīniō*, -*ōnis*, F.;

confident —, fidūcia, -*ae*, F.

expel, *expellō*³; (= drive) *pellō*³; (= cast out) *ēiciō*³
expense, *sūmptus*, -ūs, M.
experience, 1. subst., *ūsus*, -ūs, M.; bitter —, *acerbitās*, -ātis, F.
2. vb. (= receive) *accipiō*³
experienced, *peritus*, -a, -um, p. a. (w. gen.).
explain, (= set forth) *expōnō*³.
explanation, say by way of —, *explānō*¹.
expression, *vōx*, *vōcis*, F.
extend, 1. intr., *exeō*⁴; (= lie open) *pateō*²; (= look) *spectō*¹.
2. tr. (= construct) *perdūcō*³.
extensive, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.
extreme, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl.).
eye, *oculus*, -ī, M.
eyes, in my —, *mīhi* (dat. ref.).

F.

Fabius, *Fabius*, -ī, M.
face, in the — of, *contrā*, prep. w. acc.
fact, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; in point of —, *rē* (abl. of *rēs*).
Faesulae, *Faesulae*, -ārum, F.
fall, 1. intr., *dēsum*. 2. tr. and intr., *dēficiō*³. 3. tr., *dēserō*³.
faint-hearted = of feeble courage; see **feeble** and **courage**.
faithful, *fidus*, -a, -um, adj.
fall, (of javelins) *accidō*³; (= fall together, fall with a crash) *corrō*; — upon, (= chance upon) *incidō*³ (w. in and acc.).
family, (= stock, race) *genus*, -eris, N.
famous, (= that) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.
fancy, *arbitror*¹.
Fannius, *Fannius*, -ī, M.
far, *longē*, adv.; by —, *longē*, adv.; too —, *longius*, adv. (comp. of *longē*).
farm, *redimō*³.
farther, *ūterior*, -ius, adj.
fast, make —, *dēstinō*¹.
father, *pater*, -tris, M.; *genitor*, -ōris, M.

father-in-law, *socer*, -erī, M.
fault, *culpa*, -ae, F.
favor, *faveō*² (w. dat.).
favorable, (= good) *bonus*, -a, -um, adj.; — **disposition**, *voluntās*, -ātis, F.
favorableness, *opportūnitās*, -ātis, F.
favorably, — **disposed**, *amicus*, -a, -um, adj.
fear, 1. subst., *metus*, -ūs, M.; *timor*, -ōris, M. 2. vb., *timeō*²; *metuō*³; *vereor*²; **paralyze with** —, *perterreō*².
fearing (pres. part.), *veritus*, -a, -um (perf. part. of *vereor*).
feeble, *infirmus*, -a, -um, adj.
fellow, — **citizen**, *cīvis*, -is, C.
fertile, *ferax*, -ācis, adj.
few, *pauci*, -ae, -a, adj.; a — **words**, *pauca*, -ōrum, N.
field, *ager*, -gri, M.
fifteen, *quīndecim*, indecl. num. adj.
fifty, *quīnquāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.
fight, 1. subst., *pūgna*, -ae, F.
2. vb., *pūgnō*¹; *cōfligō*³.
fighting, *pūgna*, -ae, F.; (= battle) *proelium*, -ī, N.
figure, (= body) *corpus*, -ōris, N.
fill, *compleō*²; (= fill full, crowd) *referciō*⁴.
find, (by search or inquiry) *reperiō*⁴; — **out**, (= trace out) *investigō*⁴.
finish, *cōnficiō*³.
fir, *abiēs*, -etis, F.
fire, *ignis*, -is, M.
firmly, become — established, *inveterāscō*, -ere, -āvi.
first, *primus*, -a, -um, adj.; *prīnum*, adv.; for the — time, *prīnum*, adv.; at —, *prīmō*, adv.
five, *quīnque*, indecl. num. adj.; in groups of —, *quīnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.
five hundred, *quīngentī*, -ae, -a, num. adj.
fix, (= value, appraise) *aestimō*¹.
flattery, *adsentātiō*, -ōnis, F.
flee, *fugio*³; (= flee forth) *pro-*

fugiō⁸; (= flee back) *refugiō⁸* ;
to — for *refuge*, *sē recipere*.

fleet, *clāssis*, *-is*, F.

flight, *suga*, *-ae*, F.

float, *ratis*, *-is*, F.

flock, *concurrō³*.

flow, (= flow into) *influō⁸* (w. in and acc.).

follow, *sequor⁸*; (= follow close upon) *insequor⁸* (w. acc.).

following, **posterus*, *-era*, *-erum*, adj.; (= that about to be mentioned) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.; (= of this sort) *hūjusce modī*.

follows, as —, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr. pron.; *sic*, adv.; substantially as —, *hūjusce modī*.

folly, (= infatuation, madness) *dēmentia*, *-ae*, F.; (= absence of reason) *āmentia*, *-ae*, F.; **insane** —, *furor*, *-ōris*, M.

fond, — of, *studīosus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj. (w. gen.); (= desirous of) *cupidus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj. (w. gen.).

food, *cibus*, *-i*, M.

foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, M.

foot-soldier, *pedes*, *-itis*, M.

for, *nam*, conj. (begins the sentence or clause); *enīm*, conj. (follows the first word or closely associated words); (= from) *dē*, prep. w. abl.: as, *quā dē causā*, **for what reason**; (= in behalf of) *prō*, prep. w. abl.; (= towards) *ergā*, prep. w. acc.; (= during) sign of acc. of duration of time; (= concerning) *dē*, prep. w. abl.; (= into) *in*, prep. w. acc.: as, **to depart for**, *proficiō* *in*; (expressing purpose) *ad*, prep. w. acc. (of gerund or gerundive); (expressing adaptation w. *idōneus*) *ad*, prep. w. acc., also dat.; (= on account of) *ob*, prep. w. acc.

forage, *frūmentor¹*.

force, (= strength, violence) *vis*, *vis*, F.; (= armed force, band) *manus*, *-ūs*, F.; (= a multitude) *multitūdō*, *-inis*, F.; **to endeavor to** —, *per vim tentāre*.

forced, (= the greatest possible) *quam māximus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

forces, *cōpiae*, *-ārum*, F.

foremost, *prīnceps*, *-ipis*, adj.;

— man, *prīnceps*, *-ipis*, M.; — place, *prīncipātus*, *-us*, M.; to be —, *plūrīmū valēre*.

foresee, *praevideō²*

foreshadow, *canō*, *-ere*, *cecīnī*.

forest, *silva*, *-ae*, F.

forever, *perpetuō*, adv.

forget, *oblīscor³* (w. gen., or [w. neut. pron.] acc.).

form, *faciō³*; (of a design) *capiō⁸*; to — (= to collect themselves), *sē configere*.

former, *vetus*, *-eris*, adj.; the —, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.

forsake, (= withdraw from) *discēdō⁸* (w. ab and abl.); (= lay aside) *dēpōnō⁸*.

forth, set —, *prōpōnō⁸*.

fortify, *mūniō⁴*.

fortunate, *fortūnātus*, *-a*, *-um*, p. a.

fortune, *fortūna*, *-ae*, F.

forty, *quadrāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

forward, *go* —, *exeō⁴*; **move** —, *prōmoveō²*.

founded, — in right, *jūstus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

four, *quattuor*, indecl. num. adj.; — each, *quaternī*, *-ae*, *-a*, distr. num. adj.

fourteenth, *quartus decimus*, *-a*, *-um* or *decimus et quartus*, *-a*, *-um*, ord. num. adj.

fourth, *quartus*, *-a*, *-um*, ord. num. adj.

fraught, — with danger, *peri culōsus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

free, *liber*, *-era*, *-erum*, adj.; — from, *vacuus*, *-a*, *-um* (w. ab or ā and abl.); — from suspicion, *pūrgātus*, *-a*, *-um*, p. a.; — town, *mūnicipiūm*, *-ū*, N.; vb., *liberō¹*.

freedom, *libertās*, *-ātis*, F.

frequent, *crēber*, *-bra*, *-brum*, adj.

friend, *amicus*, *-i*, M.

friendly, *amicus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, F.; (= favor) *grātia*, -ae, F.

from, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; (= away from) *ab* (before vowels and some consonants), *ā* (before consonants only), *abs* (sometimes before *tē*), prep. w. abl.; (= out of) *ex*, *ē*, prep. w. abl.; (after verbs of hindering) *quōminus*, *nē*, (also, when there is a neg. expressed or implied w. the vb.) *quīn* (w. subj.).

front, in — of, *prō*, prep. w. abl.

frost, *frīgus*, -oris, N.

fruit, *frūctus*, -ūs, M.

full, *plēnus*, -a, -um, adj. (w. gen.); — of courage, *animōsus*, -a, -um, adj.

Furius, *Fūrius*, -ū, M.

furnished, — with saddles, *ephīpiātus*, -a, -um, adj.

further, (= furthermore) *autem*, conj. (placed not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one or more words); (= oftener, more) *saepeius*, adv.

future, *futūrus*, -a, -um, p. a.; the —, *futūra*, -ōrum, N.; at some — time, *aliquandō*, adv.

G.

Gabinius, *Gabīnius*, -ū, M.

gain, — access, *adeō*.⁴

Gajus, C. (abbr. of *Gājus*, *Gāī*, M.).

Galba, *Galba*, -ae, M.

Gallic, *Gallicus*, -a, -um, adj.

game, *ferīna carō* (*ferīnus*, -a, -um, of wild animals; *carō*, *carnis*, F., flesh).

garrison, *praesidium*, -ū, N.

gate, *porta*, -ae, F.

gather, — themselves, *congregō*¹ (in pass.).

Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae, F.

Gauls, *Gallī*, -ōrum, M.; of the —, *Gallicus*, -a, -um, adj.

gaze, — on, *intueor*² (w. acc.).

general, *commūnis*, -e, adj.; (= military commander) *imprātor*, -ōris, M.; in —, *omnīnō*, adv.

generally, — speaking, *plērunque*, adv.; it is — understood, *cōstat*, impers.

generosity, *beneficium*, -ū, N.

Geneva, *Genāva*, -ae, F.; lake —, *lacus Lemannus*, -ī, M.

Germans, *Germānī*, -ōrum, M.

get, — together, *cōfērō*.

girl, *puella*, -ae, F.

give, *dō*; (= deliver) *trādō*³;

to — battle, *proelium committere*.

glance, — at, *adspicīō*³

glorious, *praeclārus*, -a, -um, adj.

glory, *glōria*, -ae, F.

go, *eō*⁴; (= set out) *proficiscor*⁸; (= go apart) *sēcēdō*³; go, — away, *abeō*⁴; go, — out: *exeō*⁴; *ēgredior*³; — away (= go out), *exeō*⁴; — forward, *exeō*⁴; — over, *trānseō*⁴

god, *deus*, -ī, M.

good, *bonus*, -a, -um, adj.; — will, *grātia*, -ae, F.; it seems —, *placet*,² impers. (w. dat.).

govern, *imperō*¹ (w. dat.).

gradually, *paulātim*, adv.

grain, (= harvested grain), *frūmentum*, -ī, N.; (= standing grain) *frūmenta*, -ōrum, N.; *rēs frūmentaria*.

grandfather, *avus*, -ī, M.

grant, *dō*.

gratifying, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.

great, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.; how —, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.; so —, *tantus*, -a, -um, adj.; in — numbers (= crowded), *frequēns*, -entis, adj.; a — many, *complūrēs*, -a (-ia), adj.

greatest, *māximus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *māgnus*); *summus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *superus*); — possible, *quam māximus* (w. or without the proper fm. of *possum*).

grievous, *gravis*, -e, adj.

ground, *humus*, -ī, F.; (= earth) *terra*, -ae, F.; rising —, *tumulus*, -ī, M.; — of suspicion, *suspīcio*, -ōnis, F.; maintain one's —, *subsistō*³; to give — for, *praebeō*²

groups, in — of five, quīnī, -ae,
-a, distr. num. adj.; **in — of six, sēni, -ae, -a,** distr. num. adj.

guard, custōs, -ōdis, c.; (= garrison) **praesidium, -ī, N.;** **be on one's —, caveō.²**

H.

habitation, sēdēs, -is, F.

Hamilcar, Hamilcar, -aris, M.

hand, manus, -ūs, F.; **at —, praestō, adv.**

Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, M.

happen, accidō³; (= become, be done) **fīō.**

happy, beātus, -a, -um, p. a.

harass, premō³; **exagitō.¹**

haste, make —, contendō³

hasten, mātūrō¹; **contendō³;**

properō.¹

hate, ōdī, def.

hatred, cherish —, ōdī, def.

have, habeō²; **sum** (w. dat. of possession); **— to do with, pertineō²** (w. ad and acc.).

he, (= that man) ille; (weaker than *ille*) **is;** (emphatic, = himself) **ipse;** (in indir. disc. referring to principal subject) **sē;** omitted when implied in the ending of the vb.

head, caput, -itis, N.; (= chief man) **princeps, -ipis, M.**

headlong, praeceps, -ipitis, adj.

headstrong, temerārius, -a, -um, adj.

health, valētūdō, -inis, F.

hear, audiō⁴; (= hear from a distance or hear distinctly) **exaudiō⁴;** (= receive by communication from others) **acciō³.**

heaven, caelum, -ī, N.

heavily, graviter, adv.

height, altitūdō, -inis, F.

heinous, so —, tantus, -a, -um, adj.

help, auxilium, -ī, N.; I cannot —, **facere nōn possum** (w. *quīn* and subj.).

Helvetians, Helvētī, -ōrum, M.

Helvetii, Helvētī, -ōrum, M.

hem, — in, contineō² (w. acc.).

hence, hinc, adv.

Hercules, by —, mehercule.

here, be —, adsum.

herself, (reflex.) sē.

hesitate, dubitō.¹

Hesperia, Hesperia, -ae, F.

high, altus, -a, -um, p. a.; (= great) **māgnus, -a, -um, adj.**

higher, superior, -ius, adj. (comp. of *superus*).

highest, summus, -a, -um, adj.; (superl. of *superus*); **at the — possible price, quam plūrimō.**

highly, māgnī (gen. of indef. value).

hill, collis, -is, M.

himself, (reflex.) sē; (emphatic) **ipse** (alone or in apposition w. the reflex. *sē*).

hinder, impediō.⁴

hire, condūcō.³

his, ējus (gen. of *is*); (referring to the subject) **suus, -a, -um, poss. pron.;** — own, **suus, -a, -um, poss. pron.;** omitted when the context shows who is meant.

hither, cīterior, -ius, adj.

hold, teneō²; **obtineō²;** — off, **abstineō²;** (= regard, consider) **habeō².**

home, domus, -ūs, F.; **at —, domī;** from —, **domō.**

honor, honor, -ōris, M.; personal —, **modestia, -ae, F.**

honorable, honestus, -a, -um, adj.

hope, spēs, -ēi (-ēī), F.

horse, equus, -ī, M.; (= horsemen) **equitēs, -um, M.**

horseman, eques, -itis, M.

hostage, obses, -idis, C.

hostile, inimicus, -a, -um, adj.

hour, hōra, -ae, F.

house, domus, -ūs, F.; **at the — of, apud, prep. w. acc.**

how, quam, adv.; — great, **quantus, -a, -um, adj.;** — much, **quantus, -a, -um, adj.;** — dear, **quantī (gen. indef. value);** — long: **quam diū, adv.;** (= how far) **quousque, adv.**

however, quamvis, adv.; (= nevertheless) **tamen, conj.**

hundred, *centum*, indecl. num.
adj.; **two** —, *ducenti*, -ae, -a, num.
adj.; **three** —, *trecenti*, -ae, -a,
num. adj.; **six** —, *sēscēnti*, -ae, -a,
num. adj.

hundredth, *centēsimus*, -a, -um,
ord. num. adj.

I.

I, *ego*, *meī*, pers. pron.
Iccius, *Iccius*, -ī, M.
Idleness, *ignāvia*, -ae, F.
if, *sī*; — **not**, *sī nōn*; — **not**
(= unless) *nisi*; — **only**, *dum*,
conj. (w. subj.).
ignominiously, *tūrpiter*, adv.
ill, *aeger*, -gra, -grum, adj.
illustrious, *clārus*, -a, -um, adj.;
amplus, -a, -um, adj.
imagine, (= think) *existimō*.
immortal, *immortālis*, -e, adj.
impede, *impediō*; to — the
army's march, *itinere exercitūm*
prohibēre.

implore, *obsecrō*¹; *implōrō*.
import, *importō*¹; *inferō*.

importance, of the highest
—, *summus*, -a, -um, adj. (superl.
of *superus*); it is of — : *interest*,
impers.

important, it is — : *interest*;
rēfert, -ferre, -tulit.

in, *in*, prep. w. abl.; (after a
superl.) sign of the gen.; (=
into) *in*, prep. w. acc.: in breadth,
in width, *in lātitūdinem*; in
length, *in longitūdinem*; to be
—, *inesse* (w. dat.); to vie —,
certāre dē (w. abl.); — the rear,
ā *novissimō agmine*, *ab novissi-
mis*; — my eyes, *mīhi* (dat. ref.);
— that he, *quī* (= *cum is*) w.
subj.

inasmuch, — as, *quoniam*,
conj.; sign of abl. abs. denoting
cause.

incident, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*),
F.

inclination, to restrain one's
— to, *sibi temperāre quīn* (w.
subj.).

increase, *amplificō*¹; *augeō*².

incur, *adeō*⁴ (w. acc.).

indeed, *quidem* (follows the
word that it emphasizes), adv.;
(introducing a corroborative or
a parenthetical clause) *etenim*,
conj.

indignity, *contumēlia*, -ae, F.

indulge, *indulgeō*² (w. dat.).

industry, *industria*, -ae, F.

inexperience, *inscientia*, -ae, F.

infamy, *infāmia*, -ae, F.

infantry, *cōpiae pedestrēs* (pe-
destr., -tris, -tre, adj.).

inflict, *sūmō*³; to — punishment
on: *supplicium sūmēre dē*
(w. abl.); *vindicāre in* (w. acc.).

influence, *auctōritās*, -ātis, F.;
(arising from good will) *grātia*,
-ae, F.; of great —, *potēns*, -entis,
adj.; to have very little —, *min-
imum posse*; to have very great
—, *largiter posse*.

inform, *certōrem faciō*⁸; be
informed, *certior fīō*; thoroughly —,
*ēdoceō*² (w. two accs. in
act.).

infuse, *īferō* (w. acc. th. and
dat. pers.).

inhabit, *incolō*³ (w. acc.).

inhabitants, (= people) *homī-
nēs*, -um, M.

injure, *noceō*² (w. dat.).

injury, *īnjūria*, -ae, F.; without
risk of —, *sine fraude*.

innocent, *innocēns*, -entis, adj.

inquire, *quaerō*³ (w. acc. th.,
and abl. pers. w. ab, dē, or ex.).

inquiry, make —, *quaerō*³

insane, — folly, *fūrō*, -ōris, M.

institution, *īstitūtūm*, -ī, N.

instruction, (= commission,
injunction) *mandātūm*, -ī, N.

intellect, *īgeniūm*, -ī, N.

intelligence, receive — of,
*cōgnōscō*³ (w. dē and abl.).

intend, *esse ī animō* (w. dat.
pers.).

intention, it is one's —, *alicui
est ī animō*.

intercession, at the — of, *dē-
precātor*, -ōris, M. (abl. abs.).

intercessor, *dēprecātor*, -ōris, M.

interval, *intervallum*, *-ī*, N.; place at intervals, *dispōnō*³

intervene, *intercedō*³

intimacy, *ūsus*, *-ūs*, M.

into, *in*, prep. w. acc.

intrust, *mandō*¹; *trādō*³

inured, — to, *patiēns*, *-entis*, p.

a. (w. gen.).

iron-hearted, so —, *ille ferreus* (*-a*, *-um*).

issue, to bring to a successful —, *bene gerere*.

it, is, ea, id, pron.; omitted if implied in the ending of the verb or understood from the context.

Italy, *Italia*, *-ae*, F.

its, (referring to the subject) *suus*, *-a*, *-um*, poss. pron.

itself, (intens.) *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, demonstr. pron.

J.

January, of —, *Jānuārius*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

join, *jungō*, *-ere*, *jūnxi*, *jūnctus*; to — battle, *proelium committere*; depart to —, *profiscor*³ (w. *in* and acc.).

Juba, *Juba*, *-ae*, M.

Judge, *jūdex*, *-icis*, C.

judgment, pass — upon, *sen-tiō*⁴ (w. *dē* and abl.).

jugerum, *jugerum*, *-ī*, N.; in pl., *jugera*, *-um*, N.

Jugurtha, *Jugurtha*, *-ae*, M.

Julian, *Jūliānius*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

Jupiter, *Jūppiter*, *Jovis*, M.

Jura, *Jūra*, *-ae*, M.

just, *jūstus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

K.

Kalends, *Kalendae*, *-ārum*, F.

keep, *teneō*²; (= keep together, confine) *contineō*²; — back, *teneō*²; — apart, — asunder, *distineō*²; — one's word, *fidem servō*¹

keeping, *fidēs*, gen., *-ēi* (-*ēi*, *-ē*), F.

kill, *interficiō*³; (by cutting or striking down) *occidō*³

kind, (= sort) *genus*, *-eris*, N.

learn

king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.

kingdom, *rēgnum*, *-ī*, N.

kinsmen, *cōsanguinei*, *-ōrum*, M.

knight, *eques*, *-itis*, M.

know, *sciō*⁴; (= understand)

*intellegō*³; not —: *ignōrō*¹; *ne-sciō*⁴

known, *nōtus*, *-a*, *-um*, p. a.; *cōgnitus*, *-a*, *-um*, p. a.; **make** —, *ostendō*³

L.

Labienus, *Labienus*, *-ī*, M.

Lacedaemon, *Lacedaemōn*, *-onis*, F.

lack, *egeō*² (w. gen. or abl.).

Laea, *Laeca*, *-ae*, M.

lake, *lacus*, *-ūs*, M.

land, *ager*, *-grī*, M.; **by** —, *terrā*.

language, *lingua*, *-ae*, F.; (= phraseology) *ōrātiō*, *-ōnis*, F.

large, *māgnus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.; *amplus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.; **so** —, *tan-tus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

last, (= nearest, as in 'last night') *proximus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.; (= remotest) *extrēmus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

lasting, *perpetuus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.

latter, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr.

pron.

lavish, *profūsus*, *-a*, *-um*, p. a.

law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, F.

lawful, **it is** —, *licet*,² impers. (w. dat. pers.).

lay, — **claim to**, *repetō*³; to — **down arms**, *ab armis discēdere*;

— **waste**, *vastō*¹; — **aside**, *dēpō-nō*³; to — **the matter before**, *referre ad*.

lead, *dūcō*³; — **across**, *trādū-cō*³ (may take two accs.); — **out**, *ēdūcō*³; — **away**, *abdūcō*³;

— **against**, *addūcō*³ (w. *ad* and acc.).

leader, *dux*, *ducis*, C.; (= foremost man) *princeps*, *-ipis*, M.

league, **unite in a sworn** —, *conjūrō*¹

learn, *discō*³; (= become acquainted with) *cōgnōscō*³; (= find out by search or inquiry) *re-periō*⁴;

(by looking at, examining) *perspicio*³

least, — of all, *minimē*, adv.
leave, *relinquō*³; — behind,
***relinquō*³.**

left, *sinister*, -*tra*, -*trum*, adj.;
on the —, *sinister*; be —, *super-*
***sum*.**

legion, *legiō*, -*nis*, F.

length, in —, in *longitūdinem*.

less, *minor*, -*us*, adj.; (adv.)
***minus*.**

lest, *nē* (w. subj.).

let, — loose, *ēmittō*³.

letter, *epistula*, -*ae*, F.

level, *coaequō*¹.

liberty, one is at —, *licet*² (w.
dat. and inf. or *ut* w. subj.).

lie, — prostrate, *jaceō*².

lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.

life, *vita*, -*ae*, F.; (with ref. to its
several stages, as boyhood, youth,
etc.) *aetās*, -*atis*, F.; (= [manner
of] living) *victus*, -*us*, M.

light, (subst.) *lūx*, *lūcis*, F.;
(adj.) *levis*, -*e*; to make — of,
***parvī pendere* (w. acc.).**

lightning, strike by —, *dē cæ-*
***lō percūtiō*, -*ere*, -*cussī*, -*cussus*.**

line, (= line of battle) *aciēs*,
gen. -*ē* and -*ēi*, F.; — of march,
***iter*, *itineris*, N.**

lip, *labrum*, -ī, N.

list, *ratiō*, -*nis*, F.

listen, *audiō*⁴.

little, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; very
—, *minimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; *minimē*,
adv.; a — (= by a little) *paulō*.

live, *vivō*³.

living, — creature, *animal*,
-*ālis*, N.

long, *longus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; (=
for a long time) *diū*, adv., *longē*,
adv.; how —, *quam diū*, adv.;
(= how far) *quousque*, adv.; —
ago, *jampridēm*, adv.

longer, (= for a longer time)
***diūtius*, adv., *longius*, adv.**

look, (= look at) *adspiciō*³; —
for, *exspectō*¹.

loose, let —, *ēmittō*³.

lose, *āmittō*³.

loss, *dētrimentum*, -ī, N.; to
risk the — of, *āmittere*.

lot, (= fortune) *fortūna*, -*ae*,
F.; (= condition) *condicō*, -*nis*,
F.

love, 1. subst., *amor*, -*oris*, M.
2. vb., *amō*¹; (= esteem highly)
***diligō*³.**

low, *humilis*, -*e*, adj.

lower, *inferior*, -*ius*, adj.

Lucius, *lūcius*, -ī, M., abbr. *L.*
luxury, *luxuria*, -*ae*, F.

Lycomedes, *Lycomēdēs*, -*is*, M.

Lysander, *Lysander*, -*dri*, M.

M.

made, be —, *fīō*.

magistracy, *magistrātūs*, -*us*, M.

maiden, *virgō*, -*inis*, F.

main, — question, *sententia*,
-*ae*, F.

maintain, (of one's rights) *ex-*
sequor*³; — one's position, *cōn-
***sistō*³; — one's ground, (=**
withstand) *subsistō*³; the fight
was maintained, *pūgnātūm est*.

majority, *mājor pars*.

make, *faciō*³; (= render) *effi-*
***cō*³; (= choose, elect, appoint)**
***creō*¹; (of a speech) *habeō*²; —**
for, *petō*³; — out (of a list)
***cōficiō*³.**

man, (= human being, and so
including woman) *homo*, -*inis*, C.;
(= an adult male person; opp.
mulier, woman) *vir*, *virī*, M.; (=
man of noble qualities) *vir*, *viri*,
M.

manage, *administrō*¹.

Manilius, *Mānilius*, -ī, M.

maniple, *manipulus*, -ī, M.

Manlius, *Manlius*, -ī, M.

many, *multī*, -*ae*, -*a*, adj.; a
great —, very —, *complūrēs*, -*a*
(-ia), gen. -*ium*, adj.; so —, tot,
indecl. adj.; so — things, *ita*
***multa*.**

Marcellus, *Mārcellus*, -ī, M.

march, 1. subst., *iter*, *itineris*,
N.; line of —, *iter*, *itineris*, N. 2.
vb., *iter faciō*³.

Marches, (= frontiers) *finēs*,

-*ium*, M.

marching, *iter*, *itineris*, N.

Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M., abbr. *M.*
maritime, maritimus, -a, -um, adj.
Marius, Marius, -ī, M.
mark, — out, mētor.¹
marriage, to give in —: nūptum (sup.) dare; contocō¹ (w. or without nūptum).
marry, (of the woman) nūbō³; see also marriage.
Marseilles, from —, Massiliēnsis, -e, adj.
marsh, palūs, -ūdis, F.
mass, — meeting, cōntiō, -ōnis, F.
massacre, caedēs, -is, F.
Massiva, Massīva, -ae, M.
master, magister, -tri, M.; dominus, -ī, M.
match, to be a — for, pār (gen. paris) esse; — against, obiciō³ (w. acc. and dat.).
matter, (= thing) rēs, gen. rēi (rēi, rē), F.
matters, it —, interest, rē fert or rēfert; (subst.) rēs, rērum, F.
me, to — (= in my estimation), apud mē.
mean, to —, sibi velle (see volō).
means, (= resources) facultātēs, -um, F. (pl.); — of defence, remedium, -ī, N.; by no —, mīnē, adv.
meantime, (of an event extending through the interval) interēā, adv.; (of an event occurring within the interval) interim, adv.
meanwhile, interim, adv.; interēā, adv. See also meantime.
measure, (= thing) rēs, gen. rēi (rēi, rē), F.
Medea, Mēdēa, -ae, F.
meet, to —, (w. vbs. of motion) obviam, adv.
meeting, mass —, cōntiō, -ōnis, F.
memory, memoria, -ae, F.; cherish the — of, meminī, def.
men, (w. poss. pron.) omitted: as, our —, nostri, -ōrum, M.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, M.
mere, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demonstr. pron.

merely, sōlum, adv.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
Messalla, Messälla, -ae, M.
mid, — summer, media aestās (-ātis, F.).
middle, — of, medius, -a, -um, adj.
midst, medius, -a, -um, adj.; through the — of them, per mediōs.
mile, mille passūs; mille passuum.
miles, mīlia (millia) passuum; mīlia (sc. passuum).
military, mīlitāris, -e, adj.; — tribune, tribūnus mīlitum.
milk, lac, lactis, N.
mind, animus, -ī, M.; ingenium, -ī, N.; mēns, mentis, F.; (= purpose, intention) mēns, mentis, F.; call to —, recordor¹ (usu. w. acc.); recall to —, reminiscor, -ī (w. gen.; also w. acc.). When reminiscor and recordor are distinguished, the former means 'recall to mind,' the latter 'reflect on' or 'review.'
mindful, memor, -oris, adj. (w. gen.).
mischief, maleficiūm, -ī, N.
misery, malum, -ī, N.
misfortune, fortūna, -ae, F. (the misfortune is here implied in the context).
miss, dēsiderō.¹
mistakes, make —, peccō¹; to make the same —, eadem peccāre.
mob, multitūdō, -inis, F.
mock, ēlūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus.
mode, cōsuētūdō, -inis, F.; (= kind) genus, -eris, N.
modestly, modestē, adv.
moment, (= time) tempus, -oris, N.; at the — when, tum cum; for the —, jam, adv.
moon, lūna, -ae, F.
Moor, Maurus, -ī, M.
Moorish, Maurus, -a, -um, adj.
morally, — bad, improbus, -a, -um, adj.
morals, mōrēs, -um, M. (pl.).
more, magis, adv.; (of quan-

tity) *plūs*, comp. adj. used subst. (w. part. gen.); (frequently w. expressions of number) *amplius*, adv.

Morini, *Morini*, -ōrum, M.
mortification, *dolor*, -ōris, M.
most, — people, *plērius*, adj. used subst.

mother, *māter*, -*tris*, F.
mound, earth —, *tumulus*, -*i*, M.

mount, *mōns*, *montis*, M.
mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, M.
move, *moveō*²; — forward, *prōmoveō*²; — deeply, *permōveō*²; to — on, *pergere hinc*.

movement, (= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.

much, *multus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; very —, *plūrimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; (adv. = by much) *multō*; how —, *quantus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

multitude, *multitūdō*, -*inis*, F.
music, *mūsicē*, -*ēs*, F.
my, *meus*, -*a*, -*um*, poss. pron.; — own, *meus*; it is — pleasure, *mīhi placet*; for — part, *evidēm*, adv.

myself, oblique case of *ego*, *mei*, pers. pron.

N.

name, *nōmen*, -*inis*, N.
named, (= by name) *nōmine*.
Nantuates, *Nāntuātēs*, -*um*, M.
Naples, *Neāpolis*, -*is*, F.
naturally, *nātūrā* (abl.).
nature, *nātūra*, -*ae*, F.
near, *ad*, prep. w. acc.
nearest, *proximus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
nearly, *fērē*, adv.

necessary, *opus*, N., used as nom. and acc. only (w. dat. pers. and abl. th.).

need, *opus*, N. (see foregoing word); (vb.) *indigeō*² (w. gen. or abl.).

neglect, *neglegō*³
neighbors, *fīnitimī*, -*ōrum*, M. (adj. used subst.).

neighboring, *fīnitimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; (= nearest) *proximus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.

neither, *neque*, nec, conj.; — party, *neutrī*, -*ōrum*, M.

Nero, *Nerō*, -*ōnis*, M.
Nervii, *Nervī*, -*ōrum*, M.
never, *nunquam* or *numquam*, adv.

nevertheless, *tamen*, conj.
new, *novus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
next, *proximus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
night, *nox*, *noctis*, F.
night-fall, (= first part of the night) *prīma nox* (gen. *noctis*, F.).

ninth, *nōnus*, -*a*, -*um*, ord. num. adj.

no, *nūllus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.; (emphatic) *nēmō* (used adj.); (= not) *nōn*, adv.; — one: *nēmō* (see *nēmō* in Latin-English vocabulary); *nūllus*, -*ius* (adj. used subst.); — one but, *nēmō nisi*; by — means, *minimē*, adv. (superl.).

nobility, *nōbilitās*, -*atis*, F.

noble, *nōbilis*, -*e*, adj.; subst., *nōbilis*, -*is*, M.

nor, *neque*, nec, conj.
north, *septentriō*, -*ōnis*, M.
north-east, see 'north' and 'east.'

not, *nōn*, adv.; *haud*, adv. (usu. w. adverbs; also w. *sciō*); (= less) *minus*, adv.; (in questions implying an affirmative answer) *nōnne*, interrog. particle; and —, *neque*, nec, conj.; that —, not (in final, hortatory, imperat., and optative clauses) *nē*; that — any, that no (in final and imperat. clauses), *nē quī*, *qua* or *quae*, *quod*, indef. adj.; not . . . either . . . or, *neque* . . . *neque*.

note, *animadverbō*³
nothing, *nihil* or *nīl*, N., def.; *nūlla rēs*; — but, *nihil nisi*.

now, *nunc*, adv.; *jam*, adv.
Numantia, *Numantia*, -*ae*, F.
number, *numerus*, -*i*, M.

numbers, great —, *māgnae cōpiae* (-*ārum*), F.; in great —, *frēquēns*, -*entis*, adj.

numerous, *crēber*, -*bra*, -*brum*, adj.

Numidians, *Numidae*, -*ōrum*, M.

O.**O, oh, ō,** interj.**obedience, yield —, pāreō, -ērō, -ūi.****obey, pāreō²** (w. dat.).**object¹, recūsō¹; to — to, re-**
rūsāre dē (w. abl.).**object, rēs, gen. rēi (rēi, rē), F.****obscurity, obscuritās, -ātis, F.****observe, animadvertō.³****obtain, obtineō²** (w. acc.); (= prepare) comparō¹; (= obtain possession of) potior⁴ (w. abl.; also w. gen.); — a request, impetrō.¹**occur, accidō³; fiō.****Octodurus, Octōdūrus, -ī, M.****odds, struggle against —, labōrō.¹****Oedipus, Oedipūs, -odis or -ī, M.****of, sign of gen.; (= about, concerning) dē, prep. w. abl.; (= from) ab, ā, ex, ē, dē, preps. w. abl.; out —, ex, ē, prep. w. abl.****off, to come —, sē inde recipere; to come — conqueror, superior discēdere; carry —, abducō³; cut —: excipiō³; (from supplies) prohibeō² (w. acc. and abl.); ward — from, propulsō¹ (w. ab, ā and abl.); hold —, abstineō²****offence, rēs, gen. rēi (rēi, rē), F.****offer, — resistance, resistō.³****office, (= duty, function) mūnus, -eris, N.****often, saepe, adv.****oftentimes, saepenumerō, adv.****old, vetus, -eris, adj.; — man, senex, senis, M.****old age, senectūs, -ūtis, F.****on, in, prep. w. abl.; (designating the point from which) ab, ā, ex, ē, preps. w. abl.; (= concerning) dē, prep. w. abl.; (= against) in, prep. w. acc.; (= from this place) hinc, adv.; On! agite (imperat.); (in expressions of time) sign of abl. of time.****once, quondam, adv.; at — (= at one time) unō tempore.****one, ūnus, -a, -um, num adj.; (of two) alter, -era, -erum; (w. subs. pl. in form, but sing. in****our****meaning) ūnī, -ae, -a (pl. of ūnus); — by —, singulī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.; this — thing, id ūnum; one ... another, aliū ... aliū; at one time ... at another, aliās ... aliās.****one's self, sūi, sīlī, sē (sēsē), reflexive pron.; devote —, servō⁴ (w. dat.).****only, (= altogether, in all) omnīnō, adv.; if —, dum, conj. (w. subj.); the — one, ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj.; not only ... but also, et ... et, nōn modo or nōn sōlūm ... sed etiam or vērum etiam; and not only ... but also, neque sōlūm ... sed etiam.****onset, impetus, -ūs, M.****open, laxō¹; to — an engagement, proelium committere.****openly, aperīē, adv.****opinion, sententia, -ae, F.; opīniō, -ōnis, F.****opportune, opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.****opportunity, occasiō, -ōnis, F.; facultās, -ātis, F.****opposed, diversus, -a, -um, adj.****or, aut, conj.; either ... or: (when a choice is offered) vel ... vel; (when one excludes the other) aut ... aut; not ... either ... or, neque ... neque.****orator, ḥrātor, -ōris, M.****order, 1. subst., imperium, -ūi, N. 2. vb., jubeō (w. infin.). 3. conj., in — to: ut (w. subj.); (w. comp.) quō (w. subj.).****Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -igis, M.****other, aliū, -a, -ud, adj. and subst.; some ... others, pars ... aliū; (= the rest of) ceterī, -ae, -a, adj.(usu. pl.); with each —, inter sē; some ... the others, alterī ... alterī; others', aliēnus, -a, -um, adj.****ought, dēbeō²; oportet,² impers. (w. acc. and infin. as subject; also w. subj. clause).****our, — own, noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.; — men, — party, nostrī, -ōrum, M.**

out, — *of*, *ex*, -ē, prep. w. abl.
outcry, *vōx*, *vōcīs*, F.
outstretch, *pandō*.⁸
over, see 'go' or 'step.'
overcome, — **with terror**, *per-*
terreō.²
overlook, *condōnō*.¹
overwhelm, *opprimō*.⁸
owing, — *to*, *propter*, prep. w.
 acc.
own, **his** —, **their** —, *suus*, -a,
-um, poss. pron.; **our** —, *noster*,
-tra, *-trum*, poss. pron.; **my** —,
meus, -a, -um, poss. pron.

P.

pace, *passus*, -ūs, M.
pain, *dolor*, -ōris, M.
pains, *opera*, -ae, F.
panic, **there is a** —, *trepidātūr*.
paralyze, — **with fear**, *per-*
terreō.²
pardon, *ignōscō*.⁸
parent, *parēns*, -entis, C.
Parmenio, *Parmeniō*, -ōnis, M.
part, *pars*, *partis*, F.; **for my**
—, *equidem*, adv.; **take in**, *in-*
tersum (w. dat.).
partiality, *exercise* —, *studeō*.²
party, *pars*, *partis*, F.; **our** —,
nostrī, -ōrum, M.
pass, *effluō*, -ere, -xi; — **judg-**
ment upon, *sentiō*.⁴ (w. dē and
 abl.); — **round**, *circumferō*; —
through, *trānseō*.⁴
passage, *iter*, *itineris*, N.
passion, **give way to** —, *irā-*
scor.⁸
passionate, *irācundus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
past, **the** —, *praeterita*, -ōrum,
 N., p. a. used subst.
path, **by a circuitous** —, *in*
circuitū.
patience, *patientia*, -ae, F.
patrimony, *rēs familiāris*, adj.
patriotism, *amor patriae*.
pay, — **respects to**, *salūtō*.¹
peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, F.
Pelusium, *Pēlūsiūm*, -ī, N.
penalty, *poena*, -ae, F.; (= fine)
līs, *lūtis*, F.

penetrate, — *to*, *adeō*.⁴ (w. *ad*
 and acc.).
penetrating, *ācer*, -ōris, -cre,
 adj.
people, *populus*, -ī, M.; **com-**
mon —, *plēbs*, -is, F.; **most** —,
plērique, M. pl. adj. used subst.
perceive, *animum advertō* or
animadverto.³ (w. acc.); *perspiciō*.³
perform, *praestō*.¹ (w. acc.).
peril, *periculum*, -ī, N.
perilous, *periculōsus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
period, *tempus*, -ōris, N.
permit, *patior*.⁸
permitted, **it is** —, *licet*.² im-
 pers. (w. dat. pers.).
pernicious, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
persevere, — *in*, *cōfirmō*.¹
personally, **he**, **they**, etc. —,
 proper form of *ipse*.
persons, **these same** —, *īdem*
 (masc. pl.), demonstr. pron.
persuade, *persuādeō*.² (w. dat.
 pers.).
Picene, *Picēnus*, -a, -um, adj.
pile, *tīgnūm*, -ī, N.
pilot, *gubernātor*, -ōris, M.
Piso, *Pisō*, -ōnis, M.
pitch, *pōnō*.⁸
pitiable, *miser*, -era, -erum, adj.
pity, *misereor*.² (w. gen.).
place, 1. subst., *locus*, -ī, M.; in
 pl. (usually) *loca*, -ōrum, N.; **in**
that —, *ibī*, adv.; **to some** —, *ali-*
quō, adv.; **take** —, *fīō*. 2. vb.,
pōnō.⁸; *conlocō*.¹
plan, *cōnsilium*, -ī, N.
pleasant, *grātus*, -a, -um, adj.
please, *dēlectō*.¹; (= wish,
 choose) *volō*.
pleasure, **it is one's** —, *placet*.²
 impers. (w. dat. pers.).
point, **to that** —, *eō*, adv.; **in**
— of fact, *rē*; **to make a** — **of**,
dare operam ut (w. subj.); —
out, *expōnō*.⁸
policy, *cōsilia*, -ī, N.
political, — **power**, *potentia*,
-ae, F.
Pompey, *Pompējus*, *Pompēi*, M.

- Pontus, Pontus, -i, M.**
poor, *pauper*, *-eris*, adj.
popular, (= acceptable) *accep-*
tus, *-a*, *-um*, p. a.
population, *hominum numerus*,
-i, M.
position, (= place) *locus*, -i, M.;
take —, maintain one's —, *cō-*
sistō.³
possess, *possideō*.²
possession, *possessiō*, -ōnis, F.;
obtain — of, *potior*⁴ (w. abl.;
also w. gen.); take — of, seize,
*occupō*¹ (w. acc.).
possible, possibly, (w. superl.)
quam, adv. (w. or without proper
fm. of *possum*); it is —, (= it is
permitted) *licet*,² impers. (w. dat.
pers.).
post, *cōnstituō*³; be posted,
cōnsistō.³
posterity, *posteri*, -ōrum, M.
(adj. used subst.).
poverty, *inopia*, -ae, F.
power, *potestās*, -ātis, F.
powerful, *potēns*, -entis, adj.;
to be very —, *largiter posse*.
practice, *cōsuētūdō*, -inis, F.;
(= training) *exercitatiō*, -ōnis, F.
praetor, *praetor*, -ōris, M.
praise, *laudō*.
pray (exclam.), *tandem*, adv.
precautions, take special —,
magnopere praeceavō (ēre, -cāvi,
-cautus).
preceding, *superior*, -ius, adj.
comp.; on the — day, *pridiē*,
adv.
prefer, *antepōnō*³ (w. acc. and
dat.); (= wish rather) *mālō*.
preoccupation, *cōgītatiō*, -ōnis,
F.
preparare, *parō*.¹
presence, *praesentia*, -ae, F.
present, *praesens*, -entis, adj.;
the —, *praesentia*, -ium, neut. pl.
adj. used subst.; be —, *adsum*.
preserve, *cōservō*.¹
preserved, *salvus*, -a, -um, adj.
press, — earnestly, *postulō*¹
(w. acc. th., and abl. pers. w. ab,
ā).
- prevail, — upon, *persuādeō*²
(w. dat. pers.).
prevent, *prohibeō*.²
price, at the highest possible
—, *quam plūrimō*.
priestly, — dignity, *sacerdō-*
tium, -ī, N.
principle, recognized —, *jūs*,
jūris, N.
private, — citizen, *privātus*, -i, M.
M. (p. a. used subst.); — re-
sources, *rēs familiāris*.
Procillus, *Procillus*, -i, M.
proclaim, (= declare, pro-
nounce) *jūdicō*.¹
produce, *frūctus*, -ūs, M.
progress, be in —, *fīō*.
promise, *polliceor*.²
proper, it is —, *oportet*,² impers.
prophetess, prophet, *vātēs*, -is,
C.
prospect, *spēs*, gen. *spēi* (ēi), F.
prosperous, *flōrens*, -entis, p. a.
prostrate, lie —, *jaceō*.²
protect, *mūtiō*⁴; *circummū-*
*niō*⁴; — from, *prohibeō*² (w. ab
and abl.).
protection, *praesidium*, -ī, N.
provide, *prōvideō*.²
provided, *dum*, *dummodo* (w.
subj.).
province, *prōvincia*, -ae, F.
provisions, *rēs frūmentāria*.
provocation, without —, *in-*
jūriā.
public, *pūblicus*, -a, -um, adj.;
— enemy, *hostis*, -is, C.
punish, *pūniō*.⁴
punishment, *supplicium*, -ī, N.;
(= expiation or penalty)
pena, -ae, F.
pupil, *discipulus*, -i, M.
purificatory, — sacrifice, *lū-*
strum, -ī, N.
purpose, *mēns*, *mentis*, F.; (=
wish) *voluntās*, -ātis, F.; for the
— of, *causā* (w. gen. preceding);
(= thing) *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.
pursue, *sequor*.³
put, — aside, *dēpōnō*³; — to
death, *necō*¹; — to flight, *in su-*
gam coniciō.³

Q.

quantity, a great — of, *ingēns, -entis*, adj.

quarter, (= part, direction) *pars, partis*, F.

quarters, winter —, *hibernā, -ōrum*, N.; at close —, *communus*, adv.

quest, go in — of, *petō*.³

question, main —, *sententia, -ae*, F.

quickly, *celeriter*, adv.

quiet, be —, *quiēscō*.³

quietly, *modestē*, adv.

quite, *plānē*, adv.

R.

race, *genus, -eris*, N.; (= people) *populus, -i*, M.

raid, to make a — on, *sē ēicere* (w. in and acc.).

raise, *exstruō*.³

rampart, *vällum, -i*, N.

rank, *ōrdō, -inis*, M.; (= nobility) *nōbilitās, -atis*, F.; of high —, *nōbilis, -e*, adj.

rapidly, *strēnuē*, adv.

rate, at any —, *certē*, adv.

rather, (w. an adj.) sign of comp.; choose —, *malō*.

reach, *ēvādō, -ere, -sī, -sus* (w. in and acc.).

readily, *facile*, adv.

rear, *novissimum agmen, -inis*, N.; in the —: *ab novissimis; ā novissimō agmine*.

reason, *causa, -ae*, F.; for what —, *quā dē causā*.

recall, — to mind, *reminiscor, -i* (w. gen.; also w. acc.); (= withdraw) *dēducō*.³

recalling, (= mindful of) *memor, -oris*, adj. (w. gen.).

receive, *acciō*.³; (= take) *capio*.³

recent, *recēns, -entis*, adj.

recklessly, *temerē*, adv.

recklessness, *audācia, -ae*, F.

recognized, — principle, *jūs, jūris*, N.

recollection, *animus, -i*, M.

recompense, *remūneror*.¹

recount, *memorō*.¹; *commemorō*.¹

recourse, have — to, *dēcendō*.⁸ (w. ad and acc.); *dēclinō*.¹ (w. ad and acc.).

recover, to — (intr.), *sē recipere*; (from illness) *convalescō, -ere, -ui*.

redoubt, *castellum, -i*, N.

reduce, *redigō*.³

reënforcement, *subsidiūm, -ii*, N.

reference, make — to, *referō* (w. ad and acc.).

reflect, — on, *recordor*.¹ (usu. w. acc.).

refrain, — from, *temperō* (w. ab and abl.).

refuge, to flee for —, *sē recipere*.

refuse, *recūsō*.¹; to — to : *recūsārē quōminus* or *quīn* (w. subj.); also *recūsārē* w. infin.; to — to pay, *recūsārē dē* (w. abl.).

regard, (= consider) *habeō*.²; (= respect, heed) *spectō*.¹; have — for, *cōsulō*.³ (w. dat.).

region, *regiō, -ōnis*, F.

regret, *paenitēt*.² impers. (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).

reject, *repudiō*.¹

release, *līberō*.¹ (w. acc. and abl.).

relief, *subsidiūm, -ii*, N.

relieve, (= succor) *sublevō*.¹ (w. acc.); (= set free) *līberō*.¹

remain, *maneō*.²; (= stay behind) *remaneō*.²; (= stay through) *permaneō*.²; (= be) *sum*.

remaining, *reliquus, -a, -um*, adj.

Reman, *Rēmus, -i*, M.

remarkable, (= great) *māgnus, -a, -um*, adj.

remember, *meminī*, def. (w. gen.; also w. acc.); *memoriā teneō*.²

remembrance, *memoria, -ae*, F.

Remi, *Rēmī, -ōrum*, M.

remind, *admoneō*.² (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.; also abl. th. w. dē).

remiss, be —, *dēsum*.

remotest, — part of, *extremus*,
-a, -um, adj.
remove, *removeō*²; (= move to
a distance) *āmoveō*²; (= do away
with, destroy) *tollō*.³
render, *efficiō*³; (= bring) *ferō*.
renew, *renovō*.¹
renown, of the highest —,
clārissimus, -a, -um, adj.
reparation, make —, *satisfac-
tiō*³ (w. dat.).
repel, *dēfendō*.³
repent, *paenitēt*,² impers. (w.
acc. pers. and gen. th.).
reply, tell in —, *respondeō*.³
report, *nūntiō*¹; (= divulge)
*ēnuntiō*¹; (= bring back word)
renuntiō.¹
reprobate, *improbus*, -a, -um,
adj.
reputation, *opīniō*, -ōnis, f.
request, obtain a —, *impetrō*.¹
require, *egeō*² (w. gen. or abl.).
requisition, make a — for, *im-
perō*¹ (w. acc. and dat.).
rescue, *ēripiō*.³
resist, *resistō*.³
resistance, offer —, *resistō*.³
resolve, *cōstituō*.³
resources, *opēs*, -um, f.; (=
private resources) *rēs familiāris*.
respect, *spectō*¹; *observō*.¹
respects, pay — to, *salūtō*.¹
respond, *respondeō*.²
rest, the — of, *reliquis*, -a,
-um, adj.; the —: *reliqui*, -ōrum,
masc. adj. used subst.; *cēteri*,
-ōrum, masc. adj. used subst.; set
at —, *compōnō*³; (vb.) *requiēscō*,
-ere, -ēvi, -ētus (adj.).
restore, *reddō*³; *restituō*.³
restrain, to — one's inclina-
tion, *sibi temperāre quīn* (w. subj.).
result, the — is, *fit* (*fiō*).
results, it —, *fit* (*fiō*).
retain, *retineō*.²
retard, *tardō*.¹
return, 1. intr., *revertō*³; *re-
vertor*³; *redeō*.⁴ 2. tr.; *reddō*³
revenue, *vectigal*, -ālis, n.
review, *recordor*¹ (usu. w. acc.);
recōgnōscō.³

saddles

revile, *carpō*.³
revolt, — from, *dēsciscō*³ (w.
ab or ā and abl.).
reward, *praemium*, -ī, n.
Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.
Rhone, *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.
riches, *āvitiae*, -ārum, f.
ridge, *jugum*, -ī, n.
right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum, also
-tera, -terum, adj.
ripe, *mātūrus*, -a, -um, adj.
rise, *orior*⁴ (w. some fms. of the
3d conjugation).
rising, *ortus*, -ūs, m.; — **ground**,
tumulus, -ī, m.
risk, *periculum*, -ī, n.; — the
loss of, *āmittō*³; without — of
injury, *sine fraude*.
river, *fūmen*, -inis, n.
road, *iter*, *itineris*, n.; (= the
travelled road) *via*, -ae, f.
rob, *exspoliō*¹ (w. acc. and abl.).
rock, *rūpēs*, -is, f.
Roman, *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, adj.
Romans, *Rōmānī*, -ōrum, m.
Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, f.
room, *locus*, -ī, m.
rough, *asper*, -era, -erum, adj.
round, pass —, *circumferō*.
rout, (= drive before one's
self) *prōpellō*, -ere, -pulī, *pulsus*;
(= throw into confusion) *per-
turbō*.¹
route, *iter*, *itineris*, n.
royal, *rēgius*, -a, -um, adj.
rugged, *asper*, -era, -erum, adj.
ruinous, *perniciōsus*, -a, -um,
adj.
rule, *regō*.³
rush, make a —, *concūrrō*.³

S.

Sabinus, *Sabīnus*, -ī, m.
sacrifice, 1. subst., *supplīcia*,
-ōrum, n.; purificatory —, *lū-
strum*, -ī, n. 2. vb., (of victims)
*imolō*¹; (= lose) *āmittō*.³
sacrificial, — dish, *patera*, -ae,
f.
sad, *tristis*, -e, adj.
saddles, furnished with —,
ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj.

- sadly**, (= sad) *tristis*, -e, adj.
safe, *savus*, -a, -um, adj.
safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, F.
sail, *nāvīgō*.¹
sailor, *nauta*, -ae, M.
sake, for the — of, *causā* (w. gen. preceding).
Sambre, *Sabis*, -is, M. (acc. -im; abl. -i).
same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, demonstr. pron.; these — persons, *idem* (pl. masc.); at the — time, *simul*, adv.
Santones, *Santonēs*, -um, M.
sate, *explēō*.²
satisfaction, give —, *satisfaciō*³ (w. dat.).
satisfy, *explēō*.²
savage, *barbarus*, -a, -um, adj.
say, *dicō*³; says he, *inquit* (placed after one or more words of a direct quotation); — not, *negō*.¹
Scipio, *Scipiō*, -ōnis, M.
sea, *mare*, -is, N.; (w. ref. to the surface) *aequor*, -oris, N.; by —: *marī*; (adj.) *maritimus*, -a, -um.
search, *quaerō*.³
season, winter —, *brūma*, -ae,
F.
second, *secundus*, -a, -um, adj.; a — time, *iterum*, adv.
secondly, *deinde*, adv.
secret, in —, *occultō*, adv.
secure, *mūniō*⁴; make —, *mūniō*⁴; strive to —, *appetō*.³
see, *videō*²; *cernō*³; (= descry) *cōspiciō*³; (= provide or see to) *prōvideō*.²
seek, *petō*³; — after, *appetō*.³
seem, *videor*.²
seems, it — good, *placet*,² impers.
Segusiavi, *Segūsiāvi*, -ōrum, M.
seize, (= grasp firmly) *compre-*
*hendō*³; (= take away) *dētrahō*³ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.); (= take possession of) *occupō*.¹
select, *dēligō*.³
Sena, *Sēna*, -ae, F.
senate, *senātus*, -ūs, M.
- senator**, *senātor*, -ōris, M.
send, *mittō*³; — **forward**, — in advance, *praemittō*³; — **back**, *remittō*³; — **for**, *arcēsō*.³
separate, *dividō*³; *sēcernō*.³
Sequani, *Sēquani*, -ōrum, M.
Sequanian, *Sēquanius*, -a, -um, adj.
serve, to — as, *esse* (w. dat.).
service, *beneficiū*, -ī, N.
services, *opera*, -āe, F.
serviceable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.
Servius, *Servius*, -ī, M.
set, — up, *cōnstituō*³; — out, *proficiscor*³; — forth, *prōpōnō*³; — at rest, *compōnō*.³
setting, *occāsus*, -ūs, M.
settle, (of disputes) *compōnō*.³
sever, — themselves, pass. of *discernō*, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus.
several, *complūrēs*, -a (-ia), gen. -ium, adj.
severe, *gravis*, -e, adj.
severely, *graviter*, adv.; *vehementer*, adv.
shake, *concutiō*, -ere, -cussi, -cussus.
shameless, — course, *audācia*, -ae, F.
shames, it —, *pudet*² (w. acc. pers. and gen. th.).
shape, *figūra*, -ae, F.
shave, *rādō*, -ere, -sī, -sus.
she, *ea* (fem. of *is*); omitted when implied in the context.
shed, *vīnea*, -ae, F.
shield, *scūtum*, -ī, N.
ship, *nāvis*, -is, F.; — of war, *nāvis longa*.
shipwreck, *naufragium*, -ī, N.
shore, (of the sea) *lītus*, -oris,
N.
short, *brevis*, -e, adj.
shortest, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.
shouting, *clāmor*, -ōris, M.
show, *ostendō*³; *doceō*.²
shrink, — from, *dēprecō*.¹
shudder, — at, *perhorrēscō*, -ere, -horruī.
shut, — up, *clausus*, -a, -um, p. a.

sick, *aeger*, *-gra*, *-grum*, adj.
 side, *latus*, *-ris*, N.; (= part)
pars; *partis*, F.
 sight, *cōspectus*, *-ūs*, M.; (= eyes) *oculī*, *-ōrum*, M.; catch — of, *cōspiciō*.⁸
 signal, *signum*, *-i*, N.
Silanus, *Silānus*, *-i*, M.
 similar, *similis*, *-e*, adj.
 since, *quoniam*, conj.; *cum*, conj. (w. subj.).
 single, *singulī*, *-ae*, *-a*, distr. num. adj.; a —, *ūnus*, *-a*, *-um*, num. adj.
 site, *locus*, *-i*, M.
 six, *sex*, indecl. num. adj.
 sixty, *sexāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.
 skilled, *peritus*, *-a*, *-um*, p. a. (w. gen.).
 skillful, *peritus*, *-a*, *-um*, p. a. (w. gen.).
 skin, *pellis*, *-is*, F.
 slaughter, *caedēs*, *-is*, F.
 slave, *servus*, *-i*, M.
 slavery, *seruitus*, *-ūtis*, F.
 slaves, *familia*, *-ae*, F.; *servitium*, *-ūtī*, N. (in sing. or pl.).
 slay, *occidō*.⁸
 sleep, (= rest) *requiescō*, *-ere*, *-ētī*, *-ētus* (adj.).
 slight, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.; *mediocris*, *-e*, adj.
 sloping, *dēclivis*, *-e*, adj.
 small, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj.; (= low) *humilis*, *-e*, adj.
 smaller, *minor*, *-us*, adj.
 smoke, *fūmus*, *-i*, M.
 so, *sic*, adv.; *ita*, adv.; *tam*, adv.; and —, *itaque*, conj.; so . . . that, *sic* or *ita* . . . *utī* or *ut* (w. subj.); so . . . as, *tam* . . . *quam*.
 soil, *ager*, *-grī*, M.
 soldier, *mīles*, *-itis*, M.; common —, *mīles*, *-itis*, M.; foot —, *pedes*, *-itis*, M.
 solicit, *postulō*.¹
 solicitude, *kind* —, *voluntās*, *-ātis*, F.
 solitude, *sōlitūdō*, *-inis*, F.
 some, *aliquī*, *aliqua*, *aliquid*,

indef. adj. pron.; — one, — thing, *aliquis*, *aliquid*, indef. pron.; some (pl.), *aliquī*, *quīdam*; some . . . others, *alii* or *pars* . . . *alii*; some . . . the others (the whole number being made up of two parties), *alterī* . . . *alterī*; to — place, *aliqūd*, adv.
 son, *fīlius*, *-i*, M.
 son-in-law, *gener*, *-erī*, M.
 soon, as — as, *simul atque*, *ubī* *prīmū*.
 sooner, *celerius*, adv.; *mātūrīus*, adv.
 sorry, I am —, *mē miseret*,² impers. (w. gen.).
 sort, of such a —, *ējus modī*.
 source, (= head) *caput*, *-itis*, N.
 sovereign, — power, — authority, *rēgnūm*, *-i*, N.
 space, *spatium*, *-ūtī*, N.
 spare, 1. vb., *parcō*⁸ (w. dat.).
 2. adj., *exiguus*, *-a*, *-um*.
 speak, *loquor*⁸; *dicō*.⁸
 speaking, generally —, *plērūmque*, adv.
 special, (= specially) *māgnopere*, adv.
 speed, *celeritās*, *-ātis*, F.
 speedily, *celeriter*, adv.
 speedy, *celer*, *-erīs*, *-ere*, adj.
 spend, — the winter, *hiemō*.¹
 spirit, *animus*, *-i*, M.
 spiritless, *iners*, *-ertis*, adj.
 spring, *vēr*, *vēris*, N.
 Spurius, *Spurīus*, *-i*, M., abbr. *Sp.*
 squander, *profundō*, *-ere*, *-fūdī*, *fūsus*.
 stable, *fīrmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
 stage, *gradus*, *-ūs*, M.
 stand, (= keep erect) *stō*.¹
 stand, make a —, *cōsistō*⁸; — by, *adsum* (w. dat.).
 standards, *signa*, *-ōrum*, N.
 state, *cīvitās*, *-ātis*, F.; *rēs pūblica*, *rēi pūblicae*, F.
 Statilius, *Statilius*, *-i*, M.
 station, *cōstituō*⁸; *conlocō*.¹
 stature, *statūra*, *-ae*, F.; diminutive —, *brevitās*, *-ātis*, F.
 steadfastness, *cōstantia*, *-ae*, F.

stealthily, *fūrtim*, adv.
 steep, (= high) *altus*, -a, -um,
 p. a.
 steer, *gubernō*.¹
 step, — over, *trānsgressus*, -i,
-gressus (w. acc.).
 stern, *puppis*, -is, F.
 still, (= nevertheless) *tamen*,
 conj.
 stimulate, *excitō*.
 stone, *saxum*, -i, N.
 stores, *cōpias*, -arum, F.
 storm, *tempestās*, -ātis, F.
 story, *tabulātum*, -i, N.
 strange, *mīrus*, -a, -um, adj.;
 (= new) *novus*, -a, -um, adj.
 stratagem, *cōnsilium*, -ii, N.
 strengthen, *corrōborō*.¹
 stretch, *tendō*.³
 strife, (of political parties)
studium, -ii, N.
 strike, (by lightning) *percutiō*,
-ere, -cussi, -cussus.
 strive, — to secure, *appetō*.⁸
 strong, so — a, *tantus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
 struggle, 1. subst., *contentiō*,
-ōnis, F. 2. vb., — against odds,
labōrō.¹
 subject, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*),
 F.; (= tributary) *stipendiārius*, -a,
 -um, adj.
 submit, *serviō*⁴ (w. dat.); —
 to: *patiō*⁸; *subeō*⁴ (w. acc.).
 subsist, *vescorō*⁸ (w. abl.).
 substantially, (= almost) *ferē*,
 adv.; — as follows, *hūjuscē
 modi*.
 successful, *secundus*, -a, -um,
 adj.; bring to a — issue, *bene
 gerō*.⁸
 succession, in —, *continuus*, -a,
 -um, adj.
 successive, *continuus*, -a, -um,
 adj.
 such, *tālis*, -e, adj.; *is*, *ea*, *id*,
 demonstr. pron.; of — a sort,
ējus modi; (= so great) *tantus*,
 -a, -um, adj.
 sudden, *repentīnus*, -a, -um, adj.
 suddenly, *subitō*, adv.; *repente*,
 adv.

Suebi, *Suēbī*, -ōrum, M.
 Suessions, *Suēsiōnēs*, -um, M.
 suffer, *patiō*.³
 sufferable, *ferendus*, -a, -um
 (ger. of *ferō*).
 sufficient, *satis* (w. part. gen.);
 — time, *spatiū*, -i, N.
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.
 (w. ad and acc., or w. dat.; also
 w. rel. clause containing subj.).
 Sulla, *Sūlla*, -ae, M.; of —, *Sūlānus*, -a, -um, adj.
 sum, *summa*, -ae, F.
 summer, *aestās*, -ātis, F.; mid
 —, *media aestās*.
 summit, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.
 summon, *ēvocō*.¹
 sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, M.
 sunrise, *ortus sōlis* (*ortus*, -ūs,
 M.).
 sunset, *sōlis occāsus*, -ūs, M.
 supplication, in —, *supplex*,
-icis, adj.
 supplies, *commeātus*, -ūs, M.
 supply, *cōpia*, -ae, F.
 support, send to the — of,
*submittō*⁸ (w. dat. pers.); come
 to the — of, *subveniō*⁴ (w. dat.).
 suppose, (ironical) *crēdō*⁸; (=
 believe) *crēdō*⁸; (= think) *existi-
 mō*¹; (= judge) *jūdicō*.¹
 supremacy, *principātus*, -ūs, M.
 supreme, — authority, *impe-
 riūm*, -ii, N.
 surpass, *superō*.¹
 surrender, *trādō*⁸; *dēdō*.⁸
 surround, *circumstō*.¹
 suspicion, (= opinion) *opīniō*,
-ōnis, F.; ground of —, *suspiciō*,
-ōnis, F.; free from —, *pūrgātus*,
 -a, -um, p. a.
 sustain, *sustineō*²; *tolerō*.¹
 Swabians, *Suēbī*, -ōrum, M.
 sway, *imperium*, -ii, N.
 swear, *jūrō*.¹
 swift, *celer*, -eris, -ere, adj.;
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj.
 swiftness, *celeritās*, -ātis, F.
 sword, *gladius*, -ii, M.; *ferrum*,
 -i, N.
 sworn, unite in a — league,
conjūrō.¹

T.

take, *captō³*; (= lead out) *ēdūcō³*; — from or away, *adimō³* or *ēripiō³* (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).

talent, *talentum*, -ī, N.

talk, — of, *dīcō³*.

Tarquinii, *Tarquinū*, -ōrum, M. **task**, **take to** —: *incūsō¹* (w. acc.); *accūsō¹* (w. acc.).

teach, *doceō²* (w. two accs.).

teacher, *magister*, -trī, M.; *praeceptor*, -ōris, M.

tear, *lacrima*, -ae, F.

tell, — in reply, *respondeō²*

tempest, *tempetās*, -ātis, F.

temple, *templum*, -ī, N.

ten, **decem**, indecl. num. adj.; — each, *dēnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

territory, *finēs*, -ium, M.

terror, overcome with —, *perterreō²*

Teueri, *Teucrī*, -ōrum, M.

than, *quam*.

thanks, *grātiae*, -ārum, F.

that, *ille*, -a, -ud, demonstr. pron.; (weaker than *ille*) *is*, *ea*, *id*, demonstr. pron.; (= that of yours) *iste*, -a, -ud, demonstr. pron.; (stronger than *iste*) *iste tuus*; (contemptuous) *iste*, -a, -ud; — **one**, *ille*; (= who or which) *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron.; (in final clauses): *ut*, *utī* (w. subj.); (w. comp.) *quō* (w. subj.); — **not**, *nē* (w. subj.); (in clauses of result) *ut*, *utī* (w. subj.); (after neg. expressions or interrog. expressions implying a neg.) *quīn* (w. subj.); (after verbs of fearing) *nē* (w. subj.); **would** —, *uti-nam* (w. opt. subj.); **in** — **the**, *quī* (= *cum is*) w. subj.

the . . . the, *quō* . . . *eō*.

Thebes, *Thēbae*, -ārum, F.

their, (referring to the subject) — **own**, *suus*, -a, -um, poss. pron.; (= of them, of these) *ēorum*, *ēarum* (gen. pl. of *is*); omitted

when readily understood from the context.

them, (pers. pron.) proper fm. of *is*, *ea*, *id*.

themselves, (reflex.) *sūi*, *sibī*, *sē* or *sēsē*; (intens.) *ipsī*, -ae, -a.

then, (of time) *tum*, adv.; (= secondly) *deinde* (pronounced: *de'inde*), adv.; (of inference or transition) *igitur*, conj. (usu. follows the first word of the sent.).

thence, *inde*, adv.

there, *ibi*, adv.; (= thither) *eō* or *illō*, adv.

therefore, *quā rē*; *proinde* (pronounced: *pro'inde*), adv.

these, pl. of *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; (weaker) pl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*; — **things**, *haec*; **these . . . those**, *hī* . . . *illī*.

they, (emphatic, = they themselves), *ipsī*.

thing, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.; this one —, *id* *ūnum*.

think, *putō¹*; (of a personal opinion) *opīnor¹*; (= reckon, consider) *existimō¹*; (= ponder, reflect on) *cōgitō¹*; (= feel, be sensible of) *sentīō⁴*; (= judge) *jūdicō¹*; (of an official opinion, as of a senator) *cēnseō²*.

third, *tertius*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

thirst, *sitis*, -is, F.

thirteenth, (of a month) *Idūs*, -um, F.

thirty, *trīgintā*, indecl. num. adj.

this, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, demonstr. pron.; (weaker than *hic*) *is*, *ea*, *id*, demonstr. pron.; (= which) *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron.; — **man**, *hic*; — **one thing**, *id* *ūnum*.

thither, *eō*, adv.

thoroughly, — **inform**, — **train**, *ēdoceō²* (w. two accs.).

those, pl. of *ille*; (= those of yours) pl. of *iste*; (contemptuous) pl. of *iste*; (ant. of rel.) pl. of *is*; [those] **who**, *quī*; **these . . . those**, *hī* . . . *illī*.

though, *quamvis* (w. subj.); *licet* (w. subj.); **even** —, *etiamsi* (w. indic. and subj. like *si*; the indic. is more common).

thought, **take — for**, *cōsulō*⁸ (w. dat.).

thousand, *mille*, indecl. adj.; also *mille* (as nom. and acc. sing.), subst. (w. part. gen.); in pl., *milia* or *millia*, subst. (w. part. gen.).

threaten, *minitor*¹ (w. dat. pers. and abl. or acc. th.).

three, *trēs, tria*, num. adj.; (w. substs. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning) *trīnī*, -ae, -a.

through, *per*, prep. w. acc.

throughout, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.

throw, (= throw to, as of a javelin) *adicio*, -ere, -jēcī, -jectus; — away, *ēmittō*⁸; — away (of on opportunity) *āmittō*⁸.

thus, *ita*, adv.

tides, *maritimī aestūs*.

Tigurine, *Tigurinus*, -a, -um, adj.

timber, *māteria*, -ae, F.

time, *tempus*, -oris, N.; (= season) *tempestās*, -ātis, F.; **at any —**, at some —, *aliquandō*, adv.; **at the same —**, *simul*, adv.; **at that —**, *tum*, adv.; **up to this —**, *adhūc*, adv.; **at one time . . . at another**, *aliās . . . aliās*.

tithes, *decimae*, -ārum, F.

Titurius, *Titūrius*, -ī, M.

Titus, *Titus*, -ī, M., abbr. *T.*

to, sign of dat.; (w. expressions of motion) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; (= into) *in*, prep. w. acc.; (expressing purpose) *ut* or (w. comp.) *quō* w. subj.

together, (= in company) *ūnā*, adv.; — with, *ūnā cum* (w. abl.); (= in succession) *continuus*, -a, -um, adj.; **come —**, *conveniō*⁴; **get —** (tr.), *cōferō*; **call —**, *convocō*¹; **to join —** (tr.), *inter sē jungere*.

toil, *labor*, -oris, M.

too, (before an adj.) sign of comp.; (= also) *etiam*; (= excessively) *nīmis*, adv.

topmost, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.

Torquatus, *Torquātus*, -ī, M.

total, *sum* —, *summa om̄nīum*.

Toulouse, *Tolōsa*, -ae, F.

towards, *ergā*, prep. w. acc.;

(= into or against) *in*, prep. w. acc. ; — **the setting**, *sub occāsum*.

tower, *turris*, -is, F.

town, *oppidū*, -ī, N.; **free —**,

mūnicipū, -ī, N.; **belonging to the —**, *oppidānus*, -a, -um, adj.

trader, *mercātor*, -ōris, M.

train, *exerceō*.²

transport, *trānsportō*.¹

treat, *agō*.⁸

Treveri, *Tréverī*, -ōrum, M.

trial, *periculum*, -ī, N.; **without —**, *indemnātus*, -a, -um, adj.

tribune, *tribūnus*, -ī, M.

tributary, *vectigālis*, -e, adj.

tribute, *stipendium*, -ī, N.

troops, *cōpiae*, -ārum, F.

trouble, *molestia*, -ae, F.

Troy, *Trōja*, -ae, F.

true, *vērus*, -a, -um, adj.

truly, *vērē*, adv.

trumpet, *tuba*, -ae, F.

truth, *vēritās*, -ātis, F.

try, *tentō*¹ or *temptō*.

tumult, *tumultus*, -īs, M.

twelfth, *duodecimus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

twelve, *duodecim*, indecl. num. adj.

twenty, *vīgintī*, indecl. num. adj.; — **sixth**, *sextus et vīcēsimus* or *vīcēsimus sextus*, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.

two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, num adj.; (w. substs. pl. in form, but sing. in meaning) *bīnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.; — **each**, — **and —**, *bīnī*, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.

tyrant, *tyrannus*, -ī, M.

U.

Ubil, *Ubū*, -ōrum, M.

unable, **be —**, *nōn possum*.

unacquainted, — **with**, *ignā-*

rus, -a, -um (w. gen.).

under, (w. vb. of rest) *sub*, prep. w. abl.; (w. vb. of motion)

sub, prep. w. acc.; — **arms**, *in armis*.
understand, *intellegō*.³
understood, it is generally —, *cōstat*.¹
undertake, *suscipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus; (= prepare) *parō*.¹
undertaking, (= work) *opus*, -eris, N.
unfair, *iniquus*, -a, -um, adj.
unfavorable, *alienus*, -a, -um, adj.
unfortunate, *miser*, -era, -erum, adj.
unharmed, *incolumis*, -e, adj.
uninjured, *incolumis*, -e, adj.
uninterrupted, *continuus*, -a, -um, adj.
unite, *conjungō*.³ (w. acc. and dat. or *cum* w. abl.).
unjustly, *injūstē*, adv.
unless, *nisi*, conj.
unmoved, *firmus*, -a, -um, adj.
unparalleled, *singulāris*, -e, adj.
unreasonable, *iniquus*, -a, -um, adj.
unsuccessful, *adversus*, -a, -um, p. a.
until, (= up to) *ad*, prep. w. acc.; *dum*, *quoad*, conj.; (= before) *antequam*, *priusquam*, adv.
unwilling, *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.; be —, *nōlō*.
up, see verb or other prominent word of the phrase.
upbraid, *incūsō*.¹ (w. acc.).
upon, see verb or other prominent word of the phrase.
upper, *superior*, -ius, adj.
urge, *hortor*.¹; — *to*, *hortor*.¹ (w. *ut* and subj.); — *on*, *impellō*.³
use, *ūtor*.³ (w. abl.); (= be wont) *soleō*.²; to — **force**, *vim facere*.
useful, (= for use) *ūsuī*.
usual, as —, *ex cōsuētudine*.
Utica, *Uticā*, -ae, F.
utmost, sign of superl.
utterly, sign of superl.

V.

Vaga, *Vaga*, -ae, F.
vain, in —, *nēquīquam*, adv.

valor, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.
value, *existimō*.¹
vanity, *vānitās*, -ātis, F.
Venelli, *Venellī*, -ōrum, M.
Venetia, *Venetia*, -ae, F.
Veneti, *Veneti*, -ōrum, M.
venture, *audeō*.²
Veragri, *Veragrī*, -ōrum, M.
Verbigene, *Verbigēnus*, -a, -um, adj.
verily, *vērō*, adv.
very, sign of superl.; (= self) *ipse*, -a, -um, demonstr. pron.; — **easily**, (after a neg.) *satis comodē*; — **first**, *primus statim*.
Vesontio, *Vesontiō*, -ōnis, M.
veteran, *mīles vetus* (-eris, adj.).
vice, *vitium*, -ī, N.
victor, *victor*, -ōris, M.
victory, *victōria*, -ae, F.
vie, *certō*.¹
view, in — *of*, *prae*, prep. w. abl.; have in —, *prōvideō*.³; burst into —, *ērumpō*.³
vigor, *vis*, vis, F.
village, *vicus*, -ī, M.
violence, *vīs*, vis, F.
violent, *saevus*, -a, -um, adj.
virtue, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.
visit, — **with**, *adjiciō*.³ (w. acc. and abl.).
Volusenus, *Volusēnus*, -ī, M.
vote, 1. vb., *dēcernō*.³ 2. subst., *cōsūltum*, -ī, N.
voyage, make a —, *nāvīgō*.¹

W.

wage, — **against**, *īferō* (w. acc. and dat.).

wagon, *carrus*, -ī, M.

wait, — **for**, *exspectō*.¹

wall, (generic term) *mūrus*, -ī, M.; (= rampart about a camp) *vāllum*, -ī, N.

want, (= wish) *volō*.

wanting, be —, *dēsum*.

war, *bellum*, -ī, N.; ship of —, *nāvis longa*; to make — on, *bellum facere* (w. dat.).

ward, — **off from**, *prōpulsō*.¹ (w. ab ēr ā and abl.).

warlike, *bellicosus*, -a, -um, adj.
warn, *moneō*.²
waste, *lay* —, *vastō*.¹
watchmen, *vigiliae*, -ārum, F.
water, *aqua*, -ae, F.
way, *give* — to **passion**, *īrāscor*³; **be on one's** —, *pergō*³; **in what** —, *quem ad modum*.
we, *nōs*, *nostrī* and *nostrūm*, pers. pron.
wealth, *dīvitiae*, -ārum, F.
weary, *fessus*, -a, -um, p. a. (w. abl.); **I am** —, *mē taedet*,² imper. w. gen.
weep, *fleō*.²
welfare, *rēs*, gen. *rēi* (*rēi*, *rē*), F.
well, *bene*, adv.; — **enough**, *commodē*, adv.
what, (interrog.) *qui*, *quae*, *quod* (adj.) and *quid* (subst.); (= of what sort) *quālis*, -e, interrog. and rel. adj.; (= that which) *id quod*.
whatever, *any* —, *quāvis*, *quaevis*, *quodvis* and (subst.) *quidvis*, indef. pron.
when, *ubi*, *postquam*, *postea* *quam*, *ut* (w. indic., usu. the perf. or hist. pres.); *cum*.
whenever, *cum* (w. indic.).
where, *ubi*, interrog. and rel. adv.
wherefore, *quam ob rem*.
whether, *num*, interrog. particle; *-ne*, interrog. particle.
which, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. and interrog. pron.
while, *dum*, conj.
who, *qui* (M.), *quae* (F.), rel. pron.; *quis*, interrog. pron.
whoever, *whatever*, *quicunque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, indef. rel. pron.; — **you please**, *quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet*, and (subst.) *quidlibet*, indef. pron.
whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= all joined or massed together) *cūnctus*, -a, -um, adj.
why, *cūr*, adv.; (= for what reason) *quā dē causā*; *quid* (n. acc. used adv.).
wide, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.

widely, *lātē*, adv.; **more** —, *lātiūs*, adv.
width, *lātitūdō*, -inis, F.
wife, *conjunct*, -*jugis*, F.
wild, *ferus*, -a, -um, adj.
WHL, **good** —, *grātia*, -ae, F.
willing, **be not** —, *nōlō*.
wine, *vinum*, -i, N.
wing, (of an army) *cornū*, -ūs, N.
winter, *hiems* (*hiemps*), -emis, F.; — **quarters**, *hīberna*, -ōrum, N.; **spend the** —, *hiemō*.¹
wish, *volō*; *cupiō*³; — **well to**, *cupiō*³ (w. dat.); — **rather**, *mālō*.
with, *cum*, prep. w. abl. (w. the abl. of pers. and rel. prons., *cum* is appended; as, *tēcum*, *qui-buscum*); (in an expression of manner in which the subst. is limited by an adj.) sign of the abl.; — **each other**, *inter sē* (*sē-sē*); **have to do** —, *pertineō*² (w. ad and acc.).
withdraw, 1. intr., *discēdō*³; *dēcēdō*³; *excēdō*³; (less often) *concēdō*.³ 2. tr., *subducō*³; (= lead out) *ēducō*.³
 withhold, — **consent**, (= [be] unwilling), *invitus*, -a, -um, adj.
within, sign of abl. of time within which.
without, *sine*, prep. w. abl.; (w. participial noun after neg. expressions) *quān* (w. subj.); — *trial*, *indemnātus*, -a, -um, adj.; — **provocation**, *injuriā* (abl. of manner).
withstand, *sustineō*² (w. acc.).
witness, (= eye witness) *arbitrē*, -trī, M.; (one who attests) *testis*, -is, C.
woman, *mulier*, -eris, F.
wonder, — at, *mīror*.¹
wonderful, *mīrus*, -a, -um, adj.; (= to be wondered at) *mīrabilis*, -e, adj.
wont, *mōs*, *mōris*, M.
wood, *sīlva*, -ae, F.
word, **to keep one's** —, *fīdem servāre*.
words, **a few** —, *paucā*, -ōrum, neut. pl. adj. used subst.

work, *opus*, -*eris*, N.
worst, *pessimus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
worthy, *dignus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.
(w. abl.; also w. rel. clause w. subj.).
would, — **that**, *utinam* (w. opt. subj.).
wound, *vulnērō*.¹
wrest, *ēripiō*³ (w. acc. th. and dat. pers.).
wretched, *miser*, -*era*, -*erum*, adj.
write, *scribō*.³
wrong, *injūria*, -*ae*, F.

X.

Xenophon, *Xenophōn*, -*ontis*, M.
year, *annus*, -*ī*, M.; **the — after**, *anno post*.
yet, (= nevertheless) *tamen*, conj.; **and —**, *quamquam*, conj.; **not —**, *nōndum*, adv.

yield, — **obedience**, *pāreō*.²
yoke, *jugum*, -*ī*, N.
yonder, (= that) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron.
you, (sing.) *tū*, *tuī*; (pl.) *vōs*, gen. *vestrī* and *vestrūm*, pers. pron.; to —, (= thither where you are) *istūc* (accent the last syllable), adv.
your, (sing.) *tuus*, -*a*, -*um*; (pl.) *vester*, -*tra*, -*trum*, poss. pron.; (contemptuous) *iste*, *ista*, *istud*.
yours, that of —, *iste tuus*.
yourself, *tuī*, *tibī*, *tē*, pers. pron. used reflex.
yourselves, *vōs* (pl. of *tū* used reflex.).
youth, *adulēscētia*, -*ae*, F.; (= young person) *adulēscēns*, -*entis*, C.

Z.

Zama, **the people of —**, *Zamēnsēs*, -*ium*, M.
zeal, *studium*, -*ī*, N.

YB 35658

